***Fragrance of Mastership***

***(Volumes 1-5)***

***Dr. Shabeeb Rizvi***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Title | : | **Fragrance of Mastership (Volumes 1-5)** |
| First Edition | : | Shabaan 1438 A.H. (2017) |
| Printed By | : | Ja’fari Propagation Centre,  94, Asma Manzil, Room No. 10-11,  Bazar Road, Opp. Khoja Masjid,  Bandra (W), Mumbai – 400050.  Tel.: 2642 5777.  E-mail: jpcbandra@gmail.com, jpcbandra@yahoo.com  Website: jpconline.org |

# Dedication

***Dedicated to the adornment of worshippers and the chief of those who prostrate, Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.). May our souls be sacrificed for him (a.s.)!***

# 

# Contents

[Dedication 3](#_Toc482685614)

[1. The importance of learning traditions of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 17](#_Toc482685617)

[2. True knowledge can be obtained only from the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 18](#_Toc482685618)

[3. Is guidance possible except from those in whose houses the Revelation has descended 19](#_Toc482685619)

[4. Denial of the traditions of Aale Mohammad (a.s.) which are difficult and complex, is disbelief 20](#_Toc482685620)

[5. The Knowledge of the Holy Quran is only with the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 21](#_Toc482685621)

[6. The Infallible Imams (a.s.) are the inheritors of the Holy Quran 22](#_Toc482685622)

[7. The reward of Prophethood is the love of his Ahle Bait(a.s.) 24](#_Toc482685623)

[8. Not referring to the Divine Proof (a.s.) is tantamount to polytheism 25](#_Toc482685624)

[9. Speak the truth even if it is bitter 26](#_Toc482685625)

[10. Speak the truth even if you perish in it 27](#_Toc482685626)

[11. Submission to the Divine Proof (a.s.) is Submission to Allah the Almighty! 28](#_Toc482685627)

[12. Our belief is same as that ofAhle Bait (a.s.) at all times 29](#_Toc482685628)

[13. The Shiahs follow the path of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) which is the path of the Holy Quran and the Sunnah 30](#_Toc482685629)

[14. The Shiahs follow the view of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) in all issues 31](#_Toc482685630)

[15. Allah has not emphasized on anything as much as Imamat 32](#_Toc482685631)

[16. Allah cannot be worshipped except through the obedience of His Proof 33](#_Toc482685632)

[17. The desire of Allah the Almighty 35](#_Toc482685633)

[18. Allah the High loves those who love the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 37](#_Toc482685634)

[19. Allah has written Aliyyun Waliyyullah across the heavens and the earth 38](#_Toc482685635)

[20. Recognition of the Divine Proof (a.s.) is a condition for martyrdom 41](#_Toc482685636)

[21. People have value only when they follow the Divine Proof (a.s.) 42](#_Toc482685637)

[22. Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is the foundation of religion and his followers are the handsome ones 43](#_Toc482685638)

[23. The Infallible Imams (a.s.) are the truthful ones 44](#_Toc482685639)

[24. The Imams of Guidance and the Imams of Deviation 45](#_Toc482685640)

[25. The indecencies forbidden by Allah in the Holy Quran are the Imams of Deviation 46](#_Toc482685641)

[26. The Great Kingdom is the Wilaayah of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 47](#_Toc482685642)

[27. The Ahle Bait(a.s.) are the Reminder about which the nation shall be questioned 48](#_Toc482685643)

[28. To Raise anyone to the status of Imamat is Polytheism 49](#_Toc482685644)

[29. Rejection of the Divine Proof(a.s.) is Polytheism 50](#_Toc482685645)

[30. Allah shall not speak to those who deny the Divine Proofs (a.s.) 51](#_Toc482685646)

[31. Those who oppose the Divine Proofs (a.s.) are polytheists 52](#_Toc482685647)

[32. Both the false claimant of Imamat and the one who follows him are accursed 53](#_Toc482685648)

[33. Denial of the Divine Proofs (a.s.) is Denial of Allah the Almighty 54](#_Toc482685649)

[34. Those who deny the Divine Proofs (a.s.) have entered the darkness of disbelief 55](#_Toc482685650)

[35. There can be no Wilaayah without Bara’aah 57](#_Toc482685651)

[36. He lies who claims to love the Ahle Bait (a.s.) but does not express hatred towards their enemies 58](#_Toc482685652)

[37. Who are the Batris? 59](#_Toc482685653)

[38. The Batris shall declare war against Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.) 60](#_Toc482685654)

[39. Those who befriend the enemies of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) and make enemies with the lovers of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are worse than the Anti-Christ (al-Dajjal) 61](#_Toc482685655)

[40. Unity can be achieved only through the Imamat of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 62](#_Toc482685656)

[41. The Naasebi is the one who hates the lovers of the Divinely Appointed Hujjat 63](#_Toc482685657)

[42. Imam (a.t.f.s.) will not spare the Naasebis but will live in peace with the Ahle Kitab 64](#_Toc482685658)

[43. The enemy of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) shall be in the hell-fire whether he prays or steals 66](#_Toc482685659)

[44. The actions of those who hate the Ahle Bait (a.s.) do not reach Allah 67](#_Toc482685660)

[45. Angels cannot get proximity to Allah without cursing the enemies of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 68](#_Toc482685661)

[46. A believer can never hate Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and a hypocrite can never love him 69](#_Toc482685662)

[47. The opponents of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) shall abide in Hell Fire 70](#_Toc482685663)

[48. Wilaayah of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) is only for the chosen ones whose faith has been tested 72](#_Toc482685664)

[49. There is no one more deviated before Allah than the one who rejects the Divine Proof (a.s.) 73](#_Toc482685665)

[50. Those who do not curse the killers of Imam Husain (a.s.) are the enemies of Allah and His Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 74](#_Toc482685666)

[51. Imam Sajjad (a.s.) used to provide food for those who mourned for Imam Husain (a.s.) 75](#_Toc482685667)

[52. Imam Sajjad (a.s.) wept for Imam Husain (a.s.) his entire life 76](#_Toc482685668)

[53. All believers weep for Imam Husain (a.s.) when they remember him 77](#_Toc482685669)

[54. Prophets and angels request Allah to visit Imam Husain (a.s.) in Karbala 78](#_Toc482685670)

[55. Imam Sadeq (a.s.) says: Never abandon the Ziyaarat of Imam Husain (a.s.) 79](#_Toc482685671)

[56. The reward for remembering Imam Husain (a.s.) when drinking water 80](#_Toc482685672)

[57. The accursed Shimr (l.a.) acknowledged the position of Imam Husain (a.s.) before killing him (a.s.) 81](#_Toc482685673)

[58. Beating of faces and weeping for Imam Husain (a.s.) 82](#_Toc482685674)

[59. Necessity of Imamate 83](#_Toc482685675)

[60. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Imams of the Muslims and the Divine Proofs 84](#_Toc482685676)

[61. Debate between Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam (r.a.) with Amr Ibn Ubaid al-Motazeli in Basrah: Necessity of Divine Proof 86](#_Toc482685677)

[62. Debates between the companions of Imam Sadeq (a.s.) and a Syrian opponent – Necessity of Divine Proof 91](#_Toc482685678)

[63. Importance of Divine Proof 99](#_Toc482685679)

[64. Necessity of Divine Proof 100](#_Toc482685680)

[65. Necessity of a Divine Proof – Protecting the people from Iblis (l.a.) 101](#_Toc482685681)

[66. Necessity of a Divine Proof – Survival of the People and the Earth 103](#_Toc482685682)

[67. Duties of a Divine Proof 104](#_Toc482685683)

[68. Divine Imams (a.s.) – The uninterrupted words of Allah 105](#_Toc482685684)

[69. Presence of an Imam – Survival of the Earth 106](#_Toc482685685)

[70. Absence of a Divine proof – Annihilation of existents 107](#_Toc482685686)

[71. Divine Proof to Creation –Soul to Body 108](#_Toc482685687)

[72. Divine Proof – Inevitable Need of the Creatures 109](#_Toc482685688)

[73. Divine Imam – Protected and Hoped One 110](#_Toc482685689)

[74. Presence of a Just Imam – Sign of Allah’s Majesty and Greatness 111](#_Toc482685690)

[75. Divine Guides – Only from the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 112](#_Toc482685691)

[76. Divine Proof – Last human on earth 113](#_Toc482685692)

[77. Divine Proof – From Prophet Adam (a.s.) till the Hereafter 114](#_Toc482685693)

[78. Ahle Bait (a.s.) – The Stars of the Sky 115](#_Toc482685694)

[79. Only One Divine Proof on the Earth 116](#_Toc482685695)

[80. Divine Knowledge doesn’t go up again 117](#_Toc482685696)

[81. Steadfastness on the Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and Imams (a.s.) after him 118](#_Toc482685697)

[82. People cannot select an Imam for themselves 120](#_Toc482685698)

[83. Allah’s Advice to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 122](#_Toc482685699)

[84. Imamate is in Allah’s Hands – He places wherever He wishes 123](#_Toc482685700)

[85. Prerogative of Imamat lies only with Allah the High 124](#_Toc482685701)

[86. Preferring an inferior to a superior - Breach of Divine Trust 126](#_Toc482685702)

[87. Necessity of Knowing the Imam (a.s.) and Denier of a Divine Proof is an Infidel 128](#_Toc482685703)

[88. Denier of any Imam is an Infidel and Naasebi is a Polytheist 129](#_Toc482685704)

[89. Importance of Knowing the Imam of the time 130](#_Toc482685705)

[90. Believing an Imam from other than Allah is Polytheism 131](#_Toc482685706)

[91. Excuse about ignorance about Imam will not accepted 132](#_Toc482685707)

[92. Conditions for witnessing Divine Mercy 133](#_Toc482685708)

[93. Mastership of Ahle Bait (a.s.) – Condition for success 134](#_Toc482685709)

[94. The Minimum Level of Belief 135](#_Toc482685710)

[95. Not Knowing the Imam of our time is Paganism 138](#_Toc482685711)

[96. Aim of Creation – Recognition of Imam (a.s.) 140](#_Toc482685712)

[97. Testimony of Tauheed not acceptable without belief in Imamat of Ahle Bait (a.s.) 142](#_Toc482685713)

[98. Whoever forsakes the Imam of his time will be destroyed 145](#_Toc482685714)

[99. Worship without recognition of Imam (a.s.) is in vain 147](#_Toc482685715)

[100. Imam (a.s.) is standard between Allah and creatures 149](#_Toc482685716)

[101. Denier of Imam (a.s.) is an Apostate 150](#_Toc482685717)

[102. Living or Dead – Imams (a.s.) are the same 151](#_Toc482685718)

[103. Denier of Imam (a.s.) is not a Believer 153](#_Toc482685719)

[104. Denier of Imams (a.s.) is denier of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 154](#_Toc482685720)

[105. Terms for Intercession (Shafa’at) 156](#_Toc482685721)

[106. Test of the People is Massive 158](#_Toc482685722)

[107. Religion should be based on the Holy Quran and Ahle Bait (a.s.) 160](#_Toc482685723)

[108. Best is he who treats the Ahle Bait (a.s.) well 164](#_Toc482685724)

[109. No Worship without Mastership 165](#_Toc482685725)

[110. Two Precious Things 168](#_Toc482685726)

[111. Reward for loving the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 170](#_Toc482685727)

[112. War and Peace of Ahle Bait (a.s.) 171](#_Toc482685728)

[113. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Door of Hettah 172](#_Toc482685729)

[114. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Ark of Salvation 175](#_Toc482685730)

[115. Truth must be the criterion not personalities 177](#_Toc482685731)

[116. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are Allah’s extended rope 181](#_Toc482685732)

[117. Benchmarks for Success and Failure 183](#_Toc482685733)

[118. Denial of Ali (a.s.) is Denial of Allah 186](#_Toc482685734)

[119. Ali (a.s.) – The Separator of Truth and Falsehood 187](#_Toc482685735)

[120. Divine Imams (a.s.) never misguide 190](#_Toc482685736)

[121. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are Allah’s Chosen Ones 192](#_Toc482685737)

[122. Salutations on the Progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) 193](#_Toc482685738)

[123. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the People of Remembrance 195](#_Toc482685739)

[124. Knowledge of Quran is ONLY with the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 198](#_Toc482685740)

[125. Hallmarks of a Shia 200](#_Toc482685741)

[126. Reins of Religion in the hands of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 202](#_Toc482685742)

[127. Only the Imams (a.s.) are the bearers of Quranic sciences 204](#_Toc482685743)

[128. Knowledge of Shariah Laws is miniscule to the knowledge of the unseen (1) 205](#_Toc482685744)

[129. Knowledge of Shariah Laws is miniscule to the knowledge of the unseen (2) 207](#_Toc482685745)

[130. Infinite Knowledge of the Imams (a.s.) 209](#_Toc482685746)

[131. Ali (a.s.) – The Miracle of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) 211](#_Toc482685747)

[132. Deeds not acceptable without Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 213](#_Toc482685748)

[133. Holy Prophet’s (s.a.w.a.) Will to Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 215](#_Toc482685749)

[134. Prophet Ibrahim’s (a.s.) invocation 218](#_Toc482685750)

[135. Followers of Ahle Bait (a.s.) are their progeny 220](#_Toc482685751)

[136. Love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) – Wage for Messengership 222](#_Toc482685752)

[137. Hell is the fate without Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 223](#_Toc482685753)

[138. Love and Obedience 225](#_Toc482685754)

[139. Status of one who dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) 227](#_Toc482685755)

[140. Who are the closest relatives? 229](#_Toc482685756)

[141. The Narration of the Cloak 230](#_Toc482685757)

[142. Two Lights of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 232](#_Toc482685758)

[143. Criterion for Success – Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 234](#_Toc482685759)

[144. House of Ali and Fatemah (s.a.) is the best of houses 237](#_Toc482685760)

[145. Names of Ahle Bait (a.s.) draw Allah’s Attention 239](#_Toc482685761)

[146. Life of Prophets (a.s.) and Death of Martyrs 241](#_Toc482685762)

[147. A True Believer is a Martyr 243](#_Toc482685763)

[148. The Imams (a.s.) have the knowledge of all the Prophets and Messengers (a.s.) and even more 244](#_Toc482685764)

[149. Guidance implies the mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 246](#_Toc482685765)

[150. Imam (a.s.)’s knowledge encompasses everything 247](#_Toc482685766)

[151. Submission implies the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 248](#_Toc482685767)

[152. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are from the sacrosanct things of Allah 249](#_Toc482685768)

[153. Carriers of the Divine Throne seek forgiveness for the Shias 250](#_Toc482685769)

[154. The wretched will usurp the right of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 252](#_Toc482685770)

[155. People will be tested through the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 253](#_Toc482685771)

[156. The Ummah will abandon the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 254](#_Toc482685772)

[157. Mastership of Ahle Bait (a.s.) demands absolute submission 256](#_Toc482685773)

[158. Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the best confidantes 258](#_Toc482685774)

[159. One who follows somebody has in reality worshipped him 259](#_Toc482685775)

[160. Shias of Ahle Bait (a.s.) must never despair of divine mercy 261](#_Toc482685776)

[161. Monotheism without Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) will be of no avail 262](#_Toc482685777)

[162. Everyone will be questioned about the Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) on the Day of Judgment 264](#_Toc482685778)

[163. The Enemies of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) will be thrown in Hell 265](#_Toc482685779)

[164. True Belief in Ahle Bait (a.s.) saves one from Hell-fire 267](#_Toc482685780)

[165. Hajj without visitation of Ahle Bait (a.s.) is of no avail 269](#_Toc482685781)

[166. Ways to know a true Imam (a.s.) from an impostor 271](#_Toc482685782)

[167. Characteristics of a True Imam (a.s.) 274](#_Toc482685783)

[168. Imamate is beyond the comprehension of the people 276](#_Toc482685784)

[169. Allah the High introduces the Shias to Imams (a.s.) 277](#_Toc482685785)

[170. Imams (a.s.) manifest from their perfections only what people can withstand 278](#_Toc482685786)

[171. Proof of Imamate- Incident of Habaabah al-Waalebiyyah 279](#_Toc482685787)

[172. Recording Angels of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) take pride over other angels 282](#_Toc482685788)

[173. Obedience of Imams (a.s.) obligatory due to infallibility 283](#_Toc482685789)

[174. Practice of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 284](#_Toc482685790)

[175. Ali (a.s.) is the door of the city of knowledge 286](#_Toc482685791)

[176. Love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) is the wage of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)’s efforts 287](#_Toc482685792)

[177. Amazing Excellences of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) 288](#_Toc482685793)

[178. All the Infallible Guides (a.s.) are equal in excellences 291](#_Toc482685794)

[179. Knowledge – The Minimum Aspect of Ahle Bait’s (a.s.) Excellence 292](#_Toc482685795)

[180. Imam (a.s.) knows the universe like the palm of his hand 293](#_Toc482685796)

[181. A Divine Imam (a.s.) has complete knowledge of the entire universe (1) 294](#_Toc482685797)

[182. A Divine Imam (a.s.) has complete knowledge of the entire universe (2) 295](#_Toc482685798)

[183. A source of Imam’s (a.s.) Knowledge of the Unseen 296](#_Toc482685799)

[184. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) taught Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) a thousand chapters of Knowledge 297](#_Toc482685800)

[185. Sublime Qualities of Divine Imams (a.s.) 298](#_Toc482685801)

[186. Angels converse with Imams (a.s.) and their companions 299](#_Toc482685802)

[187. Signs of true and divine inspiration 300](#_Toc482685803)

[188. An Imam (a.s.) is aware of the celestial world in its entirety 301](#_Toc482685804)

[189. An Imam (a.s.) is aware of the created knowledge of Allah the High 303](#_Toc482685805)

[190. Imam’s (a.s.) eyes are unlike those of ordinary mortals 305](#_Toc482685806)

[191. Imam’s (a.s.) knowledge encompasses this world as well as the Hereafter 306](#_Toc482685807)

[192. The Imams (a.s.) inherit the knowledge of the unseen from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 308](#_Toc482685808)

[193. Imams (a.s.) know the inner beliefs of every person 310](#_Toc482685809)

[194. Imams (a.s.) know the ultimate fate of every person 312](#_Toc482685810)

[195. A Shia should be concerned about his fate 313](#_Toc482685811)

[196. Imams (a.s.) know everyone without anyone’s introduction 315](#_Toc482685812)

[197. Knowledge of the Unseen of Imams (a.s.) is proof of Allah’s Divinity 317](#_Toc482685813)

[198. None was given such knowledge which Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) was given 318](#_Toc482685814)

[199. “Ask me before you lose me” 320](#_Toc482685815)

[200. Each of the infallible Imams of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) has knowledge of the unseen 321](#_Toc482685816)

[201. Guidance and lives of Imams (a.s.) and those of their enemies 322](#_Toc482685817)

[202. Imams (a.s.) are aware of our conversations 323](#_Toc482685818)

[203. Allah grants the knowledge of the unseen to His Proofs (a.s.) 324](#_Toc482685819)

[204. Every truth is from Ahle Bait (a.s.) and every falsehood is from the people 326](#_Toc482685820)

[205. The Ahle Bait (a.s.) have been given the created knowledge of Allah the Almighty 328](#_Toc482685821)

[206. The Ahle Bait (a.s.) have the knowledge of the Entire Book 329](#_Toc482685822)

[207. A divinely appointed Imam (a.s.) knows all the languages that people speak 331](#_Toc482685823)

[208. Making Ahle Bait (a.s.) happy and joyous makes one eligible for the Messenger of Allah’s (s.a.w.a.) intercession 333](#_Toc482685824)

[209. Believing Ahle Bait (a.s.) to be the most superior after the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) 335](#_Toc482685825)

[210. Importance of remembrance and love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) 337](#_Toc482685826)

[211. One who helps the Ahle Bait (a.s.) helps Allah the High 339](#_Toc482685827)

[212. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) will compensate the one who helps the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 340](#_Toc482685828)

[213. Magnitude of the Holy Prophet’s (s.a.w.a.) compensation 341](#_Toc482685829)

[214. Paradise is prohibited for the one who oppresses the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 342](#_Toc482685830)

[215. Ali Ibn Abi Talib’s (a.s.) remembrance is worship 343](#_Toc482685831)

[216. Rewards for discussing Ali Ibn Abi Talib’s (a.s.) excellences and merits 345](#_Toc482685832)

[217. The opponents could not conceal the excellences of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) 348](#_Toc482685833)

[218. Reward of Glorifying Imams (a.s.) through poems (1) 350](#_Toc482685834)

[219. Reward of Glorifying Imams (a.s.) through poems (2) 351](#_Toc482685835)

[220. Whoever thinks that he is like the infallible Imams (a.s.) is a polytheist 353](#_Toc482685836)

[221. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) are one 355](#_Toc482685837)

[222. Obedience of Ali (a.s.) is the obedience of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 356](#_Toc482685838)

[223. Whoever denies that Ali (a.s.) is the best of mankind is a disbeliever 357](#_Toc482685839)

[224. Supplications of Divine Emissaries (a.s.) accepted through intercession of Ahle Bait (a.s.) 358](#_Toc482685840)

[225. None has more knowledge of the unseen than the Ahle Bait (a.s.) except Allah the Almighty 362](#_Toc482685841)

[226. Comprehending the Great Names of Allah is not even for some great companions (1) 364](#_Toc482685842)

[227. Comprehending the Great Names of Allah is not even for some great companions (2) 366](#_Toc482685843)

[228. Even those who know the Greatest Name of Allah need the Ahle Bait (a.s.) 368](#_Toc482685844)

[Bibliography 369](#_Toc482685845)

# 1. The importance of learning traditions of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ عَبْدِ السَّلَامِ بْنِ صَالِحٍ الْهَرَوِيِّ قَالَ: سَمِعْتُ اَبَا الْحَسَنِ عَلِيَّ بْنَ مُوسَى الرِّضَا ع يَقُولُ رَحِمَ اللهُ عَبْدًا اَحْيَا اَمْرَنَا فَقُلْتُ لَهُ وَ كَيْفَ يُحْيِي اَمْرَكُمْ قَالَ يَتَعَلَّمُ‏ عُلُومَنَا وَ يُعَلِّمُهَا النَّاسَ‏ فَاِنَّ النَّاسَ لَوْ عَلِمُوا مَحَاسِنَ كَلَامِنَا لَاتَّبَعُونَا

Abd al-Salaam Ibn Saaleh al-Harawiyy said: I heard Imam Reza (a.s.) say, “May Allah have mercy on the person who enlivens our affair (i.e. Wilayat)!” I asked, “How is your affair enlivened?” He (a.s.) informed,

“He learns our knowledge (traditions) and teaches it to the people. Surely, if people knew the beauty of our words, they would certainly follow us.”

## References:

1. Oyoon al-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 1, p. 307, H. 69

2. Maani al-Akhbaar, p. 180, H. 1

3. Wasaael al-Shiahh, vol. 27, p. 92, H. 33297

4. Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 30, H. 13

# 2. True knowledge can be obtained only from the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍ ع لِسَلَمَةَ بْنِ كُهَيْلٍ وَ الْحَكَمِ بْنِ عُتَيْبَةَ شَرِّقَا وَ غَرِّبَا فَلَا تَجِدَانِ عِلْمًا صَحِيحًا اِلَّا شَيْئًا خَرَجَ‏ مِنْ‏ عِنْدِنَا اَهْلَ‏ الْبَيْتِ‏.

Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer) (a.s.) said to Salamah Ibn Kuhail and al-Hakam Ibn Otaibah (two well-known Batris),

“Both of you go East or West, you will not find true knowledge except that which has emanated from us Ahle Bait (a.s.).”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 399, H. 3

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 21, p. 477, H. 27632

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 4, p. 309, H. 3

# Is guidance possible except from those in whose houses the Revelation has descended

سَمِعْتُ جَعْفَرَ بْنَ مُحَمَّدٍ ع يَقُولُ‏ وَ عِنْدَهُ نَاسٌ مِنْ اَهْلِ الْكُوفَةِ عَجَبًا لِلنَّاسِ اِنَّهُمْ اَخَذُوا عِلْمَهُمْ كُلَّهُ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللهِ ص فَعَمِلُوا بِهِ وَ اهْتَدَوْا وَ يَرَوْا فانا [اَنَّا] اَهْلَ بَيْتِهِ وَ ذُرِّيَّتَهُ لَمْ نَأْخُذْ عِلْمَهُ وَ نَحْنُ اَهْلُ بَيْتِهِ وَ ذُرِّيَّتُهُ فِي مَنَازِلِنَا نَزَلَ‏ الْوَحْيُ‏ وَ مِنْ‏ عِنْدِنَا خَرَجَ‏ الْعِلْمُ اِلَيْهِمْ اَ فَيَرَوْنَ اَنَّهُمْ عَلِمُوا وَ اهْتَدَوْا وَ جَهِلْنَا نَحْنُ وَ ضَلَلْنَا اِنَّ هَذَا لَمُحَالٌ.

Narrator says, “I heard (Imam) Ja’far Ibn Muhammad (a.s.) say while there were some people of Kufah (Iraq) with him,

“I am amazed at the people that they think they have taken all the knowledge from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), act upon it and are guided. They also think that we have Ahle Bait (a.s.) have not taken his (s.a.w.a.) knowledge while we are his family members and his progeny. In our houses revelation descended and from us emanated the knowledge to them (i.e. the people). Yet they think they know and they are guided while we are unaware and deviated?!! Surely, this is impossible!!”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 12, H. 3

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 398, H. 1

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 4, p. 305, H. 1

# Denial of the traditions of Aale Mohammad (a.s.) which are difficult and complex, is disbelief

قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍ ع قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص‏ اِنَّ حَدِيثَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ صَعْبٌ مُسْتَصْعَبٌ لَا يُؤْمِنُ بِهِ اِلَّا مَلَكٌ مُقَرَّبٌ اَوْ نَبِيٌّ مُرْسَلٌ اَوْ عَبْدٌ امْتَحَنَ اللهُ قَلْبَهُ لِلْاِيمَانِ فَمَا وَرَدَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنْ حَدِيثِ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ ص فَلَانَتْ لَهُ قُلُوبُكُمْ وَ عَرَفْتُمُوهُ فَاقْبَلُوهُ وَ مَا اشْمَاَزَّتْ مِنْهُ قُلُوبُكُمْ‏ وَ اَنْكَرْتُمُوهُ‏ فَرُدُّوهُ‏ اِلَى‏ اللهِ‏ وَ اِلَى‏ الرَّسُولِ‏ وَ اِلَى الْعَالِمِ مِنْ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ اِنَّمَا الْهَالِكُ اَنْ يُحَدِّثَ اَحَدُكُمْ بِشَيْ‏ءٍ مِنْهُ لَا يَحْتَمِلُهُ فَيَقُولَ وَ اللهِ مَا كَانَ هَذَا وَ اللهِ مَا كَانَ هَذَا وَ الْاِنْكَارُ هُوَ الْكُفْرُ.

Imam Abu Ja’far (a.s.) says that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) declared, “Verily the traditions of Aale Muhammad (a.s.) are difficult and complex. None will believe in them except a proximate angel or a sent messenger or a servant whose heart has been tested by Allah for faith. So whenever a hadees from Aale Muhammad (a.s.) comes to you towards which your hearts are inclined and you are cognizant of it, accept it. But if your hearts tremble on hearing it and you dislike it, refer it to Allah, the Messenger and the Knowledgeable from the Aale Muhammad (a.s.). Verily, he is destroyed who on hearing such a hadees cannot bear it and says, ‘By Allah! This is not the truth, By Allah! This is not the truth.’ Denying is disbelief.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 401, H. 1

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 5, p. 858, H. 14089

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 189, H. 21

# The Knowledge of the Holy Quran is only with the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِ ع‏ يَا اَبَا الصَّبَّاحِ نَحْنُ قَوْمٌ فَرَضَ اللهُ طَاعَتَنَا لَنَا الْاَنْفَالُ وَ لَنَا صَفْوُ الْمَالِ وَ نَحْنُ الرَّاسِخُونَ‏ فِي‏ الْعِلْمِ‏ وَ نَحْنُ‏ الْمَحْسُودُونَ‏ الَّذِينَ قَالَ اللهُ‏ اَمْ يَحْسُدُونَ النَّاسَ عَلى‏ ما آتاهُمُ اللهُ مِنْ فَضْلِهِ‏

Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq) (a.s.) said,

“O Aba al-Sabaah! We are the people whose obedience Allah has made obligatory; for us are the spoils of war and for us is the purification of wealth; we are those firmly entrenched in knowledge and we are those whom people envy about whom Allah says, **‘Or are they jealous ofthe people (viz. Imams a.s.) due to what Allah has given them of his grace?”**

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 202, H. 1

Tafseer al-Ayyashi, vol. 1, p. 247, H. 155

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 186, H. 6

Tehzeeb al-Ahkam, vol. 4, p. 132, H. 1

Manaqeb of Ibn Shahr Ashoub, vol. 1, p. 286

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 1, p. 45

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 194, H. 20

# The Infallible Imams (a.s.) are the inheritors of the Holy Quran

دَاوُدَ بْنِ الْقَاسِمِ الْجَعْفَرِيِّ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ اَبَا مُحَمَّدٍ عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ‏ ثُمَّ اَوْرَثْنَا الْكِتابَ الَّذِينَ اصْطَفَيْنا مِنْ عِبادِنا فَمِنْهُمْ ظالِمٌ لِنَفْسِهِ وَ مِنْهُمْ مُقْتَصِدٌ وَ مِنْهُمْ سابِقٌ بِالْخَيْراتِ بِاِذْنِ اللهِ‏ فَقَالَ كُلُّهُمْ مِنْ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ الظَّالِمُ لِنَفْسِهِ الَّذِي لَا يُقِرُّ بِالْاِمَامِ قَالَ فَدَمَعَتْ عَيْنِي وَ جَعَلْتُ أُفَكِّرُ فِي نَفْسِي فِي عِظَمِ مَا أُعْطِيَ آلُ مُحَمَّدٍ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِهِ السَّلَامُ فَنَظَرَ اِلَيَّ اَبُو مُحَمَّدٍ فَقَالَ الْاَمْرُ اَعْظَمُ مِمَّا حَدَّثَتْكَ نَفْسُكَ مِنْ عِظَمِ شَأْنِ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ فَاحْمَدِ اللهَ فَقَدْ جُعِلْتَ مُتَمَسِّكًا بِحَبْلِهِمْ‏ تُدْعَى‏ يَوْمَ‏ الْقِيَامَةِ بِهِمْ اِذَا دُعِيَ كُلُ‏ أُناسٍ بِاِمامِهِمْ‏ فَاَبْشِرْ يَا اَبَا هَاشِمٍ فَاِنَّكَ عَلَى خَيْرٍ.

Dawood Ibn al-Hashim al-Ja’fari recounts, “I asked Imam Abu Muhammad (al-Askari a.s.) about the word of Allah, ‘Then we gave in inheritance the Book to those whom We chose from Our servants. So from them is the one who is unjust to himself and from them is the moderate one and from them is the one who is foremost in good deeds with the permission of Allah’ (Surah Faatir (35): Verse 32). He (a.s.) replied,

‘All of them belong to the progeny of Muhammad. The one who is unjust to himself is the one who does not acknowledge the Imam’. On hearing this, I started crying and I started thinking about the greatness of the bounty that is given to the progeny of Muhammad (salutations be on Muhammad and his progeny). So, Abu Muhammad (a.s.) looked at me and said, ‘The reality of the affair is even greater than what you think about the great position of Muhammad’s progeny. Then, praise Allah for indeed, you have been made to fasten unto their rope; you will be called on the Day of Judgment with them when all other people **will be called with their Imams**. So, receive glad tidings O Aba Hashim because surely you are on goodness.”

## References:

Kashful Ghummah, vol. 2, p. 419

Madinatul Ma’ajiz, vol. 7, p. 635, H. 2619

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 218, H. 18

# The reward of Prophethood is the love of his Ahle Bait (a.s.)

سَلَّامِ بْنِ الْمُسْتَنِيرِ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍ ع عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ- قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْرًا اِلَّا الْمَوَدَّةَ فِي الْقُرْبى‏ فَقَالَ هِيَ وَ اللهِ فَرِيضَةٌ مِنَ‏ اللهِ‏ عَلَى‏ الْعِبَادِ لِمُحَمَّدٍ ص‏ فِي‏ اَهْلِ‏ بَيْتِهِ‏.

Sallaam Ibn al-Mustaneer said: I asked Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer) (a.s.) about the word of Allah, “Say: I don’t ask you any reward for it (Prophethood) except the love of my close relatives.” He (a.s.) replied,

“By Allah! It is compulsory from Allah upon the people (to reward) Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) (for his efforts in Prophethood) concerning his Ahle Bait (a.s.) (i.e. to love them).”

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 144, H. 46, Chapter 13

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 239, H. 7

# Not referring to the Divine Proof (a.s.) is tantamount to polytheism

عَنْ عَمِيرَةَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ‏ أُمِرَ النَّاسُ بِمَعْرِفَتِنَا وَ الرَّدِّ اِلَيْنَا وَ التَّسْلِيمِ لَنَا ثُمَّ قَالَ وَ اِنْ صَامُوا وَ صَلَّوْا وَ شَهِدُوا اَنْ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ وَ جَعَلُوا فِي‏ اَنْفُسِهِمْ‏ اَنْ لَا يَرُدُّوا اِلَيْنَا كَانُوا بِذَلِكَ مُشْرِكِينَ.

The narrator (Ameerah) says that I heard Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say: “People have been ordered to gain our recognition, refer to us and submit unto us.” Then, he (a.s.) said,

“Even if they fast, pray and testify that there is no god except Allah but think in their hearts that they will not refer to us, merely by this thought, they become polytheists.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 398, H. 5

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 68, H. 33221

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 11, p. 177, H. 5

# Speak the truth even if it is bitter

وَ فِي خَبَرٍ آخَرَ عَنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ قَالَ لَهُ النَّبِيُّ ص قُلِ‏ الْحَقَ‏ وَ اِنْ‏ كَانَ‏ مُرًّا.

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said to Abuzar al-Ghaffaari (a.r.),

“Speak the truth even if it is bitter.”

## References:

Maani al-Akhbaar, p. 335, H. 1

Amaali, p. 541, H. 1163

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 15, p. 290, H. 20541

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 5, p. 640, H. 11554

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 67, p. 107

# Speak the truth even if you perish in it

وَ قَالَ اَبُو الْحَسَنِ الْمَاضِي ع‏ قُلِ‏ الْحَقَ‏ وَ اِنْ‏ كَانَ‏ فِيهِ‏ هَلَاكُكَ‏ فَاِنَّ فِيهِ نَجَاتَكَ وَ دَعِ الْبَاطِلَ وَ اِنْ كَانَ فِيهِ نَجَاتُكَ فَاِنَّ فِيهِ هَلَاكَك‏

Abu al-Hasan al-Maazi (Imam Kazem a.s.) says,

“Speak the truth even if you perish in it because surely in it is your salvation and abandon falsehood even if there’s apparent salvation for you in it because in reality, you will perish in it.”

## References:

Tohaf al-Uqool, p. 407

Al Ikhtesaas, p. 32

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 79, H. 71

# Submission to the Divine Proof (a.s.) is Submission to Allah the Almighty!

عَنْ زَيْدٍ الشَّحَّامِ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: قُلْتُ لَهُ اِنَّ عِنْدَنَا رَجُلًا يُقَالُ لَهُ كُلَيْبٌ فَلَا يَجِي‏ءُ عَنْكُمْ شَيْ‏ءٌ اِلَّا قَالَ اَنَا أُسَلِّمُ فَسَمَّيْنَاهُ‏ كُلَيْبَ‏ تَسْلِيمٍ‏ قَالَ فَتَرَحَّمَ عَلَيْهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اَ تَدْرُونَ مَا التَّسْلِيمُ فَسَكَتْنَا فَقَالَ هُوَ وَ اللهِ الْاِخْبَاتُ قَوْلُ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ- الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَ عَمِلُوا الصَّالِحاتِ وَ اَخْبَتُوا اِلى‏ رَبِّهِمْ‏.

The narrator says, “I said to Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq) (a.s.), ‘There is a person with us named Kulaib. **No tradition is reported from you but that he says ‘I submit’**; so much so that we have named him ‘the submitting Kulaib’. (On hearing this), Imam (a.s.) invoked Allah’s mercy upon him and asked, ‘Do you know what is submission?’ So we became silent. Then he (a.s.) said,

‘By Allah! It is humility as per the word of Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - **“Surely those who believed and did good deeds and were humble towards their Lord”**. (Surah Hud (11): 28)’

## References:

Tafseer al-Ayyashi, vol. 2, p. 143, H. 15

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 391

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran,vol. 3, p. 98, H. 5070

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 4, p. 280, H. 3

Tafseer Noor al-Saqlain, vol. 2, p. 348

# Our belief is same as that ofAhle Bait (a.s.) at all times

عَنْ يَحْيَى بْنِ زَكَرِيَّا الْاَنْصَارِيِّ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ‏ مَنْ سَرَّهُ اَنْ يَسْتَكْمِلَ الْاِيمَانَ كُلَّهُ فَلْيَقُلِ الْقَوْلُ مِنِّي فِي جَمِيعِ الْاَشْيَاءِ قَوْلُ‏ آلِ‏ مُحَمَّدٍ فِيمَا اَسَرُّوا وَ مَا اَعْلَنُوا وَ فِيمَا بَلَغَنِي عَنْهُمْ وَ فِيمَا لَمْ يَبْلُغْنِي.

Yahya Ibn Zakariyyaa al-Ansari reports, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say,

‘Whoever desires that his faith should be perfected in its entirety MUST say, ‘My belief in all things is the belief of Aale Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) in what they conceal and what they announce and in what has reached to me from them and what has not reached to me.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 391, H. 6, Chapter of Submission and the Excellence of those Who Submit

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 5, p. 864, H. 12121

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 4, pp. 282-283, H. 6

# The Shiahs follow the path of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) which is the path of the Holy Quran and the Sunnah

عَنْ حَبِيبٍ قَالَ: قَالَ لَنَا اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِ ع مَا اَحَدٌ اَحَبَّ اِلَيَّ مِنْكُمْ اِنَّ النَّاسَ‏ سَلَكُوا سُبُلًا شَتَّى‏ مِنْهُمْ مَنْ اَخَذَ بِهَوَاهُ وَ مِنْهُمْ مَنْ اَخَذَ بِرَأْيِهِ وَ اِنَّكُمْ اَخَذْتُمْ بِاَمْرٍ لَهُ اَصْلٌ‏ وَ فِي حَدِيثٍ آخَرَ لِحَبِيبٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: اِنَّ النَّاسَ اَخَذُوا هَكَذَا وَ هَكَذَا فَطَائِفَةٌ اَخَذُوا بِاَهْوَائِهِمْ وَ طَائِفَةٌ قَالُوا بِآرَائِهِمْ وَ طَائِفَةٌ قَالُوا بِالرِّوَايَةِ وَ اللهُ هَدَاكُمْ لِحُبِّهِ وَ حُبِّ مَنْ يَنْفَعُكُمْ حُبُّهُ عِنْدَهُ‏.

The narrator (Habeeb) says, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) say,

‘By Allah! None from the people is dearer to me than you (Shiahs) because the people tread various paths; some of them follow their opinion, some of them follow their carnal desires and some of them follow the narration. But you (Shiahs) have taken an affair which has roots (in Quran and Sunnah).”

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 156, H. 87

Al-Kaafi, vol. 8, p. 146, H. 121

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 50, H. 33181

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 65, p. 90, H. 23

# The Shiahs follow the view of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) in all issues

عَنْ مُفَضَّلِ بْنِ قَيْسِ بْنِ رُمَّانَةَ قَالَ وَ كَانَ خَيِّرًا قَالَ: قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع اِنَّ اَصْحَابَنَا يَخْتَلِفُونَ فِي شَيْ‏ءٍ فَاَقُولُ‏ قَوْلِي‏ فِيهَا قَوْلُ‏ جَعْفَرِ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ- فَقَالَ بِهَذَا نَزَلَ جَبْرَئِيلُ.

The narrator (Mufazzal Ibn Qais) says, “I said to Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) that our friends (Shiahs) differ on an issue so I say to them that my view in it is the view of Ja’far Ibn Muhammad (a.s.).” He (a.s.) retorted,

“Jibraeel descended with this only.”

## References:

Rejaal al-Kashi, vol.2, p. 466, H. 323

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 161, H. 33489

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 241, H. 34

# Allah has not emphasized on anything as much as Imamat

عَلِيٌّ عَنْ اَخِيهِ مُوسَى ع قَالَ: كَانَ يَقُولُ قَبْلَ اَنْ يُؤْخَذَ بِسَنَةٍ اِذَا اجْتَمَعَ عِنْدَهُ اَهْلُ بَيْتِهِ مَا وَكَّدَ اللهُ عَلَى الْعِبَادِ فِي شَيْ‏ءٍ مَا وَكَّدَ عَلَيْهِمْ بِالْاِقْرَارِ بِالْاِمَامَةِ وَ مَا جَحَدَ الْعِبَادُ شَيْئًا مَا جَحَدُوهَا.

Ali Ibn Ja’far al-Sadeq (a.s.) reports from his brother (Imam) Moosa (al-Kazim) (a.s.) who used to say a year before his death when his family members gathered around him (a.s.),

“Allah has not emphasized on anything so much for the servants as much as He has emphasized on acknowledgement of Imamate but the people have not denied anything as much as they have denied Imamate.”

## References:

Qurb al-Asnaad, p. 300 H. 1181

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 69, H. 5

# Allah cannot be worshipped except through the obedience of His Proof

عَنِ الْمُفَضَّلِ بْنِ عُمَرَ اَنَّ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ ع كَتَبَ اِلَيْهِ كِتَابًا فِيهِ‏ اَنَّ اللهَ تَعَالَى لَمْ يَبْعَثْ نَبِيًّا قَطُّ يَدْعُو اِلَى مَعْرِفَةِ اللهِ لَيْسَ‏ مَعَهَا طَاعَةٌ فِي‏ اَمْرٍ وَ لَا نَهْيٍ‏ وَ اِنَّمَا يَقْبَلُ‏ اللهُ‏ مِنَ الْعِبَادِ الْعَمَلَ بِالْفَرَائِضِ الَّتِي فَرَضَهَا اللهُ عَلَى حُدُودِهَا مَعَ مَعْرِفَةِ مَنْ دَعَا اِلَيْهِ وَ مَنْ اَطَاعَ حَرَّمَ الْحَرَامَ ظَاهِرَهُ وَ بَاطِنَهُ وَ صَلَّى وَ صَامَ وَ حَجَّ وَ اعْتَمَرَ وَ عَظَّمَ حُرُمَاتِ اللهِ كُلَّهَا وَ لَمْ يَدَعْ مِنْهَا شَيْئًا وَ عَمِلَ بِالْبِرِّ كُلِّهِ وَ مَكَارِمِ الْاَخْلَاقِ كُلِّهَا وَ تَجَنَّبَ سَيِّئَهَا وَ مَنْ زَعَمَ اَنَّهُ يُحِلُّ الْحَلَالَ وَ يُحَرِّمُ الْحَرَامَ بِغَيْرِ مَعْرِفَةِ النَّبِيِّ ص لَمْ يُحِلَّ لِلَّهِ حَلَالًا وَ لَمْ يُحَرِّمْ لَهُ حَرَامًا وَ اِنَّ مَنْ صَلَّى وَ زَكَّى وَ حَجَّ وَ اعْتَمَرَ وَ فَعَلَ ذَلِكَ كُلَّهُ بِغَيْرِ مَعْرِفَةِ مَنِ افْتَرَضَ اللهُ عَلَيْهِ طَاعَتَهُ فَلَمْ يَفْعَلْ شَيْئًا مِنْ ذَلِكَ لَمْ يُصَلِّ وَ لَمْ يَصُمْ وَ لَمْ يُزَكِّ وَ لَمْ يَحُجَّ وَ لَمْ يَعْتَمِرْ وَ لَمْ يَغْتَسِلْ مِنَ الْجَنَابَةِ وَ لَمْ يَتَطَهَّرْ وَ لَمْ يُحَرِّمْ لِلَّهِ حَلَالًا وَ لَيْسَ لَهُ صَلَاةٌ وَ اِنْ رَكَعَ وَ اِنْ سَجَدَ وَ لَا لَهُ زَكَاةٌ وَ لَا حَجٌّ وَ اِنَّمَا ذَلِكَ كُلُّهُ يَكُونُ بِمَعْرِفَةِ رَجُلٍ مَنَّ اللهُ تَعَالَى عَلَى خَلْقِهِ بِطَاعَتِهِ وَ اَمَرَ بِالْاَخْذِ عَنْهُ فَمَنْ عَرَّفَهُ وَ اَخَذَ عَنْهُ اَطَاعَ اللهَ وَ مَنْ زَعَمَ اَنَّ ذَلِكَ اِنَّمَا هِيَ الْمَعْرِفَةُ وَ اَنَّهُ اِذَا عَرَفَ اكْتَفَى بِغَيْرِ طَاعَةٍ فَقَدْ كَذَبَ وَ اَشْرَكَ وَ اِنَّمَا قِيلَ اعْرِفْ وَ اعْمَلْ مَا شِئْتَ مِنَ الْخَيْرِ فَاِنَّهُ لَا يُقْبَلُ مِنْكَ ذَلِكَ بِغَيْرِ مَعْرِفَةٍ فَاِذَا عَرَفْتَ فَاعْمَلْ لِنَفْسِكَ مَا شِئْتَ مِنَ الطَّاعَةِ قَلَّ اَوْ كَثُرَ فَاِنَّهُ مَقْبُولٌ مِنْك‏

Imam Ja’far Sadeq (a.s.) in a letter to Mufazzal bin Umar wrote:

“If a man prays namaz, gives zakat, performs hajj and umrah but does not recognize the one whose obedience has been made compulsory on himthen its like he never prayed and neither gave zakat or performed hajj and umrah. He did not take ceremonial bath of janabat or purified himself. He had no clue what is haraam or halaal as if he never observed them. His namaaz can never be namaaz despite his multiple ruku and sujud. For him it’s no zakat and hajj as well. All these actions from him will only take shape after he acquires recognition of the one whose obedience is made compulsory by Allah and did a huge favour to them.”

## References:

Elal al-Sharaae, vol. 1, p. 250, H. 7

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 1, p. 124, H. 314

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, pp. 175-176, H. 61

# The desire of Allah the Almighty

حَدَّثَنَا الشَّيْخُ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ الطُّوسِيُّ (رَحِمَهُ اللهُ)، قَالَ: اَخْبَرَنَا اَحْمَدُ بْنُ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ الصَّلْتِ الْاَهْوَازِيُّ، قَالَ: اَخْبَرَنَا اَحْمَدُ بْنُ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ سَعِيدِ بْنِ عَبْدِ الرَّحْمَنِ الْحَافِظُ، قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ عِيسَى بْنِ هَارُونَ بْنِ سَلَّامٍ الضَّرِيرُ اَبُو بَكْرٍ، قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ زَكَرِيَّا الْمَكِّيُّ، قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي كَثِيرُ بْنُ طَارِقٍ، مِنْ وُلْدِ قَنْبَرٍ مَوْلَى عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ)، قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي زَيْدُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ) فِي جَارَسُوجَ‏ كِنْدَةٍ بِالْكُوفَةِ: اَنَّ اَبَاهُ حَدَّثَهُ عَنْ اَبِيهِ (عَلَيْهِمَا السَّلَامُ)، عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ، قَالَ: اَعْطَى رَسُولُ اللهِ (صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ) عَلِيًّا (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ) خَاتَمًا فَقَالَ: يَا عَلِيُّ، خُذْ هَذَا الْخَاتَمَ لِلنَّقَّاشِ، لِيَنْقُشَ عَلَيْهِ مُحَمَّدَ بْنَ‏ عَبْدِ اللهِ‏، فَاَخَذَهُ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ) فَاَعْطَاهُ النَّقَّاشَ، وَ قَالَ لَهُ: انْقُشْ عَلَيْهِ مُحَمَّدَ بْنَ عَبْدِ اللهِ، فَنَقَشَ النَّقَّاشُ، وَ اَخْطَاَتْ يَدُهُ، فَنَقَشَ عَلَيْهِ: مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ، فَجَاءَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامَ) فَقَالَ: مَا فَعَلَ الْخَاتَمُ فَقَالَ: هُوَ ذَا، فَاَخَذَهُ وَ نَظَرَ اِلَى نَقْشِهِ، فَقَالَ: مَا اَمَرْتُكَ بِهَذَا، قَالَ: صَدَقْتَ، وَ لَكِنْ يَدِي اَخْطَاَتْ، فَجَاءَ بِهِ اِلَى رَسُولِ اللهِ (صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ)، فَقَالَ: يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ، مَا نَقَشَ النَّقَّاشُ مَا اَمَرْتُ بِهِ، ذَكَرَ اَنَّ يَدَهُ اَخْطَاَتْ، فَاَخَذَهُ النَّبِيُّ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ) وَ نَظَرَ اِلَيْهِ، فَقَالَ: يَا عَلِيُّ، اَنَا مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ عَبْدِ اللهِ، وَ اَنَا مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ، وَ تَخَتَّمَ بِهِ، فَلَمَّا اَصْبَحَ النَّبِيُّ (صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ) نَظَرَ اِلَى خَاتَمِهِ، فَاِذَا تَحْتَهُ مَنْقُوشٌ: عَلِيٌ‏ وَلِيُ‏ اللهِ‏، فَتَعَجَّبَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ النَّبِيُّ (عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ) فَجَاءَ جَبْرَئِيلُ، فَقَالَ: يَا جَبْرَئِيلُ، كَانَ كَذَا وَ كَذَا. فَقَالَ: يَا مُحَمَّدُ، كَتَبْتَ مَا اَرَدْتَ، وَ كَتَبْنَا مَا اَرَدْنَا.

Shaykh Tusi has, through reliable chains, narrated from Imam Zainul Abideen (a.s.) that one day the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) gave his ring to Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and said: Inscribe the words: Muhammad bin Abdullah on it. Ali (a.s.) entrusted it to an engraver who inscribed the desired words.

The next day when Ali (a.s.) took back that ring from the engraver he saw that the words ‘Muhammad Rasoolullaah’ were engraved on it. Ali (a.s.) said: “I did not tell you to engrave these words.”

He replied: “O Ali! You are right. I made a mistake. My hands moved that way.”

Ali (a.s.) brought that ring back to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and told him about the event. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wore it and said: “I am both Muhammad bin Abdullah and Muhammad Rasoolullaah.” Next morning when it was seen, the words ‘Aliyun Waliyullah’ were also found written thereon. It astonished the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Jibraeel (a.s.) came and said that the Almighty Allah says: “My beloved! You inscribed what you desired and I inscribed what I desired.”

## References:

Amaali, p. 705, H. 1510

Me’ah Manaqeb, p. 49, Manaqeb No. 24

Isbaat al-Hodaat, vol. 1, p. 319, H. 204

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 16, pp. 91-92, H. 25

# Allah the High loves those who love the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ: رَاَيْتُ رَسُولَ اللهِ ص قَدْ سَجَدَ خَمْسَ سَجَدَاتٍ بِلَا رُكُوعٍ فَقُلْتُ يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ سُجُودٌ بِلَا رُكُوعٍ فَقَالَ ص نَعَمْ اَتَانِي جَبْرَئِيلُ ع فَقَالَ لِي يَا مُحَمَّدُ اِنَ‏ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَ‏ يُحِبُ‏ عَلِيًّا فَسَجَدْتُ وَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي فَقَالَ لِي اِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يُحِبُّ فَاطِمَةَ فَسَجَدْتُ وَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي فَقَالَ لِي اِنَّ اللهَ يُحِبُّ الْحَسَنَ فَسَجَدْتُ وَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي فَقَالَ لِي اِنَّ اللهَ يُحِبُّ الْحُسَيْنَ فَسَجَدْتُ وَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي فَقَالَ لِي اِنَّ اللهَ يُحِبُّ مَنْ اَحَبَّهُمْ فَسَجَدْتُ وَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي.

Ibn Abbas informs, “I saw the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) prostrate five times without ruku’. I asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah, (You performed) prostrations without ruku?’ He (s.a.w.a.) replied,

‘Yes. Jibraeel (a.s.) came to me and informed, ‘O Muhammad! Verily, Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - loves Ali’ so I prostrated and raised my head. Then, he told me, ‘Verily, Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - loves Fatema’ so I prostrated and raised my head. Then, he told me, ‘Verily, Allah loves Hasan’ so I prostrated and raised my head. Then, he told me, ‘Verily, Allah loves Husain’ so I prostrated and raised my head. Then, he told me, ‘Verily Allah loves those who love them, so I prostrated and raised my head’.

## References:

Al-Durr al-Nazeem, p. 718

Manaqeb of Ibn Shahr Ashoub, vol. 1, p. 286,

Hulyah al-Abraar, vol. 1, p. 337, H. 3

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 83, p. 219

# Allah has written Aliyyun Waliyyullah across the heavens and the earth

وَ رَوَى الْقَاسِمُ بْنُ مُعَاوِيَةَ قَالَ‏ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع هَؤُلَاءِ يَرْوُونَ حَدِيثًا فِي مِعْرَاجِهِمْ اَنَّهُ لَمَّا أُسْرِيَ بِرَسُولِ اللهِ رَاَى عَلَى الْعَرْشِ‏ مَكْتُوبًا لَا اِلَهَ‏ اِلَّا اللهُ‏ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ‏ اللهِ اَبُو بَكْرٍ الصِّدِّيقُ فَقَالَ سُبْحَانَ اللهِ غَيَّرُوا كُلَّ شَيْ‏ءٍ حَتَّى هَذَا؟ قُلْتُ نَعَمْ قَالَ اِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ لَمَّا خَلَقَ الْعَرْشَ كَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الْمَاءَ كَتَبَ فِي مَجْرَاهُ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ- وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الْكُرْسِيَّ كَتَبَ عَلَى قَوَائِمِهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اللَّوْحَ كَتَبَ فِيهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ اِسْرَافِيلَ كَتَبَ عَلَى جَبْهَتِهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ جَبْرَئِيلَ كَتَبَ عَلَى جَنَاحَيْهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ السَّمَاوَاتِ كَتَبَ فِي اَكْنَافِهَا لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الْاَرَضِينَ كَتَبَ فِي اَطْبَاقِهَا لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الْجِبَالَ كَتَبَ فِي رُءُوسِهَا لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الشَّمْسَ كَتَبَ عَلَيْهَا لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ لَمَّا خَلَقَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ الْقَمَرَ كَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ هُوَ السَّوَادُ الَّذِي تَرَوْنَهُ فِي الْقَمَرِ فَاِذَا قَالَ اَحَدُكُمْ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللهِ فَلْيَقُلْ عَلِيٌّ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ع‏

The narrator says, “I said to Imam Sadeq (a.s.) – These people narrate a tradition of their version of Me’raj that when Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) ascended to the heavens he saw that on the Arsh it was written on it, “There is no god but Allah, Mohammad is the Prophet of Allah, Abu Bakr is the most truthful”

He (a.s.) exclaimed, “Glory be to Allah! They have distorted everything to such an extent, have they distorted even this?”

I said, ‘Yes’.

He (a.s.) said, “Surely Allah Mighty and Majestic be He when He created the Arsh, He wrote upon it, “There is no god but Allah, Mohammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created Israafeel, He wrote on his forehead, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created Jibraeel, He wrote on his wings, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created the heavens, He wrote on its limits, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created the earths, He wrote in its layers, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created the mountains, He wrote on its peaks, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created the sun, He wrote upon it, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

When Allah created the moon, He wrote upon it, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah, Ali is the Chief of the Believers” and that is the darkness, which you see on the moon.

Therefore, whenever any of you says, “There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Prophet of Allah” then he MUST also say, “Ali is the Chief of the Believers”.

## References:

Al-Ehtejaaj, vol. 1, p. 158

Madinah al-Ma’ajiz, vol. 2, p. 375, H. 612

# Recognition of the Divine Proof (a.s.) is a condition for martyrdom

عَنِ الْحَارِثِ بْنِ الْمُغِيرَةِ قَالَ: قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص مَنْ مَاتَ‏ لَا يَعْرِفُ‏ اِمَامَهُ‏ مَاتَ‏ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً قَالَ‏ نَعَمْ‏ قُلْتُ جَاهِلِيَّةً جَهْلَاءَ اَوْ جَاهِلِيَّةً لَا يَعْرِفُ اِمَامَهُ قَالَ جَاهِلِيَّةَ كُفْرٍ وَ نِفَاقٍ وَ ضَلَالٍ.

Al-Haarith Ibn al-Mughirah reports, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) did the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) say, ‘Whoever dies without recognizing his Imam has died the death of ignorance’? He (a.s.) said,

‘Yes [(he s.a.w.a.) did say that] .... (the one who dies without the recognizing his Imam has died the death of) ignorance of disbelief, hypocrisy and deviation’.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 377, H. 3

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 8, p. 364, H. 39

# People have value only when they follow the Divine Proof (a.s.)

عَنْ جَمِيلٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ ع يَقُولُ‏ يَغْدُو النَّاسُ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةِ صُنُوفٍ عَالِمٍ وَ مُتَعَلِّمٍ وَ غُثَاءٍ فَنَحْنُ الْعُلَمَاءُ وَ شِيعَتُنَا الْمُتَعَلِّمُونَ‏ وَ سَائِرُ النَّاسِ‏ غُثَاءٌ.

The narrator (Jameel) said: I heard Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) say,

“People are of three kinds: Scholar (teacher), student and garbage. So, we are the scholars, our follower (Shiahs) are the students and the rest of the people are garbage.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 8, H. 1

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 34, H. 4

Al Khesaal, vol. 1, p. 123, H. 115

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 18, H. 33094

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 1, p. 194, H. 8

# Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is the foundation of religion and his followers are the handsome ones

قَالَ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنْتَ اَصْلُ الدِّينِ وَ مَنَارُ الْاِيمَانِ‏ وَ غَايَةُ الْهُدَى‏ وَ قَائِدُ الْغُرِّ الْمُحَجَّلِينَ‏ اَشْهَدُ بِذَلِك‏

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“O Ali! You are the foundation of religion, the lighthouse of faith, the aim of guidance and the leader of the handsome ones. I witness for you all of these.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 31, H. 8, Ch. 13

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 3, p. 230, H. 5452

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 3, H. 2

# The Infallible Imams (a.s.) are the truthful ones

عَنْ اَحْمَدَ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ الرِّضَا ع عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ تَعَالَى‏ يا اَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللهَ وَ كُونُوا مَعَ‏ الصَّادِقِينَ‏ قَالَ‏ الصَّادِقُونَ‏ الْاَئِمَّةُ الصِّدِّيقُونَ‏ بِطَاعَتِهِمْ‏.

The narrator (Ahmad Ibn Muhammad) reports, “I asked Imam al-Reza (a.s.) about the word of Allah the High, **‘O you who believe! Fear Allah and be with the truthful ones’**. He (a.s.) replied,

‘Truthful ones implies the Imams, whose (truthfulness) is verified with their obedience.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 31, H. 2

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 31, H. 5

# The Imams of Guidance and the Imams of Deviation

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: قَرَأْتُ فِي‏ كِتَابِ‏ اَبِي‏ الْاَئِمَّةِ فِي‏ كِتَابِ‏ اللهِ اِمَامَانِ اِمَامُ الْهُدَى وَ اِمَامُ الضَّلَالِ فَاَمَّا اَئِمَّةُ الْهُدَى فَيُقَدِّمُونَ اَمْرَ اللهِ قَبْلَ اَمْرِهِمْ وَ حُكْمَ اللهِ قَبْلَ حُكْمِهِمْ وَ اَمَّا اَئِمَّةُ الضَّلَالِ فَاِنَّهُمْ يُقَدِّمُونَ اَمْرَهُمْ قَبْلَ اَمْرِ اللهِ حُكْمُهُمْ قَبْلَ حُكْمِ اللهِ اتِّبَاعًا لِاَهْوَائِهِمْ وَ خِلَافًا لِمَا فِي الْكِتَابِ.

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) informs,

“I read in the book of the father of Imams (Ali a.s.), ‘In the Book of Allah, there are two (kinds of) Imam: the Imam of guidance and the Imam of deviation. As for the Imams of guidance, they give preference to Allah’s command prior to their own command and Allah’s judgment prior to their judgment. But as for the Imams of deviation, then surely they give preference to their command before Allah’s command and their judgment before Allah’s judgment, following their carnal desires and opposing whatever is in the Book.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 32, H. 1

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 156, H. 14

# The indecencies forbidden by Allah in the Holy Quran are the Imams of Deviation

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مَنْصُورٍ قَالَ:- سَاَلْتُ عَبْدًا صَالِحًا عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ- قُلْ اِنَّما حَرَّمَ رَبِّيَ الْفَواحِشَ‏ ما ظَهَرَ مِنْها وَ ما بَطَنَ‏ قَالَ فَقَالَ‏ اِنَ‏ الْقُرْآنَ‏ لَهُ‏ ظَهْرٌ وَ بَطْنٌ‏ فَجَمِيعُ‏ مَا حَرَّمَ اللهُ فِي الْقُرْآنِ هُوَ الظَّاهِرُ وَ الْبَاطِنُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ اَئِمَّةُ الْجَوْرِ- وَ جَمِيعُ مَا اَحَلَّ اللهُ تَعَالَى فِي الْكِتَابِ هُوَ الظَّاهِرُ وَ الْبَاطِنُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ اَئِمَّةُ الْحَقِّ.

Muhammad Ibn Mansoor reports, “I asked Abd Saleh (Imam Kazim a.s.) about the word of Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - **‘Say: My Lord has only prohibited the indecencies from the manifest of them as well as the concealed ones’**. He (a.s.) replied,

‘For the Quran, there is an apparent and a concealed. Then whatever Allah has prohibited in the Quran, it is the apparent and its concealed meaning implies the unjust Imams and whatever Allah the High has permitted in the Book it is the apparent while the concealed refers to the Imams of truth.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 33, H. 2

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 374, H. 10

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 25, p. 10, H. 31000

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 2, p. 539, H. 3868

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 301, H. 7

# The Great Kingdom is the Wilaayah of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ بُرَيْدٍ الْعِجْلِيِّ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع‏ فِي قَوْلِ اللهِ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى‏ فَقَدْ آتَيْنا آلَ اِبْراهِيمَ الْكِتابَ وَ الْحِكْمَةَ وَ آتَيْناهُمْ مُلْكًا عَظِيمًا فَجَعَلْنَا مِنْهُمُ الرُّسُلَ وَ الْاَنْبِيَاءَ وَ الْاَئِمَّةَ فَكَيْفَ يُقِرُّونَ فِي آلِ اِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ يُنْكِرُونَ فِي آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ ص قُلْتُ فَمَا مَعْنَى قَوْلِهِ‏ وَ آتَيْناهُمْ‏ مُلْكًا عَظِيمًا قَالَ‏ الْمُلْكُ‏ الْعَظِيمُ‏ اَنْ جَعَلَ فِيهِمْ اَئِمَّةً مَنْ اَطَاعَهُمْ‏ اَطَاعَ اللهَ وَ مَنْ عَصَاهُمْ عَصَى اللهَ فَهُوَ الْمُلْكُ الْعَظِيمُ.

The narrator (Buraid al-I’jliyy) asked Imam Muhammad al-Baqer (a.s.) about the word of Allah - Blessed and High be He - “**Then indeed We gave the progeny of Ibraheem the Book and Wisdom and We gave them a great kingdom**”. He (a.s.) replied, “He appointed from them the Messengers, the Prophets and the Imams (a.s.). So, how they acknowledge the progeny of Ibraheem (a.s.) but deny the offspring of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)?” I asked, “(What is the meaning of) and We gave them a great kingdom?” He (a.s.) replied,

“The Great Kingdom is that He appointed among them the Imams. Whoever obeyed them has obeyed Allah and whoever disobeyed them has disobeyed Allah. Then this is the Great Kingdom (i.e. absolute wilaayat).”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 36, H. 6

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 207, H. 2

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 2, p. 93, H. 2427

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 287, H. 10

# The Ahle Bait(a.s.) are the Reminder about which the nation shall be questioned

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع‏ فِي قَوْلِ اللهِ تَعَالَى‏ وَ اِنَّهُ لَذِكْرٌ لَكَ وَ لِقَوْمِكَ وَ سَوْفَ تُسْئَلُونَ‏ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص وَ اَهْلُ‏ بَيْتِهِ‏ الْمَسْئُولُونَ‏ وَ هُمْ أُولُو الذِّكْرِ.

Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.) explained about the word of Allah the High, “**Surely, it is a reminder for you and for your nation and soon you will be questioned**” (Surah Zukhruf (43): Verse 44) that

“the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and his family members (a.s.) are those about whom the nation will be questioned and they are the people of remembrance.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 37, H. 2

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 62, H. 33203

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 176, H. 10

# To Raise anyone to the status of Imamat is Polytheism

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع قَالَ: اِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ نَصَبَ عَلِيًّا ع عَلَمًا بَيْنَهُ‏ وَ بَيْنَ‏ خَلْقِهِ‏ فَمَنْ‏ عَرَفَهُ‏ كَانَ مُؤْمِنًا وَ مَنْ اَنْكَرَهُ كَانَ كَافِرًا وَ مَنْ جَهِلَهُ كَانَ ضَالًّا وَ مَنْ نَصَبَ مَعَهُ شَيْئًا كَانَ مُشْرِكًا وَ مَنْ جَاءَ بِوَلَايَتِهِ دَخَلَ الْجَنَّةَ.

Imam Baqer (a.s.) says:

“Certainly, Allah the Almighty, established Ali, peace be upon him, as an emblem between Himself and His creation. Whosoever acquires his recognition is a believer and whosoever denies him is a disbeliever. Whoever remains ignorant of him is deviated. **Whoever raises anyone to his status is a polytheist**. While the one who reaches (Allah) with belief in his mastership enters heaven.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 437, H. 7

Amaali, p. 487, H. 1067

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 28, p. 353, H. 34951

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 32, p. 324, H. 300

# Rejection of the Divine Proof(a.s.) is Polytheism

عَنْ سَمَاعَةَ بْنِ مِهْرَانَ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ ع عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ- فَلْيَعْمَلْ عَمَلًا صالِحًا وَ لا يُشْرِكْ بِعِبادَةِ رَبِّهِ اَحَدًا قَالَ الْعَمَلُ الصَّالِحُ الْمَعْرِفَةُ بِالْاَئِمَّةِ ع- وَ لا يُشْرِكْ بِعِبادَةِ رَبِّهِ اَحَدًا التَّسْلِيمُ لِعَلِيٍّ ع- لَا يُشْرِكُ‏ مَعَهُ‏ فِي‏ الْخِلَافَةِ مَنْ‏ لَيْسَ‏ لَهُ ذَلِكَ وَ لَا هُوَ مِنْ اَهْلِهِ.

Sama’ah Ibn Mehraan reports, “I asked (Imam) Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) about the word of Allah, ‘**...then he must perform righteous action and not associate anybody in the worship of his Lord** (Surah Kahf (18): Verse 110)’. He (a.s.) informed,

‘Righteous Action implies the recognition of the Imams (a.s.) and not associate anyone in the worship of his Lord means to submit to Ali (a.s.) and not associate anyone in Caliphate who is not for it and does not deserve it’.”

## References:

Tafseer al-Ayyashi, vol. 2, p. 353, H. 97

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 3, p. 691, H. 6828

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 36, p. 106, H. 54

# Allah shall not speak to those who deny the Divine Proofs (a.s.)

عِدَّةٌ مِنْ اَصْحَابِنَا عَنْ اَحْمَدَ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ عَنِ الْوَشَّاءِ عَنْ دَاوُدَ الْحَمَّارِ عَنِ ابْنِ اَبِي يَعْفُورٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ‏ ثَلَاثَةٌ لا يُكَلِّمُهُمُ اللهُ- يَوْمَ الْقِيامَةِ وَ لا يُزَكِّيهِمْ وَ لَهُمْ عَذابٌ اَلِيمٌ‏ مَنِ ادَّعَى اِمَامَةً مِنَ اللهِ‏ لَيْسَتْ‏ لَهُ‏ وَ مَنْ‏ جَحَدَ اِمَامًا مِنَ اللهِ وَ مَنْ زَعَمَ اَنَّ لَهُمَا فِي الْاِسْلَامِ نَصِيبًا.

Ibn Abi Yaafoor reports, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah [al-Sadeq] (a.s.) say,

‘There are three people at whom Allah will not look on the Day of Judgment nor will He purify them and for them will be a painful chastisement. One who claims Imamate from Allah while he is not eligible for the same, one who denies an Imam from Allah (i.e. appointed by Allah) and one who thinks that they two (pseudo-caliphs) had any portion in Islam (i.e. considers them as Muslims)’ .”

## References:

Tafseer al-Ayyashi, vol. 1, p. 178, H. 64

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 373, H. 4

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 28, p. 349, H. 34937

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 1, p. 643, H. 1753

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 7, p. 212, H. 114

# Those who oppose the Divine Proofs (a.s.) are polytheists

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: مَنْ‏ اَشْرَكَ‏ مَعَ‏ اِمَامٍ‏ اِمَامَتُهُ مِنْ عِنْدِ اللهِ مَنْ لَيْسَتْ اِمَامَتُهُ مِنَ اللهِ كَانَ مُشْرِكًا بِاللَّهِ.

Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said,

“Whoever associates with an Imam, whose Imamate is from the side of Allah, an Imam who is not from Allah, has ascribed associates with Allah (i.e. has become a polytheist).”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 373, H. 6

Al-Ghaibah, p. 130, H. 8

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 78, H. 11

# Both the false claimant of Imamat and the one who follows him are accursed

وَ قَالَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَ‏ لا تَجِدُ قَوْمًا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللهِ وَ الْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ يُوادُّونَ مَنْ حَادَّ اللهَ وَ رَسُولَهُ وَ لَوْ كانُوا آباءَهُمْ اَوْ اَبْناءَهُمْ اَوْ اِخْوانَهُمْ اَوْ عَشِيرَتَهُمْ‏ وَ قَالَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَ‏ وَ لا تَرْكَنُوا اِلَى الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا فَتَمَسَّكُمُ النَّارُوَ الظُّلْمُ هُوَ وَضْعُ الشَّيْ‏ءِ فِي غَيْرِ مَوْضِعِهِ فَمَنِ ادَّعَى الْاِمَامَةَ وَ لَيْسَ بِاِمَامٍ فَهُوَ الظَّالِمُ الْمَلْعُونُ وَ مَنْ وَضَعَ الْاِمَامَةَ فِي غَيْرِ اَهْلِهَا فَهُوَ ظَالِمٌ‏ مَلْعُونٌ‏.

Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - said, “You shall not find a people who believe in Allah and the latter day befriending those who act in opposition to Allah and His Apostle, even though they were their (own) fathers, or their sons, or their brothers, or their kinsfolk...” and He - Mighty and Majestic be He - said, “And do not incline to those who are unjust, lest the fire touch you...”And injustice means to put a thing in its inappropriate place. Thus, whoever claims Imamate while he is not an Imam (from the side of Allah) is unjust and accursed. And whoever believes in an Imam who is not eligible for that post is unjust and accursed.”

## References:

Al-E’teqadaat, p. 103

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 61, H. 21

# Denial of the Divine Proofs (a.s.) is Denial of Allah the Almighty

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ‏ أُمِرَ النَّاسُ بِمَعْرِفَتِنَا وَ الرَّدِّ اِلَيْنَا وَ التَّسْلِيمِ لَنَا ثُمَّ قَالَ وَ اِنْ صَامُوا وَ صَلَّوْا وَ شَهِدُوا اَنْ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ وَ جَعَلُوا فِي‏ اَنْفُسِهِمْ‏ اَنْ‏ لَا يَرُدُّوا اِلَيْنَا كَانُوا بِذَلِكَ مُشْرِكِينَ.

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said:

It has been ordained for the people to acquire our recognition, refer towards us in their problems and submit to our command. If people decide to fast, pray, testify to monotheism but refuse to turn to us in their problems **then they will be termed polytheists**.

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 398, H. 5

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 68, H. 33221

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 11, p. 177, H. 5

# Those who deny the Divine Proofs (a.s.) have entered the darkness of disbelief

عَنِ ابْنِ اَبِي يَعْفُورٍ قَالَ: قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع اِنِّي أُخَالِطُ النَّاسَ فَيَكْثُرُ عَجَبِي مِنْ اَقْوَامٍ لَا يَتَوَالَوْنَكُمْ وَ يَتَوَالَوْنَ فُلَانًا وَ فُلَانًا لَهُمْ اَمَانَةٌ وَ صِدْقٌ وَ وَفَاءٌ وَ اَقْوَامٌ يَتَوَالَوْنَكُمْ لَيْسَ لَهُمْ تِلْكَ الْاَمَانَةُ وَ لَا الْوَفَاءُ وَ لَا الصِّدْقُ قَال‏ فَاسْتَوَى اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِ ع جَالِسًا وَ اَقْبَلَ عَلَيَّ كَالْمُغْضَبِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لَا دِينَ لِمَنْ دَانَ بِوِلَايَةِ اِمَامٍ جَائِرٍ لَيْسَ مِنَ اللهِ وَ لَا عَتْبَ عَلَى مَنْ دَانَ بِوِلَايَةِ اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ مِنَ اللهِ قُلْتُ لَا دِينَ لِأُولَئِكَ وَ لَا عَتْبَ عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اَ لَا تَسْمَعُ قَوْلَ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَ‏ اللهُ وَلِيُّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا يُخْرِجُهُمْ مِنَ الظُّلُماتِ اِلَى النُّورِ مِنْ ظُلُمَات الذُّنُوبِ اِلَى نُورِ التَّوْبَةِ اَوِ الْمَغْفِرَةِ لِوَلَايَتِهِمْ كُلَّ اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ مِنَ اللهِ قَالَ‏ وَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا اَوْلِياؤُهُمُ الطَّاغُوتُ يُخْرِجُونَهُمْ مِنَ النُّورِ اِلَى الظُّلُماتِ‏ فَاَيُّ نُورٍ يَكُونُ لِلْكَافِرِ فَيَخْرُجُ مِنْهُ اِنَّمَا عَنَى بِهَذَا اَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا عَلَى نُورِ الْاِسْلَامِ فَلَمَّا تَوَالَوْا كُلَّ اِمَامٍ جَائِرٍ لَيْسَ مِنَ اللهِ خَرَجُوا بِوَلَايَتِهِمْ اِيَّاهُمْ مِنْ نُورِ الْاِسْلَامِ اِلَى ظُلُمَاتِ الْكُفْرِ فَاَوْجَبَ‏ اللهُ‏ لَهُمُ‏ النَّارَ مَعَ‏ الْكُفَّارِ فَقَالَ‏ أُولئِكَ اَصْحابُ النَّارِ هُمْ فِيها خالِدُون‏

Ibn Abi Ya’foor said: Once I said to Abu Abd Allah (a.s.) ‘I meet people and it increases my wonder when I find people who do not consider you (Ahl al-Bayt) as their guardians and Infallible Imams (Leaders with Divine Authority) but they consider so and so as their Imam. However, they are trustworthy, truthful and loyal. I also find people who consider you as their guardians and Infallible Imams (Leaders with Divine Authority) but are not trustworthy, loyal and truthful.’ Abu Abd Allah (a.s.) then sat in an upright position and turned to me as if angered, and then said, ‘One who follows the religion of Allah under the guardianship of an unjust Imam who does not possesses Divine Authority, has no religion. One who follows the religion of Allah under the guardianship of an Imam who is just in his dealings and possesses Divine Authority, will suffer no negative effect.’ “I then asked, ‘Do those, in fact, have no religion, and these face no destruction?’ The Imam (a.s.) said, ‘That is correct. Those have no religion and these face no destruction.’ Then the Imam (a.s.) said, ‘Have you not heard the words of Allah, the Most Majestic, the Most Gracious: ‘Allah is the Guardian of the believers and it is He who takes them out of darkness into light…’ (2:257) It means that He takes them out of the darkness of sins to the light of repentance and forgiveness because of their love for and their being under the guardianship of the just Infallible Imams (a.s.) who possess Divine Authority. He has also said, ‘The Devil is the guardian of those who deny the Truth and he leads them from light to darkness…’ (2:257) It means that they were in the light of Islam but when they accepted the guardianship and the leadership of every unjust Imam who possessed no authority from Allah, the Most Majestic, the Most Gracious, their guardianship took them out of the light of Islam to the darkness of disbelief. Allah then made it necessary for them to suffer in fire along with the unbelievers, ‘…these are the dwellers of hell wherein they will live forever.’” (2:257)

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, pp. 375-376, H. 3

Al-Ghaibah, pp. 133-134, H. 14

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 1, p. 522, H. 1405

Mir’aat al-Oqool, vol. 4, pp. 215-217, H. 3

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, pp. 322-323, H. 39

Tafseer Noor al-Saqlain, vol. 1, p. 266, H. 1070

# There can be no Wilaayah without Bara’aah

وَ رُوِيَ عَنِ الرِّضَا ع اَنَّهُ قَالَ: كَمَالُ الدِّينِ وَلَايَتُنَا وَ الْبَرَاءَةُ مِنْ عَدُوِّنَا ثُمَّ قَالَ الصَّفْوَانِيُّ وَ اعْلَمْ اَنَّهُ لَا يَتِمُّ الْوَلَايَةُ وَ لَا تَخْلُصُ‏ الْمَحَبَّةُ وَ لَا تَثْبُتُ الْمَوَدَّةُ لاِلِ مُحَمَّدٍ اِلَّا بِالْبَرَاءَةِ مِنْ عَدُوِّهِمْ قَرِيبًا كَانَ اَوْ بَعِيدًا فَلَا تَأْخُذْكَ بِهِ رَأْفَةٌفَاِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يَقُولُ‏ لا تَجِدُ قَوْمًا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَ الْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ يُوادُّونَ مَنْ حَادَّ اللهَ وَ رَسُولَهُ وَ لَوْ كانُوا آباءَهُمْ اَوْ اَبْناءَهُمْ اَوْ اِخْوانَهُمْ اَوْ عَشِيرَتَهُمْ‏ الْآيَةَ.

It is narrated from Imam Reza (a.s.) that he (a.s.) said, “The perfection of religion is (acceptance of) our mastership and expressing enmity towards our enemies.” Safwaani says, “Know that mastership will not be complete, love will not be pure and adoration for the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) will not be firm except by expressing enmity towards their enemies, whether near or far. **So let not any kindness for them seize you**. Surely, Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - says, ‘**You will not find a nation believing in Allah and the Day of Judgment befriending those who act in opposition to Allah and His Apostle, even though they were their (own) fathers, or their sons, or their brothers, or their kinsfolk**;**... till the end of the verse**’. (Surah Mujaadilah (58): Verse 22)

## References

Al-Saraaer al-Haavi, vol. 3, p. 640

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 58, H. 19

# He lies who claims to love the Ahle Bait (a.s.) but does not express hatred towards their enemies

وَ قِيلَ لِلصَّادِقِ ع اِنَّ فُلَانًا يُوَالِيكُمْ اِلَّا اَنَّهُ‏ يَضْعُفُ‏ عَنِ‏ الْبَرَاءَةِ مِنْ‏ عَدُوِّكُمْ‏ قَالَ هَيْهَاتَ كَذَبَ مَنِ ادَّعَى مَحَبَّتَنَا وَ لَمْ يَتَبَرَّأْ مِنْ عَدُوِّنَا

It was said to Imam Sadeq (a.s.), “So and so person expresses his love for you (Ahle Bait a.s.) but weakens in expressing his enmity against your enemy.” Imam (a.s.) retorted,

“Alas! He has lied who claims our love but did not express his hatred against our enemy.”

## References:

Al-Saraaer al-Haavi, vol. 3, p. 640

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 58, H. 18

# Who are the Batris?

‏ عَنْ سَدِيرٍ قَالَ: دَخَلْتُ عَلَى اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع وَ مَعِي سَلَمَةُ بْنُ كُهَيْلٍ وَ اَبُو الْمِقْدَامِ ثَابِتٌ الْحَدَّادُ وَ سَالِمُ بْنُ اَبِي حَفْصَةَ وَ كَثِيرٌ النَّوَّاءُ وَ جَمَاعَةٌ مَعَهُمْ وَ عِنْدَ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ اَخُوهُ زَيْدُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ فَقَالُوا لِاَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع نَتَوَلَّى عَلِيًّا وَ حَسَنًا وَ حُسَيْنًا وَ نَتَبَرَّأُ مِنْ اَعْدَائِهِمْ قَالَ نَعَمْ قَالُوا نَتَوَلَّى اَبَا بَكْرٍ وَ عُمَرَ وَ نَتَبَرَّأُ مِنْ اَعْدَائِهِمْ قَالَ فَالْتَفَتَ اِلَيْهِمْ زَيْدُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ وَ قَالَ لَهُمْ اَ تَتَبَرَّءُونَ مِنْ فَاطِمَةَ بَتَرْتُمْ اَمْرَنَا بَتَرَكُمُ اللهُ فَيَوْمَئِذٍ سُمُّوا الْبُتْرِيَّةَ.

Sudair reports, “I went to Abu Jafar, Imam al-Baqer (a.s) and with me were Salamah Ibn Kohail, Abu al-Miqdaam Thaabit al-Haddaad, Saalem Ibn Abi Hafsah, Katheer al-Nawwaa and a group of them and with Abu Jafar (a.s.) was his brother Zaid ibne Ali. They said to Abu Jafar (a.s.), “We love Ali, Hasan and Husain and we express our enmity with their enemies.” Imam (a.s.) said, “Yes.”

They said: “We also love so and so and hate their enemies.”

At this, Zaid ibne Ali turned to them and said: “Are you expressing hatred towards Fatema (a.s.)? You have cut off our affair (Imamate)! May Allah cut you!” From that day, they were called as ‘al-Butriyyah’.

## References:

Rejaal al-Kashi,p. 236

Man La Yahzoruhual-Faqeeh, vol. 4, p. 544

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 37, p. 31

# The Batris shall declare war against Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.)

رَوَى اَبُو الْجَارُودِ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع فِي حَدِيثٍ طَوِيلٍ اَنَّهُ قَالَ‏ اِذَا قَامَ الْقَائِمُ ع سَارَ اِلَى الْكُوفَةِ فَيَخْرُجُ مِنْهَا بِضْعَةَ عَشَرَ آلاف [اَلْفَ‏] اَنْفُسٍ يُدْعَوْنَ الْبُتْرِيَّةَ عَلَيْهِمُ السِّلَاحُ فَيَقُولُونَ لَهُ ارْجِعْ مِنْ حَيْثُ جِئْتَ فَلَا حَاجَةَ لَنَا فِي بَنِي فَاطِمَةَ فَيَضَعُ فِيهِمُ السَّيْفَ حَتَّى يَأْتِيَ عَلَى آخِرِهِمْ ثُمَّ يَدْخُلُ الْكُوفَةَ فَيَقْتُلُ بِهَا كُلَّ مُنَافِقٍ مُرْتَابٍ وَ يَهْدِمُ قُصُورَهَا وَ يَقْتُلُ مُقَاتِلِيهَا حَتَّى يَرْضَى اللهُ عَزَّ وَ عَلَا.

Abu al-Jaarood has narrated in a lengthy tradition that Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer) (a.s.) said,

“When the Qaim (a.t.f.s.) rises, he will travel to Kufah where tens of thousands people will come out (against) him; they will be called as **Batris**. They will be well-armed and will say (to him), ‘Return from where you have come because we don’t need the sons of Fatemah (s.a.)’. He (a.t.f.s.) will put them to sword till he reaches to the last of them. Thereafter, he will enter Kufah and kill in it every hypocrite, skeptic; destroy its palaces and kill its fighters till Allah - Mighty and High be He - is satisfied.”

## References:

Kitab al-Irshad, vol. 2, p. 384

E’laam al-Waraa, p. 461

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 2, p. 465

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 52, p. 338, H. 81

# Those who befriend the enemies of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) and make enemies with the lovers of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are worse than the Anti-Christ (al-Dajjal)

عَنِ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ الْخَزَّازِ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ الرِّضَا ع يَقُولُ‏ اِنَّ مِمَّنْ يَنْتَحِلُ مَوَدَّتَنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ- مَنْ هُوَ اَشَدُّ فِتْنَةً عَلَى شِيعَتِنَا مِنَ‏ الدَّجَّالِ‏- فَقُلْتُ بِمَا ذَا قَالَ بِمُوَالاةِ اَعْدَائِنَا وَ مُعَادَاةِ اَوْلِيَائِنَا اِنَّهُ اِذَا كَانَ كَذَلِكَ اخْتَلَطَ الْحَقُّ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَ اشْتَبَهَ الْاَمْرُ فَلَمْ يُعْرَفْ مُؤْمِنٌ مِنْ مُنَافِقٍ.

Al-Husain Ibn Ali al-Khazzaaz narrates that he heard Imam Reza (a.s.) say, “Certainly, from the one who claims to love us Ahl al-bait (a.s.) is he who is a greater mischief on our Shiahs than the Anti-Christ (Dajjaal).” I (the narrator) asked, “How?” He (a.s.) replied,

“By befriending our enemies and making enemies with our Shiahs. When this will be the situation, truth will become mixed with falsehood and the affair (Imamate) will become confused. Thus, a believer will not be distinguished from a hypocrite.”

## References:

Sifaat al-Shiah, p. 8, H. 14

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 16, p. 179, H. 21289

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 72, p. 391, H. 13

# Unity can be achieved only through the Imamat of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

Hazrat Zahra (s.a.) in her historical sermon said:

وَ طَاعَتَنَا نِظَاماً لِلْمِلَّةِ وَ إِمَامَتَنَا أَمَاناً لِلْفُرْقَة

“...our obedience is the system for religion and our Imamat is a security from disunity...”

## References:

Balaaghaat al-Nisaa, p. 28

Al-Ehtejaaj, vol. 1, p. 99,

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 29, p. 223 and 241

# The Naasebi is the one who hates the lovers of the Divinely Appointed Hujjat

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ‏ لَيْسَ النَّاصِبُ مَنْ نَصَبَ لَنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ لِاَنَّكَ لَا تَجِدُ رَجُلًا يَقُولُ‏ اَنَا أُبْغِضُ‏ مُحَمَّدًا وَ آلَ‏ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ لَكِنَّ النَّاصِبَ مَنْ نَصَبَ لَكُمْ وَ هُوَ يَعْلَمُ اَنَّكُمْ تَتَوَلَّوْنَّا وَ اَنَّكُمْ مِنْ شِيعَتِنَا

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“He is not a Naasebi who bears enmity against us Ahle Bait (a.s.). For, you will certainly not find anyone say, ‘I hate Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)’ but a Naasebi is the one who bears enmity against you (Shiahs) knowing that you have accepted our mastership and that you are from our Shiahs.”

## References:

Maani al-Akhbaar, p. 365, H. 1

Elal al-Sharaae, vol. 2, p. 601

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 9, p. 486, H. 12548

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 8, p. 369

# Imam (a.t.f.s.) will not spare the Naasebis but will live in peace with the Ahle Kitab

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ‏ قَالَ لِي يَا اَبَا مُحَمَّدٍ كَاَنِّي اَرَى نُزُولَ الْقَائِمِ ع فِي مَسْجِدِ السَّهْلَةِ بِاَهْلِهِ وَ عِيَالِهِ قُلْتُ يَكُونُ مَنْزِلَهُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ قَالَ نَعَمْ كَانَ فِيهِ مَنْزِلُ اِدْرِيسَ وَ كَانَ مَنْزِلَ اِبْرَاهِيمَ خَلِيلِ الرَّحْمَنِ وَ مَا بَعَثَ اللهُ نَبِيًّا اِلَّا وَ قَدْ صَلَّى فِيهِ وَ فِيهِ مَسْكَنُ الْخَضِرِ وَ الْمُقِيمُ فِيهِ كَالْمُقِيمِ فِي فُسْطَاطِ رَسُولِ اللهِ ص وَ مَا مِنْ مُؤْمِنٍ وَ لَا مُؤْمِنَةٍ اِلَّا وَ قَلْبُهُ يَحِنُّ اِلَيْهِ قُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ لَا يَزَالُ الْقَائِمُ فِيهِ اَبَدًا قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمِنْ بَعْدِهِ قَالَ هَكَذَا مِنْ بَعْدِهِ اِلَى انْقِضَاءِ الْخَلْقِ قُلْتُ فَمَا يَكُونُ مِنْ اَهْلِ الذِّمَّةِ عِنْدَهُ- قَالَ يُسَالِمُهُمْ‏ كَمَا سَالَمَهُمْ‏ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص وَ يُؤَدُّونَ‏ الْجِزْيَةَ عَنْ يَدٍ وَ هُمْ صاغِرُونَ‏ قُلْتُ فَمَنْ نَصَبَ لَكُمْ عَدَاوَةً فَقَالَ لَا يَا بَا مُحَمَّدٍ مَا لِمَنْ خَالَفَنَا فِي دَوْلَتِنَا مِنْ نَصِيبٍ اِنَّ اللهَ قَدْ اَحَلَّ لَنَا دِمَاءَهُمْ عِنْدَ قِيَامِ قَائِمِنَا فَالْيَوْمَ مُحَرَّمٌ عَلَيْنَا وَ عَلَيْكُمْ ذَلِكَ فَلَا يَغُرَّنَّكَ اَحَدٌ اِذَا قَامَ قَائِمُنَا انْتَقَمَ لِلَّهِ وَ لِرَسُولِهِ وَ لَنَا اَجْمَعِينَ.

Abu Baseer says, “I asked, ‘What will happen to the people of Zimmah under him?’

He (a.s.) replied,

‘He (a.t.f.s.) will be at peace with them like the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) made peace with them while they will pay jizyah tax.’

I asked, ‘And the one who bears enmity with you (Ahle Bait a.s.) (what about him)?’

He (a.s.) replied,

‘No, O Aba Muhammad! Whoever opposes us will not have any share in our government.’

## References:

Al-Mazaar al-Kabeer of Ibn Mashhadi (610H), p. 135, H. 7

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 52, p. 376, H. 177

# The enemy of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) shall be in the hell-fire whether he prays or steals

قَالَ الصَّادِقُ ع‏ النَّاصِبُ لَنَا اَهْلَ‏ الْبَيْتِ‏ لَا يُبَالِي‏ صَامَ‏ اَوْ صَلَّى‏ اَوْ زَنَى اَوْ سَرَق‏

Imam Ja’far Sadeq (a.s.) said :

“For the enemies of us Ahle-Bait (a.s.) (a.s.) it does not matter whether he prays or fasts or steals and fornicates; in any case, he will be in (hell) fire.”

## References:

Eqaab al-A’maal, p. 251, H. 18

# The actions of those who hate the Ahle Bait (a.s.) do not reach Allah

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ ع قَالَ: قُلْتُ لَا يَصْعَدُ عَمَلُهُمْ اِلَى اللهِ وَ لَا يَقْبَلُ مِنْهُمْ عَمَلًا فَقَالَ‏ لَا مَنْ‏ مَاتَ‏ وَ فِي قَلْبِهِ بُغْضٌ لَنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ مَنْ تَوَلَّى عَدُوَّنَا لَمْ يَقْبَلِ اللهُ لَهُ عَمَلا

Sallaam Ibn Saeed al-Makhzumi asked Imam Muhammad Baqer (a.s.), “Will their (i.e. the opponents) actions not ascend to Allah and none of their actions will be accepted?” He (a.s.) replied,

“No! Whoever dies while there is hatred in his heart against us Ahle Bait (a.s.) and accepts the mastership of our enemy, Allah will not accept any of his actions.”

## References:

Mustadrak al-Wasaael of Syed Husain Noori (1320H), vol. 1, p. 150

# Angels cannot get proximity to Allah without cursing the enemies of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع‏ اَنَّهُ سُئِلَ هَلِ الْمَلَائِكَةُ اَكْثَرُ اَمْ بَنُو آدَمَ- فَقَالَ: وَ الَّذِي نَفْسِي بِيَدِهِ لَعَدَدُ مَلَائِكَةِ اللهِ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ- اَكْثَرُ مِنْ عَدَدِ التُّرَابِ فِي الْاَرْضِ، وَ مَا فِي السَّمَاءِ مَوْضِعُ قَدَمٍ اِلَّا وَ فِيهَا مَلَكٌ يُسَبِّحُهُ وَ يُقَدِّسُهُ- وَ لَا فِي الْاَرْضِ شَجَرَةٌ وَ لَا مَدَرٌ- اِلَّا وَ فِيهَا مَلَكٌ مُوَكَّلٌ بِهَا- يَأْتِي اللهَ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ بِعَمَلِهَا وَ اللهُ اَعْلَمُ بِهَا، وَ مَا مِنْهُمْ اَحَدٌ اِلَّا وَ يَتَقَرَّبُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ اِلَى اللهِ- بِوَلَايَتِنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ يَسْتَغْفِرُ لِمُحِبِّينَا- وَ يَلْعَنُ اَعْدَاءَنَا- وَ يَسْاَلُ اللهَ اَنْ يُرْسِلَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْعَذَابَ اِرْسَالًا

While talking about the multitude of the angels, Imam Jafar al-Sadeq (a.s.) said:

“There is none among them (angels) but that he gets closer to Allah everyday by the mastership of us Ahle-Bait (a.s.), seeks forgiveness for those who love us, curses our enemies and asks Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - that He sends upon them a worthy chastisement.”.

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 69

Tafseer al-Qummi, vol. 2, p. 255

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 4, p. 747

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 65, p. 78, H. 139 narrating from Tafseer Ali Ibn Ibraheem al-Qummi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 255, Chapter 40 under the verse of Surah al-Momin

# A believer can never hate Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and a hypocrite can never love him

وَ قَالَ ع: لَوْ ضَرَبْتُ‏ خَيْشُومَ‏ الْمُؤْمِنِ‏ بِسَيْفِي‏ هَذَا عَلَى‏ اَنْ‏ يُبْغِضَنِي‏ مَا اَبْغَضَنِي‏ وَ لَوْ صَبَبْتُ الدُّنْيَا بِجَمَّاتِهَا عَلَى الْمُنَافِقِ عَلَى اَنْ يُحِبَّنِي مَا اَحَبَّنِي وَ ذَلِكَ اَنَّهُ قُضِيَ فَانْقَضَى عَلَى لِسَانِ النَّبِيِّ الْأُمِّيِّ ص اَنَّهُ قَالَ يَا عَلِيُّ لَا يُبْغِضُكَ مُؤْمِنٌ وَ لَا يُحِبُّكَ مُنَافِقٌ‏

Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) said,

“By Allah! If I strike the nose of a believer with my sword so that he may hate me, he will not hate me and if I fill the world with all its embellishments in the lap of a disbeliever, he will not love me. For, it has already been decreed through the tongue of the Ummi Prophet (s.a.w.a.), ‘O Ali! A believer will not hate you and a hypocrite will never love you’.”

## References:

Nahjul Balagha, p. 477 saying no. 65

Mishkatul Anwaar, p. 79

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 34, p. 51, H. 21

# The opponents of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) shall abide in Hell Fire

عَمْرُو بْنُ ثَابِتٍ قَالَ‏ سَاَلْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍ ع عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ تَعَالَى‏ وَ مِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَتَّخِذُ مِنْ دُونِ اللهِ اَنْدادًا يُحِبُّونَهُمْ كَحُبِّ اللهِ‏ قَالَ فَقَالَ هُمْ وَ اللهِ اَوْلِيَاءُ فُلَانٍ وَ فُلَانٍ وَ فُلَانٍ اتَّخَذُوهُمْ اَئِمَّةً دُونَ الْاِمَامِ الَّذِي جَعَلَهُ اللهُ لِلنَّاسِ اِمَامًا فَذَلِكَ قَوْلُ اللهِ تَعَالَى‏ وَ لَوْ يَرَى الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا اِذْ يَرَوْنَ الْعَذابَ اَنَّ الْقُوَّةَ لِلَّهِ جَمِيعًا وَ اَنَّ اللهَ شَدِيدُ الْعَذابِ اِذْ تَبَرَّاَ الَّذِينَ اتُّبِعُوا مِنَ الَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوا وَ رَاَوُا الْعَذابَ وَ تَقَطَّعَتْ بِهِمُ الْاَسْبابُ وَ قالَ الَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوا لَوْ اَنَّ لَنا كَرَّةً فَنَتَبَرَّاَ مِنْهُمْ كَما تَبَرَّؤُا مِنَّا كَذلِكَ يُرِيهِمُ اللهُ اَعْمالَهُمْ حَسَراتٍ عَلَيْهِمْ وَ ما هُمْ بِخارِجِينَ مِنَ النَّارِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍ ع هُمْ‏ وَ اللهِ‏ يَا جَابِرُ اَئِمَّةُ الظَّلَمَةِ وَ اَشْيَاعُهُمْ‏

Jaaber reports, “I asked Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer a.s.) about the word of Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He **- ‘And there are some among men who take for themselves objects of worship besides Allah, whom they love as they love Allah’**. He (a.s.) replied,

‘By Allah! It refers to the followers of so and so (referring to the first and second pseudo-caliphs). They took them as leaders other than the Imam whom Allah has appointed as an Imam for the people. Therefore, He says**, ‘and O, that those who are unjust had seen, when they see the chastisement, that the power is wholly Allah’s and that Allah is severe in requiting (evil). When those who were followed shall renounce those who followed (them), and they see the chastisement and their ties are cut asunder. And those who followed shall say: Had there been for us a return, then we would renounce them as they have renounced us. Thus will Allah show them their deeds to be intense regret to them, and they shall not come forth from the fire.’** (Surah Baqarah (2): Verses 165 -167)

Thereafter, Imam Abu Ja’far (a.s) remarked,

‘O Jaabir! By Allah they are the leaders of oppression and their followers.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 374, H. 11

Al Ikhtesaas, p. 334

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 1, p. 368, H. 750

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 31, p. 616, H. 89

# Wilaayah of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) is only for the chosen ones whose faith has been tested

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: خَالِطُوا النَّاسَ مِمَّا يَعْرِفُونَ وَ دَعُوهُمْ مِمَّا يُنْكِرُونَهُ وَ لَا تَحْمِلُوا عَلَى اَنْفُسِكُمْ وَ عَلَيْنَا اِنَ‏ اَمْرَنَا صَعْبٌ‏ مُسْتَصْعَبٌ‏ لَا يَحْتَمِلُهُ اِلَّا مَلَكٌ مُقَرَّبٌ اَوْ نَبِيٌّ مُرْسَلٌ اَوْ عَبْدٌ مُؤْمِنٌ امْتَحَنَ اللهُ قَلْبَهُ لِلْاِيمَانِ.

Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“Interact with the people as per what they know and leave them from what they dislike. Don’t impose (people) upon yourselves and upon us. Surely, our affair (mastership) is difficult and complex. None can bear it save a proximate angel or sent prophet or a believing servant whose heart Allah has tested with faith.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 26, H. 2

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 71, H. 30

# There is no one more deviated before Allah than the one who rejects the Divine Proof (a.s.)

عَنِ الْمُعَلَّى بْنِ خُنَيْسٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع‏ فِي قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَ‏ وَ مَنْ اَضَلُّ مِمَّنِ اتَّبَعَ هَواهُ بِغَيْرِ هُدىً‏ مِنَ‏ اللهِ‏ يَعْنِي‏ مَنْ‏ يَتَّخِذُ دِينَهُ‏ رَأْيَهُ‏ بِغَيْرِ هُدَى اَئِمَّةٍ مِنْ اَئِمَّةِ الْهُدَى.

Mualla Ibn Khunais reports from Imam Abu Abdillah [al-Sadeq a.s.] concerning the word of Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - “And who is more deviated than the one who follows his carnal desires instead of guidance from Allah” means

“Whoever takes his religion whimsically without a guided Imam from the Imams of guidance (i.e. an Imam appointed by Allah.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 13, H. 1

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 4, p. 271, H. 8137

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 2, p. 302, H. 35

# Those who do not curse the killers of Imam Husain (a.s.) are the enemies of Allah and His Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

فَقَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص ... اَلَا وَ لَعَنَ‏ اللهُ‏ قَتَلَةَ الْحُسَيْنِ‏ وَ مُحِبِّيهِمْ وَ نَاصِرِيهِمْ، وَ السَّاكِتِينَ عَنْ لَعْنِهِمْ مِنْ غَيْرِ تَقِيَّةٍ تُسْكِتُهُمْ.اَلَا وَ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَى الْبَاكِينَ عَلَى الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ ع رَحْمَةً وَ شَفَقَةً، وَ اللَّاعِنِينَ لِاَعْدَائِهِمْ وَ الْمُمْتَلِئِينَ عَلَيْهِمْ غَيْظًا وَ حَنَقا

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“… May Allah curse the killers of al-Husain (a.s.), those who love them (the killers), those who help them and those who are silent from cursing them without dissimulation (taqiyyah) that silences them. Beware! Allah’s blessings be on those who cry for al-Husain Ibn Ali (a.s.) - on account of mercy and love - and on those who curse their enemies and are full of anger and fury against them (the killers)…”

## References:

Tafseer of Imam Hasan al-Askari (a.s.), p. 369 under Tafseer of Surah Baqarah (2): 86

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran, vol. 1, p. 268, H. 543

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 44, p. 304, H. 17

# Imam Sajjad (a.s.) used to provide food for those who mourned for Imam Husain (a.s.)

لَمَّا قُتِلَ الْحُسَيْنُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ ع لَبِسْنَ نِسَاءَ بَنِي هَاشِمٍ السَّوَادَ وَ الْمُسُوحَ وَ كُنَّ لَا يَشْتَكِينَ مِنْ حَرٍّ وَ لَا بَرْدٍ وَ كَانَ عَلِيُّ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِ ع يَعْمَلُ لَهُنَّ الطَّعَامَ لِلْمَأْتَمِ.

“When Imam Husain Ibn Ali (a.s.) was martyred, the women of Bani Hashim wore black and coarse woolen clothes; they neither complained about heat nor cold. Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) used to feed them during their mourning (beating their chests).”

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 2, p. 420, H. 195

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 2, p. 238, H. 3508

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 79, p. 83, H. 24

# Imam Sajjad (a.s.) wept for Imam Husain (a.s.) his entire life

بَكَى عَلِيُّ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِ عَلَى اَبِيهِ حُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ ص .....‏ اِنِّي لَمْ اَذْكُرْ مَصْرَعَ‏ بَنِي‏ فَاطِمَةَ اِلَّا خَنَقَتْنِي الْعَبْرَةُ لِذَلِكَ.

Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) said,

“Verily, I don’t remember the martyrdom of the sons of Fatemah (s.a.) but that tears choke me.”

## References:

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat, p. 107, H. 1

Al Khesaal, vol. 1, p. 273, H. 15

Kashful Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 499

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 3, p. 280, H. 3655

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 12, p. 264, H. 27

# All believers weep for Imam Husain (a.s.) when they remember him

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ الْحُسَيْنُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ ع‏ اَنَا قَتِيلُ الْعَبْرَةِ لَا يَذْكُرُنِي مُؤْمِنٌ‏ اِلَّا اسْتَعْبَرَ.

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) narrates from his forefathers that Imam Husain (a.s.) said,

“I am the one who was killed with tears in his eyes. No believer will ever remember me but that he will cry.”

## References:

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat, p. 108, H. 3

Amaali, p. 137, H. 7

Isbaat al-Hodaat, vol. 4, p. 49, H. 43

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 44, p. 284, H. 19

# Prophets and angels request Allah to visit Imam Husain (a.s.) in Karbala

اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ ...لَيْسَ مِنْ مَلَكٍ مُقَرَّبٍ وَ لَا نَبِيٍّ مُرْسَلٍ اِلَّا وَ هُوَ يَسْاَلُ اللهَ اَنْ يَزُورَهُ‏ فَفَوْجٌ‏ يَهْبِطُ وَ فَوْجٌ يَصْعَدُ.

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) says,

“...thus, there is neither a proximate angel nor a sent Prophet but that he requests Allah to visit him (al-Husain). So, a group descends (for ziyaarat) and another ascends (back to the skies).”

## References:

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat, p. 112, H. 3

Madinatul Ma’ajiz, vol. 4, p. 204, H. 1225

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 98, p. 60, H. 33

# Imam Sadeq (a.s.) says: Never abandon the Ziyaarat of Imam Husain (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع قَالَ: قَالَ لِي يَا مُعَاوِيَةُ لَا تَدَعْ زِيَارَةَ الْحُسَيْنِ ع لِخَوْفٍ- فَاِنَّ مَنْ تَرَكَهُ رَاَى مِنَ الْحَسْرَةِ مَا يَتَمَنَّى اَنَ‏ قَبْرَهُ‏ كَانَ‏ عِنْدَهُ‏ اَ مَا تُحِبُّ اَنْ يَرَى اللهُ شَخْصَك‏وَ سَوَادَكَ فِيمَنْ يَدْعُو لَهُ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص وَ عَلِيٌّ وَ فَاطِمَةُ وَ الْاَئِمَّةُ ع- اَ مَا تُحِبُّ اَنْ تَكُونَ مِمَّنْ يَنْقَلِبُ بِالْمَغْفِرَةِ لِمَا مَضَى وَ يُغْفَرَ لَكَ ذُنُوبُ سَبْعِينَ سَنَةً اَ مَا تُحِبُّ اَنْ تَكُونَ مِمَّنْ يَخْرُجُ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا وَ لَيْسَ عَلَيْهِ ذَنْبٌ تتبع [يُتْبَعُ‏] بِهِ اَ مَا تُحِبُّ اَنْ تَكُونَ غَدًا مِمَّنْ يُصَافِحُهُ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص-

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) advised, “Don’t abandon visiting the grave of Husain (a.s.). Surely, whoever leaves it, will see such regret that he will desire that his (a.s.)’s grave was near him. Do you not love that Allah sees you and your people among those for whom the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), Ali (a.s.), Fatemah (s.a.) and the (infallible) Imams (a.s.) pray? Do you not love that you be from those who are transformed through forgiveness of the past and his sins of seventy years of sins are pardoned? Do you not love that tomorrow you be the one who is brought out (from the grave) and there is no sin upon him for which he is sought? Do you not love that tomorrow you be the one who will shake hands with the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)?”

## References:

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat, p. 117, H. 3

Tehzeeb al-Ahkam, vol. 6, p. 47, H. 103

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 14, p. 413, H. 19482

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 98, p. 9, H. 31

# The reward for remembering Imam Husain (a.s.) when drinking water

عَنْ دَاوُدَ الرَّقِّيِّ قَالَ: كُنْتُ عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ ع اِذَا اسْتَسْقَى الْمَاءَ فَلَمَّا شَرِبَهُ رَاَيْتُهُ قَدِ اسْتَعْبَرَ وَ اغْرَوْرَقَتْ‏ عَيْنَاهُ بِدُمُوعِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِي يَا دَاوُدُ- لَعَنَ اللهُ قَاتِلَ الْحُسَيْنِ ع وَ مَا مِنْ عَبْدٍ شَرِبَ الْمَاءَ فَذَكَرَ الْحُسَيْنَ ع وَ اَهْلَ بَيْتِهِ وَ لَعَنَ قَاتِلَهُ اِلَّا كَتَبَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ لَهُ مِائَةَ اَلْفِ حَسَنَةٍ وَ حَطَّ عَنْهُ مِائَةَ اَلْفِ سَيِّئَةٍ وَ رَفَعَ لَهُ مِائَةَ اَلْفِ دَرَجَةٍ وَ كَاَنَّمَا اَعْتَقَ مِائَةَ اَلْفِ نَسَمَةٍ وَ حَشَرَهُ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ ثَلِجَ الْفُؤَادِ.

Dawood al-Raqqi reports, “I was with (Imam) Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) when he sought water to drink. When he drank it, I saw him crying copious and his eyes were drowned in tears. Thereafter, he (a.s.) told me. ‘O Dawood! May Allah curse the killer of Husain (a.s.). Whenever a person drinks water and remembers Husain (a.s.) and his Ahle Bait (a.s.) and curses his killer, Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He - will write for him a hundred thousand good deeds, remove from him a hundred thousand sins and raise him a hundred thousand degrees. Moreover, it is as if he has freed a hundred thousand slaves and Allah - Mighty and Majestic be He -will raise him on the Day of Judgment with a joyous heart’.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 6, p. 391, H. 6

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat, p. 106, H. 1

Amaali, p. 142, H. 7

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 25, p. 272, H. 31892

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 44, p. 303, H. 16

# The accursed Shimr (l.a.) acknowledged the position of Imam Husain (a.s.) before killing him (a.s.)

...فغضب شمر لعنه الله و جلس على صدر الحسين و قبض على لحيته و هم بقتله فضحك الحسين ع فقال له أ تقتلني و لا تعلم من أنا فقال أعرفك حق المعرفة أمك فاطمة الزهراء و أبوك علي المرتضى و جدك محمد المصطفى و خصمك العلي الأعلى أقتلك‏ و لا أبالي‏ فضربه بسيفه اثنتي عشرة ضربة ثم جز رأسه صلوات الله و سلامه عليه و لعن الله قاتله و مقاتله و السائرين إليه بجموعهم.

..Then Shimr (may Allah curse him) became angry and sat on the chest of Husain, seized his (a.s.) beard with the intention of killing him (a.s.). Husain (a.s.) laughed and asked him, “Will you kill me knowing well who am I?” He replied, “I know very well. Your mother is Fatemah al-Zahra (s.a.), your father is Ali al-Murtaza (a.s.) and your grandfather is Muhammad al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) and your supporter is Allah the High, the Highest. Yet, I will kill you and I don’t care.” Then, he struck him (a.s.) twelve times with his sword and decapitated the head of Husain (a.s.).May Allah curse his killer and those who fought against him (a.s.) and their entire group.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 45, p. 56, Chapter 37

# Beating of faces and weeping for Imam Husain (a.s.)

حَنَانِ بْنِ سَدِيرٍ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ ع عَنْ رَجُلٍ شَقَّ ثَوْبَهُ عَلَى اَبِيهِ اَوْ عَلَى أُمِّهِ اَوْ عَلَى اَخِيهِ اَوْ عَلَى قَرِيبٍ لَهُ فَقَالَ لَا بَأْسَ بِشَقِّ الْجُيُوبِ قَدْ شَقَّ مُوسَى بْنُ عِمْرَانَ عَلَى اَخِيهِ هَارُونَ وَ لَا يَشُقَّ الْوَالِدُ عَلَى وَلَدِهِ وَ لَا زَوْجٌ عَلَى امْرَاَتِهِ وَ تَشُقُّ الْمَرْاَةُ عَلَى زَوْجِهَا وَ اِذَا شَقَّ زَوْجٌ عَلَى امْرَاَتِهِ اَوْ وَالِدٌ عَلَى وَلَدِهِ فَكَفَّارَتُهُ حِنْثُ يَمِينٍ وَ لَا صَلَاةَ لَهُمَا حَتَّى يُكَفِّرَا وَ يَتُوبَا مِنْ ذَلِكَ وَ اِذَا خَدَشَتِ الْمَرْاَةُ وَجْهَهَا اَوْ جَزَّتْ شَعْرَهَا اَوْ نَتَفَتْهُ فَفِي جَزِّ الشَّعْرِ عِتْقُ رَقَبَةٍ اَوْ صِيَامُ شَهْرَيْنِ مُتَتَابِعَيْنِ اَوْ اِطْعَامُ سِتِّينَ مِسْكِينًا وَ فِي الْخَدْشِ اِذَا دَمِيَتْ وَ فِي النَّتْفِ كَفَّارَةُ حِنْثِ يَمِينٍ وَ لَا شَيْ‏ءَ فِي اللَّطْمِ عَلَى الْخُدُودِ سِوَى الِاسْتِغْفَارِ وَ التَّوْبَةِ وَ قَدْ شَقَقْنَ‏ الْجُيُوبَ‏ وَ لَطَمْنَ‏ الْخُدُودَ الْفَاطِمِيَّاتُ‏ عَلَى‏ الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ ع وَ عَلَى مِثْلِهِ تُلْطَمُ الْخُدُودُ وَ تُشَقُّ الْجُيُوبُ.

Hanaan Ibn Sadeer reports that I asked Imam Sadeq (a.s.) about a man who tore his clothes on the death of his father or mother or brother or any close relative. He (a.s.) replied, “There is no harm in tearing the clothes. Indeed, Moosa (a.s.) had torn his clothes on the death of his brother Haroon (a.s.). The daughters of Fatema (s.a.) tore their clothes and beat/scratched their faces on the death of Husain Ibn Ali (a.s.). And for the likes of him (viz. Husain a.s.), faces are beaten and clothes are torn.”

## References:

Tehzeeb al-Ahkam, vol. 8, p. 345, H. 1407

Malaaz al-Akhyaar fee Fahm Tehzeeb al-Akhbaar, vol. 14, p. 113, H. 23

# Necessity of Imamate

وَ رَوَى اَبُو الْقَاسِمُ الْحَسْكَانِيُّ فِي شَوَاهِدِ التَّنْزِيلِ بِالْاِسْنَادِ عَنْ اِبْرَاهِيمَ بْنِ الْحَكَمِ بْنِ ظُهَيْرٍ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَنْ حَكَمِ بْنِ جُبَيْرٍ عَنْ اَبِي بُرْدَةَ الْاَسْلَمِيِّ قَالَ دَعَا رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ بِالطَّهُورِ وَ عِنْدَهُ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ فَاَخَذَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ بِيَدِ عَلِيٍّؑ بَعْدَ مَا تَطَهَّرَ فَاَلْزَقَهَا بِصَدْرِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اِنَّما اَنْتَ مُنْذِرٌ ثُمَّ رَدَّهَا اِلَى صَدْرِ عَلِيٍّؑ ثُمَّ قَالَ وَ لِكُلِّ قَوْمٍ هادٍ ثُمَّ قَالَ اِنَّكَ مَنَارَةُ الْاَنَامِ وَ رَايَةُ الْهُدَى وَ اَمِيرُ الْقُرَى اَشْهَدُ عَلٰى ذٰلِكَ اَنَّكَ كَذٰلِكَ

Abu Burdah al-Aslami reports, “The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) called for water for ablution (*wudhu*) while Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) was with him. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) took the hand of Ali (a.s.) after performing the ablution, pressed it against his chest and said, ‘*You are the warner.*’ Then, he (s.a.w.a.) pressed it against the chest of Ali (a.s.) and said, ‘*And for every nation there is a guide.*’ Thereafter, he (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘*Surely, you are the minaret of the people, the standard of guidance and the chief of the villages. I bear witness upon this that this is the truth’.*”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 2

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel of al-Haakim al-Haskaani

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Imams of the Muslims and the Divine Proofs

اَلْاَعْمَشِ عَنِ الصَّادِقِؑ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ الْحُسَيْنِؑ قَالَ نَحْنُ اَئِمَّةُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ وَ حُجَجُ اللهِ عَلَى الْعَالَمِينَ وَ سَادَةُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ قَادَةُ الْغُرِّ الْمُحَجَّلِينَ وَ مَوَالِي الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ نَحْنُ اَمَانُ اَهْلِ الْاَرْضِ كَمَا اَنَّ النُّجُومَ اَمَانٌ لِاَهْلِ السَّمَاءِ وَ نَحْنُ الَّذِينَ بِنَا يُمْسِكُ اللهُ السَّماءَ اَنْ تَقَعَ عَلَى الْاَرْضِ اِلَّا بِاِذْنِهِ وَ بِنَا يُمْسِكُ الْاَرْضَ اَنْ تَمِيدَ بِاَهْلِهَا وَ بِنَا يُنَزِّلُ الْغَيْثَ وَ بِنَا يَنْشُرُ الرَّحْمَةَ وَ يُخْرِجُ بَرَكَاتِ الْاَرْضِ وَ لَوْ لَا مَا فِي الْاَرْضِ مِنَّا لَسَاخَتْ بِاَهْلِهَا ثُمَّ قَالَؑ وَ لَمْ تَخْلُ الْاَرْضُ مُنْذُ خَلَقَ اللهُ آدَمَ مِنْ حُجَّةٍ لِلهِ فِيهَا ظَاهِرٍ مَشْهُورٍ اَوْ غَائِبٍ مَسْتُورٍ وَ لَا تَخْلُو اِلَى اَنْ تَقُومَ السَّاعَةُ مِنْ حُجَّةِ اللهِ فِيهَا وَ لَوْ لَا ذٰلِكَ لَمْ يُعْبَدِ اللهُ قَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ فَقُلْتُ لِلصَّادِقِؑ فَكَيْفَ يَنْتَفِعُ النَّاسُ بِالْحُجَّةِ الْغَائِبِ الْمَسْتُورِ قَالَؑ كَمَا يَنْتَفِعُونَ بِالشَّمْسِ اِذَا سَتَرَهَا السَّحَابُ

Sulaiman Ibn A’mash reports that Imam Sadeq (a.s.) narrates from his father who reports from his father Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.), “*We are the Imams of the Muslims, Allah’s proofs upon the worlds, leaders of the believers, chiefs of the pious ones and the masters of the believers. We are safety for the people of the earth like the stars are security for the inhabitants of the sky. We are the ones due to whom Allah withholds the sky from falling on the earth except through His permission. Due to us the earth is withheld from swallowing its inhabitants. Through us rains descend and through us mercy is spread and the blessings of the earth come out. Had there not been (an Imam) from us in the earth, it would have been destroyed.”*

Then Imam (a.s.) continues, “Since Allah has created Adam (a.s.), the earth is not devoid of a proof from Allah; regardless of him being apparent and known or hidden and concealed. It cannot be devoid of a proof from Allah till the Day of Judgment. Had this not been the case, Allah would not have been worshipped.”

Sulaiman says, “I asked al-Sadeq (a.s.), ‘How can the people benefit from an Imam who is hidden and concealed?”

He (a.s.) replied, “Like they benefit from the sun when the clouds conceal it.”

## Note:

Sulaiman Ibn Mehraan al-A’mash was a famous Shia narrator and scholar. Even the opponents relied upon him.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, pp. 5 & 6, H. 10

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 207, H. 22, Chapter 21

# Debate between Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam (r.a.) with Amr Ibn Ubaid al-Motazeli in Basrah: Necessity of Divine Proof

3- عَلِيُّ بْنُ اِبْرَاهِيمَ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَنِ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ اِبْرَاهِيمَ عَنْ يُونُسَ بْنِ يَعْقُوبَ قَالَ كَانَ عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنْ اَصْحَابِهِ مِنْهُمْ حُمْرَانُ بْنُ اَعْيَنَ وَ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ النُّعْمَانِ وَ هِشَامُ بْنُ سَالِمٍ وَ الطَّيَّارُ وَ جَمَاعَةٌ فِيهِمْ هِشَامُ بْنُ الْحَكَمِ وَ هُوَ شَابٌّ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَا هِشَامُ اَ لَا تُخْبِرُنِي كَيْفَ صَنَعْتَ بِعَمْرِو بْنِ عُبَيْدٍ وَ كَيْفَ سَاَلْتَهُ فَقَالَ هِشَامٌ يَا ابْنَ رَسُولِ اللهِ اِنِّي أُجِلُّكَ وَ اَسْتَحْيِيكَ وَ لَا يَعْمَلُ لِسَانِي بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِ اِذَا اَمَرْتُكُمْ بِشَيْ‏ءٍ فَافْعَلُوا قَالَ هِشَامٌ بَلَغَنِي مَا كَانَ فِيهِ عَمْرُو بْنُ عُبَيْدٍ وَ جُلُوسُهُ فِي مَسْجِدِ الْبَصْرَةِ فَعَظُمَ ذٰلِكَ عَلَيَّ فَخَرَجْتُ اِلَيْهِ وَ دَخَلْتُ الْبَصْرَةَ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ فَاَتَيْتُ مَسْجِدَ الْبَصْرَةِ فَاِذَا اَنَا بِحَلْقَةٍ كَبِيرَةٍ فِيهَا عَمْرُو بْنُ عُبَيْدٍ وَ عَلَيْهِ شَمْلَةٌ سَوْدَاءُ مُتَّزِراً بِهَا مِنْ صُوفٍ وَ شَمْلَةٌ مُرْتَدِياً بِهَا وَ النَّاسُ يَسْاَلُونَهُ فَاسْتَفْرَجْتُ النَّاسَ فَاَفْرَجُوا لِي ثُمَّ قَعَدْتُ فِي آخِرِ الْقَوْمِ عَلٰى رُكْبَتَيَّ ثُمَّ قُلْتُ اَيُّهَا الْعَالِمُ اِنِّي رَجُلٌ غَرِيبٌ تَاْذَنُ لِي فِي مَسْاَلَةٍ فَقَالَ لِي نَعَمْ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ اَ لَكَ عَيْنٌ فَقَالَ يَا بُنَيَّ اَيُّ شَيْ‏ءٍ هَذَا مِنَ السُّؤَالِ وَ شَيْ‏ءٌ تَرَاهُ كَيْفَ تَسْاَلُ عَنْهُ فَقُلْتُ هَكَذَا مَسْاَلَتِي فَقَالَ يَا بُنَيَّ سَلْ وَ اِنْ كَانَتْ مَسْاَلَتُكَ حَمْقَاءَ قُلْتُ اَجِبْنِي فِيهَا قَالَ لِي سَلْ قُلْتُ اَ لَكَ عَيْنٌ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمَا تَصْنَعُ بِهَا قَالَ اَرَى بِهَا الْاَلْوَانَ وَ الْاَشْخَاصَ قُلْتُ فَلَكَ اَنْفٌ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمَا تَصْنَعُ بِهِ قَالَ اَشَمُّ بِهِ الرَّائِحَةَ قُلْتُ اَ لَكَ فَمٌ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمَا تَصْنَعُ بِهِ قَالَ اَذُوقُ بِهِ الطَّعْمَ قُلْتُ فَلَكَ أُذُنٌ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمَا تَصْنَعُ بِهَا قَالَ اَسْمَعُ بِهَا الصَّوْتَ قُلْتُ اَ لَكَ قَلْبٌ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَمَا تَصْنَعُ بِهِ قَالَ أُمَيِّزُ بِهِ كُلَّ مَا وَرَدَ عَلٰى هَذِهِ الْجَوَارِحِ وَ الْحَوَاسِّ قُلْتُ اَ وَ لَيْسَ فِي هَذِهِ الْجَوَارِحِ غِنًى عَنِ الْقَلْبِ فَقَالَ لَا قُلْتُ وَ كَيْفَ ذٰلِكَ وَ هِيَ صَحِيحَةٌ سَلِيمَةٌ قَالَ يَا بُنَيَّ اِنَّ الْجَوَارِحَ اِذَا شَكَّتْ فِي شَيْ‏ءٍ شَمَّتْهُ اَوْ رَاَتْهُ اَوْ ذَاقَتْهُ اَوْ سَمِعَتْهُ رَدَّتْهُ اِلَى الْقَلْبِ فَيَسْتَيْقِنُ الْيَقِينَ وَ يُبْطِلُ الشَّكَّ قَالَ هِشَامٌ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ فَاِنَّمَا اَقَامَ اللهُ الْقَلْبَ لِشَكِّ الْجَوَارِحِ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ لَا بُدَّ مِنَ الْقَلْبِ وَ اِلَّا لَمْ تَسْتَيْقِنِ الْجَوَارِحُ قَالَ نَعَمْ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ يَا اَبَا مَرْوَانَ فَاللهُ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى لَمْ يَتْرُكْ جَوَارِحَكَ حَتَّى جَعَلَ لَهَا اِمَاماً يُصَحِّحُ لَهَا الصَّحِيحَ وَ يَتَيَقَّنُ بِهِ مَا شُكَّ فِيهِ وَ يَتْرُكُ هَذَا الْخَلْقَ كُلَّهُمْ فِي حَيْرَتِهِمْ وَ شَكِّهِمْ وَ اخْتِلَافِهِمْ لَا يُقِيمُ لَهُمْ اِمَاماً يَرُدُّونَ اِلَيْهِ شَكَّهُمْ وَ حَيْرَتَهُمْ وَ يُقِيمُ لَكَ اِمَاماً لِجَوَارِحِكَ تَرُدُّ اِلَيْهِ حَيْرَتَكَ وَ شَكَّكَ قَالَ فَسَكَتَ وَ لَمْ يَقُلْ لِي شَيْئاً ثُمَّ الْتَفَتَ اِلَيَّ فَقَالَ لِي اَنْتَ هِشَامُ بْنُ الْحَكَمِ فَقُلْتُ لَا قَالَ اَ مِنْ جُلَسَائِهِ قُلْتُ لَا قَالَ فَمِنْ اَيْنَ اَنْتَ قَالَ قُلْتُ مِنْ اَهْلِ الْكُوفَةِ قَالَ فَاَنْتَ اِذاً هُوَ ثُمَّ ضَمَّنِي اِلَيْهِ وَ اَقْعَدَنِي فِي مَجْلِسِهِ وَ زَالَ عَنْ مَجْلِسِهِ وَ مَا نَطَقَ حَتَّى قُمْتُ قَالَ فَضَحِكَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ وَ قَالَ يَا هِشَامُ مَنْ عَلَّمَكَ هَذَا قُلْتُ شَيْ‏ءٌ اَخَذْتُهُ مِنْكَ وَ اَلَّفْتُهُ فَقَالَ هَذَا وَ اللهِ مَكْتُوبٌ فِي صُحُفِ اِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ مُوسَى‏

Ali Ibn Ibraheem narrates from his father who in turn narrates from al-Hasan Ibn Ibraheem from Yunus Ibn Yaqoob who reports, “A group of companions of Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) were with him. From them were Humraan Ibn A’yan, Muhammad Ibn al-No’maan, Heshaam Ibn Saalem, al-Tayyaar and a group from whom was a young man Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam. Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.) told him, ‘*O Heshaam! Will you not inform me how you dealt with Amr Ibn Obaid and how you questioned him?*’ Heshaam replied, ‘O son of Allah’s Messenger! I hold you in awe, feel shy in front of you and become tongue-tied.’ Imam (a.s.) retorted, ‘*When I order you something, then do it.*’

Heshaam said, ‘I heard about the beliefs of Amr Ibn Obaid and his gatherings in the Mosque of Basrah. It was difficult for me to bear this. Hence, I set out for him and reached Basrah on Friday. I came to the Mosque of Basrah and saw a huge circle in which was Amr Ibn Obaid, donning black cloak of wool and another robe over it. People were asking him questions. I made my way through the people and sat at the end of the circle on my knees.

Thereafter, I asked him, ‘O learned man! I am a stranger. If you permit, can I ask something?’

He told me, ‘Yes’.

I questioned him, ‘Do you have eyes?’

He shot back,’O son! What sort of a question is this? How can you ask about something which you are seeing with your eyes?

I said, ‘My question is such.’

He said, ‘Son, ask, even if your question is foolish.’

I said, ‘Answer me about it.’

He reiterated, ‘Ask.’

I asked, ‘Do you have eyes?’

He replied, ‘Yes.’

I asked, ‘What do you do with them?’

He answered, ‘I see colours and persons through them.’

I asked, ‘Do you have a nose?’

He replied, ‘Yes.’

I asked, ‘What do you do with it?’

He answered, ‘I smell fragrances with it.’

I inquired, ‘Do you have a mouth?’

He responded, ‘Yes.’

I questioned, ‘What do you do with it?

He replied, ‘I taste foods with it.’

I asked, ‘Do you have ears?’

He answered, ‘Yes.’

I inquired, ‘What do you do with them?’

He responded, ‘I hear sounds with them.’

I questioned, ‘Do you have intellect?’

He replied in the affirmative.

I asked, ‘What do you do with it?’

He answered, ‘Through it I distinguish whatever occurs to my limbs and senses.’

I questioned, ‘Are not these limbs needless of the intellect?’

He responded in the negative.

I inquired, ‘How is this possible while these limbs are healthy and safe?’

He argued, ‘Son! When the limbs doubt about anything that they smell, see, taste or hear, they refer it to the intellect, seeking certainty and dispelling the doubt.’

I took confirmation, ‘It means the presence of the intellect is necessary otherwise the limbs cannot gain certainty.’

He reaffirmed.

I reasoned, ‘O Aba Marwan! So Allah has not left your limbs without a leader who will verify for them the correct things and grant certainty to them in things they doubt. But has left this entire creation in their perplexity, doubt and disagreements, without appointing a leader for them to whom they can refer in their doubts and confusions, yet He has left a leader for you for your limbs to whom you can refer in your confusions and doubts.’

He kept silent and did not say anything to me. Thereafter, he turned to me and asked, ‘Are you Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam?’

(Praciticing dissimulation) I denied.

He questioned again, ‘Are you from his colleauges?’

Again, I refuted.

He asked, ‘From where are you?’

I replied, ‘I am a resident of Kufa.’

He said, ‘Then you are certaintly him (viz. Heshaam).’ Saying this, he embraced me, made me sit in his seat and moved away from it. He did not utter a word till I stood up.

(Hearing this incident), Imam Sadeq (a.s.) laughed and asked, ‘*O Heshaam! Who taught you this?*’

He answered, ‘This is what I have learnt from you and compiled.’

He (a.s.) remarked, ‘By Allah! This is written in the scriptures of Ibraheem and Moosa.’

## Reference:

Kaafi, vol. 1, pp. 169 -171, H. 3, بَابُ الْاِضْطِرَارِ اِلَى الْحُجَّةِ

# Debates between the companions of Imam Sadeq (a.s.) and a Syrian opponent – Necessity of Divine Proof

عَلِيُّ بْنُ اِبْرَاهِيمَ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَمَّنْ ذَكَرَهُ عَنْ يُونُسَ بْنِ يَعْقُوبَ قَالَ كُنْتُ عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَوَرَدَ عَلَيْهِ رَجُلٌ مِنْ اَهْلِ الشَّامِ فَقَالَ اِنِّي رَجُلٌ صَاحِبُ كَلَامٍ وَ فِقْهٍ وَ فَرَائِضَ وَ قَدْ جِئْتُ لِمُنَاظَرَةِ اَصْحَابِكَ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ كَلَامُكَ مِنْ كَلَامِ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ اَوْ مِنْ عِنْدِكَ فَقَالَ مِنْ كَلَامِ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ وَ مِنْ عِنْدِي فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَاَنْتَ اِذاً شَرِيكُ رَسُولِ اللهِ قَالَ لَا قَالَ فَسَمِعْتَ الْوَحْيَ عَنِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يُخْبِرُكَ قَالَ لَا قَالَ فَتَجِبُ طَاعَتُكَ كَمَا تَجِبُ طَاعَةُ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ قَالَ لَا فَالْتَفَتَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِلَيَّ فَقَالَ يَا يُونُسَ بْنَ يَعْقُوبَ هَذَا قَدْ خَصَمَ نَفْسَهُ قَبْلَ اَنْ يَتَكَلَّمَ ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا يُونُسُ لَوْ كُنْتَ تُحْسِنُ الْكَلَامَ كَلَّمْتَهُ قَالَ يُونُسُ فَيَا لَهَا مِنْ حَسْرَةٍ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اِنِّي سَمِعْتُكَ تَنْهَى عَنِ الْكَلَامِ وَ تَقُولُ وَيْلٌ لِاَصْحَابِ الْكَلَامِ يَقُولُونَ هَذَا يُنْقَادُ وَ هَذَا لَا يُنْقَادُ وَ هَذَا يُنْسَاقُ وَ هَذَا لَا يُنْسَاقُ وَ هَذَا نَعْقِلُهُ وَ هَذَا لَا نَعْقِلُهُ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّمَا قُلْتُ فَوَيْلٌ لَهُمْ اِنْ تَرَكُوا مَا اَقُولُ وَ ذَهَبُوا اِلَى مَا يُرِيدُونَ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِي اخْرُجْ اِلَى الْبَابِ فَانْظُرْ مَنْ تَرَى مِنَ الْمُتَكَلِّمِينَ فَاَدْخِلْهُ قَالَ فَاَدْخَلْتُ حُمْرَانَ بْنَ اَعْيَنَ وَ كَانَ يُحْسِنُ الْكَلَامَ وَ اَدْخَلْتُ الْاَحْوَلَ وَ كَانَ يُحْسِنُ الْكَلَامَ وَ اَدْخَلْتُ هِشَامَ بْنَ سَالِمٍ وَ كَانَ يُحْسِنُ الْكَلَامَ وَ اَدْخَلْتُ قَيْسَ بْنَ الْمَاصِرِ وَ كَانَ عِنْدِي اَحْسَنَهُمْ كَلَاماً وَ كَانَ قَدْ تَعَلَّمَ الْكَلَامَ مِنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ الْحُسَيْنِؑ فَلَمَّا اسْتَقَرَّ بِنَا الْمَجْلِسُ وَ كَانَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَبْلَ الْحَجِّ يَسْتَقِرُّ اَيَّاماً فِي جَبَلٍ فِي طَرَفِ الْحَرَمِ فِي فَازَةٍ لَهُ مَضْرُوبَةٍ قَالَ فَاَخْرَجَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ رَاْسَهُ مِنْ فَازَتِهِ فَاِذَا هُوَ بِبَعِيرٍ يَخُبُّ فَقَالَ هِشَامٌ وَ رَبِّ الْكَعْبَةِ قَالَ فَظَنَنَّا اَنَّ هِشَاماً رَجُلٌ مِنْ وُلْدِ عَقِيلٍ كَانَ شَدِيدَ الْمَحَبَّةِ لَهُ قَالَ فَوَرَدَ هِشَامُ بْنُ الْحَكَمِ وَ هُوَ اَوَّلُ مَا اخْتَطَّتْ لِحْيَتُهُ وَ لَيْسَ فِينَا اِلَّا مَنْ هُوَ اَكْبَرُ سِنّاً مِنْهُ قَالَ فَوَسَّعَ لَهُ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ وَ قَالَ نَاصِرُنَا بِقَلْبِهِ وَ لِسَانِهِ وَ يَدِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا حُمْرَانُ كَلِّمِ الرَّجُلَ فَكَلَّمَهُ فَظَهَرَ عَلَيْهِ حُمْرَانُ ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا طَاقِيُّ كَلِّمْهُ فَكَلَّمَهُ فَظَهَرَ عَلَيْهِ الْاَحْوَلُ ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا هِشَامَ بْنَ سَالِمٍ كَلِّمْهُ فَتَعَارَفَا ثُمَّ قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لِقَيْسٍ الْمَاصِرِ كَلِّمْهُ فَكَلَّمَهُ فَاَقْبَلَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَضْحَكُ مِنْ كَلَامِهِمَا مِمَّا قَدْ اَصَابَ الشَّامِيَّ فَقَالَ لِلشَّامِيِّ كَلِّمْ هَذَا الْغُلَامَ يَعْنِي هِشَامَ بْنَ الْحَكَمِ فَقَالَ نَعَمْ فَقَالَ لِهِشَامٍ يَا غُلَامُ سَلْنِي فِي اِمَامَةِ هَذَا فَغَضِبَ هِشَامٌ حَتَّى ارْتَعَدَ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِلشَّامِيِّ يَا هَذَا اَ رَبُّكَ اَنْظَرُ لِخَلْقِهِ اَمْ خَلْقُهُ لِاَنْفُسِهِمْ فَقَالَ الشَّامِيُّ بَلْ رَبِّي اَنْظَرُ لِخَلْقِهِ قَالَ فَفَعَلَ بِنَظَرِهِ لَهُمْ مَا ذَا قَالَ اَقَامَ لَهُمْ حُجَّةً وَ دَلِيلًا كَيْلَا يَتَشَتَّتُوا اَوْ يَخْتَلِفُوا يَتَاَلَّفُهُمْ وَ يُقِيمُ اَوَدَهُمْ وَ يُخْبِرُهُمْ بِفَرْضِ رَبِّهِمْ قَالَ فَمَنْ هُوَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ قَالَ هِشَامٌ فَبَعْدَ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ قَالَ الْكِتَابُ وَ السُّنَّةُ قَالَ هِشَامٌ فَهَلْ نَفَعَنَا الْيَوْمَ الْكِتَابُ وَ السُّنَّةُ فِي رَفْعِ الِاخْتِلَافِ عَنَّا قَالَ الشَّامِيُّ نَعَمْ قَالَ فَلِمَ اخْتَلَفْنَا اَنَا وَ اَنْتَ وَ صِرْتَ اِلَيْنَا مِنَ الشَّامِ فِي مُخَالَفَتِنَا اِيَّاكَ قَالَ فَسَكَتَ الشَّامِيُّ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لِلشَّامِيِّ مَا لَكَ لَا تَتَكَلَّمُ قَالَ الشَّامِيُّ اِنْ قُلْتُ لَمْ نَخْتَلِفْ كَذَبْتُ وَ اِنْ قُلْتُ اِنَّ الْكِتَابَ وَ السُّنَّةَ يَرْفَعَانِ عَنَّا الِاخْتِلَافَ اَبْطَلْتُ لِاَنَّهُمَا يَحْتَمِلَانِ الْوُجُوهَ وَ اِنْ قُلْتُ قَدِ اخْتَلَفْنَا وَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ مِنَّا يَدَّعِي الْحَقَّ فَلَمْ يَنْفَعْنَا اِذَنِ الْكِتَابُ وَ السُّنَّةُ اِلَّا اَنَّ لِي عَلَيْهِ هَذِهِ الْحُجَّةَ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ سَلْهُ تَجِدْهُ مَلِيّاً فَقَالَ الشَّامِيُّ يَا هَذَا مَنْ اَنْظَرُ لِلْخَلْقِ اَ رَبُّهُمْ اَوْ اَنْفُسُهُمْ فَقَالَ هِشَامٌ رَبُّهُمْ اَنْظَرُ لَهُمْ مِنْهُمْ لِاَنْفُسِهِمْ فَقَالَ الشَّامِيُّ فَهَلْ اَقَامَ لَهُمْ مَنْ يَجْمَعُ لَهُمْ كَلِمَتَهُمْ وَ يُقِيمُ اَوَدَهُمْ وَ يُخْبِرُهُمْ بِحَقِّهِمْ مِنْ بَاطِلِهِمْ قَالَ هِشَامٌ فِي وَقْتِ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ اَوِ السَّاعَةِقَالَ الشَّامِيُّ فِي وَقْتِ رَسُولِ اللهِ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ وَ السَّاعَةِ مَنْ فَقَالَ هِشَامٌ هَذَا الْقَاعِدُ الَّذِي تُشَدُّ اِلَيْهِ الرِّحَالُ وَ يُخْبِرُنَا بِاَخْبَارِ السَّمَاءِ وَ الْاَرْضِ وِرَاثَةً عَنْ اَبٍ عَنْ جَدٍّ قَالَ الشَّامِيُّ فَكَيْفَ لِي اَنْ اَعْلَمَ ذٰلِكَ قَالَ هِشَامٌ سَلْهُ عَمَّا بَدَا لَكَ قَالَ الشَّامِيُّ قَطَعْتَ عُذْرِي فَعَلَيَّ السُّؤَالُ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَا شَامِيُّ أُخْبِرُكَ كَيْفَ كَانَ سَفَرُكَ وَ كَيْفَ كَانَ طَرِيقُكَ كَانَ كَذَا وَ كَذَا فَاَقْبَلَ الشَّامِيُّ يَقُولُ صَدَقْتَ اَسْلَمْتُ لِلهِ السَّاعَةَ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ بَلْ آمَنْتَ بِاللهِ السَّاعَةَ اِنَّ الْاِسْلَامَ قَبْلَ الْاِيمَانِ وَ عَلَيْهِ يَتَوَارَثُونَ وَ يَتَنَاكَحُونَ وَ الْاِيمَانُ عَلَيْهِ يُثَابُونَ فَقَالَ الشَّامِيُّ صَدَقْتَ فَاَنَا السَّاعَةَ اَشْهَدُ اَنْ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ وَ اَنَّ مُحَمَّداً رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ وَ اَنَّكَ وَصِيُّ الْاَوْصِيَاءِ …..

Ali Ibn Ibraheem narrates from his father vide another person from Yunus Ibn Yaqoob who reports, “I was in the company of Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) when a man from Syria entered and said, ‘I am a theologian, jurist and (acting on my) duties. I have come to debate with your companions.’

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) asked, ‘Your theology is from the theology of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) or your own theology?’

He replied, ‘It is a combination of the theology of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and my own theology.’

Imam (a.s.) asked, ‘Are you a partner of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)?’

He replied, ‘No.’

Imam (a.s.) inquired, ‘Do you receive revelation from Allah – Mighty and Majesty be He – that informs you (of the unseen)?’

Again he responded in the negative.

Imam (a.s.) questioned, ‘Is your obedience obligatory like the obedience of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) was obligatory?’

Yet again, he said no.

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) turned to me and said, ‘O Yunus Ibn Yaqoob! He has defeated himself even before the debate has commenced. O Yunus! Had you known to debate well, you would have debated with him.’

I said, ‘O how much I regret (my inability to debate)! May I be held your ransom! I heard you prohibiting from debating and saying, ‘Woe unto the people of theology! They say, ‘This can be criticized and this cannot be criticized. This can be rearranged and this cannot be rearranged. This can be understood and this cannot be understood*.*’

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) explained, ‘I had said that woe unto them if they forsake what I say and tread the path as per their whim.’ Thereafter, he (a.s.) ordered me, ‘Go to the door and whosoever you see of the debaters, bring him in.’

So I brought Humraan Ibn A’yan, who was a good debater, (Momin al-Taaq) al-Ahwal, who too was a good debater, Heshaam Ibn Saalem, who also was a good debater and Qais al-Maasir, who according to me was the best of them in debates as he had learnt the art of debating from Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.). We all settled down as a gathering and Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.), a few days before the commencement of Hajj, stay at the mount near the Holy Ka’bah, in a tent erected for him.

He (Yunus) says, ‘Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) stuck out his head from his tent, when he (a.s.) saw a camel ambling. He (a.s.) exclaimed, ‘*Heshaam! By the Lord of the Ka’bah!*’

We thought it was Heshaam, a man from the progeny of Aqeel (Ibn Abi Talib), whom Imam (a.s.) loved a lot.

Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam, who was so young that his beard had just started to grow, entered. He was the youngest of us.

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) made place for him and said, ‘(He is) our helper with his heart, his tongue and his hands.’

Thereafter, Imam (a.s.) ordered, ‘*O Humraan! Debate with him (i.e. the Syrian).*’ Humraan debated with him and defeated him.

Imam (a.s.) said, ‘*O Taaqi! Debate with him.*’ He argued with him and overpowered him.

Imam (a.s.) commanded, ‘*O Heshaam Ibn Saalem! Debate with him.’* Both conceded quickly.

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) said to Qais al-Maasir, ‘*Debate with him.*’ When they were debating, Imam (a.s.) started laughing due to the plight of the Syrian inflicted by Qais.

Finally, Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) said to the Syrian, ‘*Debate with this boy (viz. Heshaam Ibn al-Hakam).*’

The Syrian agreed and said to Heshaam, ‘Young man, ask me about the Imamat of this man’ (indicating in a derogatory manner to Imam a.s.) due to which Heshaam became so angry that he was trembling with anger.

Heshaam asked, ‘O Syrian! Tell me, is your Lord more considerate towards His creatures or the creatures towards themselves?’

The Syrian replied, ‘Of course! My Lord is more considerate towards His creatures than the creatures are towards themselves.’

Heshaam: ‘What did He do to show His care towards His creatures?’

Syrian: ‘He established a proof and a guide for them so that they may not disperse or when they disagree, he (the guide) unites them, straightens their crookedness and informs them of their duties towards their Lord.’

Heshaam: ‘Who is this proof and guide?’

Syrian: ‘The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).’

Heshaam: And who after the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)?'

Syrian: The Book and the Sunnah

Heshaam: Are the Book and the Sunnah beneficial for us today in removing our differneces?

Syrian: Yes

Heshaam: Then why are we, you and me, disagreeing and you have come all the way from Syria, in our dispute with you?

Syrian was silent.

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) asked the Syrian, ‘*Why are you not talking*?’

The Syrian responded, ‘If I say we don’t disagree, I will be lying. If I say the Book and the Sunnah dispels our disagreements, I will nullify my own argument because each of them has several intepretations. If I say we disagree and both of us claim to be right, then the Book and the Sunnah do not benefit us but that there should be an argument in it in my favour against him.’

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) told him, ‘Ask him (viz. Heshaam). You will find him for a long time (a handful in answering you).’

Syrian: O so and so! Who is more caring towards the creatures? Their Lord or they themselves?

Heshaam: Their Lord is more caring towards them than they are to themselves.

Syrian: So, has He appointed for them someone who will gather their words, straighten their crookedness and informs them of their right from their wrong?

Heshaam: During the time of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) or now?

Syrian: In the time of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), it was the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) himself. But who is the divine proof today?

Heshaam: The one who is sitting here, to whom people set out and he informs us about the news of the skies and the earth, inheriting it from his father and grandfather.

Syrian: How can this be proved for me?

Heshaam: Ask him whatever you want.

Syrian: You have severed my excuses. I have no option but to ask.

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) informed, ‘O Syrian! I will inform you about your journey and the details of your path. It was such and such.’

The Syrian said, ‘You have spoken the truth. I submit to Allah right now.’

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) rectified him, ‘Rather say, I believe in Allah right now. Islam is before Imaan. Inheritance and marriage is based on Islam while reward (in the hereafter) is based on Imaan.’

The Syrian accepted, ‘You have spoken the truth. Right now I testify that there is no god but Allah, that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and that you are the successor of the successors….’

## References:

Kaafi, vol. 1, pp. 171 -173, H. 4 بَابُ الِاضْطِرَارِ اِلَى الْحُجَّةِ

# Importance of Divine Proof

اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ اِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَدَعُ الْاَرْضَ اِلَّا وَ فِيهَا عَالِمٌ يَعْلَمُ الزِّيَادَةَ وَ النُّقْصَانَ فَاِذَا زَادَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ شَيْئاً رَدَّهُمْ وَ اِذَا نَقَصُوا اَكْمَلَهُ لَهُمْ فَقَالَ خُذُوهُ كَامِلًا وَ لَوْ لَا ذٰلِكَ لَالْتَبَسَ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِينَ اَمْرُهُمْ وَ لَمْ يُفَرَّقْ بَيْنَ الْحَقِّ وَ الْبَاطِل‏

Abu Baseer reports from Imam Sadeq (a.s.) who said, “Surely, Allah does not leave the earth except that there is in it a scholar (here implying an infallible Imam), who knows the excess and deficiency. When the believers add anything (to religion), he returns it and when they fall short, he completes it.” Thereafter, he (a.s.) continued, “Take the religion completely. Had it not been so, their affair (religion) would have been confused for the believers and truth could not have been distinguished with falsehood.”

## Note:

Here, the word ‘believers’ has been used; it is not talking about the addition or deduction of the innovators, hypocrites, disbelievers, etc. Another important thing is that Imam (a.s.) is advising us to take religion in its entirety, which implies total and absolute submission.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 21, H. 19

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 195, Chapter 153, H. 4

Sa’d al-Sa’ood, p. 52

Dalaael al-Imaamah, p. 232

# Necessity of Divine Proof

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لَوْ كَانَ النَّاسُ رَجُلَيْنِ لَكَانَ اَحَدُهُمَا الْاِمَامَ وَ قَالَ اِنَّ آخِرَ مَنْ يَمُوتُ الْاِمَامُ لِئَلَّا يَحْتَجَّ اَحَدٌ عَلَى اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اَنَّهُ تَرَكَهُ بِغَيْرِ حُجَّةٍ لِلهِ عَلَيْهِ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“If the people were only two people, certainly one of them will be an Imam.” He (a.s.) continued, “Surely, the last person to die will be an Imam so that none can have any argument against Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – that He has left him without a Proof of Allah upon him.”

## Note:

Here the word Imam has been used in its vaster sense i.e. a Prophet, a Messenger, a successor or an Imam. In other words, in any form a divine proof should be present so that people don’t have any argument against Allah on the Day of Judgment i.e. punishment without explanation.

## References:

Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 180, H. 3

# Necessity of a Divine Proof – Protecting the people from Iblis (l.a.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اَنَّ جَبْرَئِيلَ نَزَلَ عَلٰى مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ يُخْبِرُ عَنْ رَبِّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فَقَالَ لَهُ يَا مُحَمَّدُ لَمْ اَتْرُكِ الْاَرْضَ اِلَّا وَ فِيهَا عَالِمٌ يَعْرِفُ طَاعَتِي وَ هُدَايَ وَ يَكُونُ نَجَاةً فِيمَا بَيْنَ قَبْضِ النَّبِيِّ اِلَى خُرُوجِ النَّبِيِّ الْآخَرِ وَ لَمْ اَكُنْ اَتْرُكُ اِبْلِيسَ يُضِلُّ النَّاسَ وَ لَيْسَ فِي الْاَرْضِ حُجَّةٌ وَ دَاعٍ اِلَيَّ وَ هَادٍ اِلَى سَبِيلِي وَ عَارِفٍ بِاَمْرِي وَ اِنِّي قَدْ قَضَيْتُ لِكُلِّ قَوْمٍ هَادِياً اَهْدِي بِهِ السُّعَدَاءَ وَ يَكُونُ حُجَّةً عَلَى الْاَشْقِيَاءِ

Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) informs,

“Surely, Jibraeel descended on Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) informing from his Lord – Mighty and Majestic be He. He said to him, ‘O Muhammad! I have not left the earth except that in it is a (divinely appointed) man of knowledge. He knows My obedience and My guidance. He is the salvation between the death of a Prophet and the appearance of another Prophet. I have not left Iblis for deviating the people while there is no divine proof in the earth, a caller towards My path and a knower of My command. Indeed, I have decreed a guide for every nation through whom I guide the fortunate ones and who is a proof against the wretched ones.”

## Note:

Here, Allah says that He would not leave the people alone to fight against Iblis. It would be an unfair fight. There should always be a Divine proof who will call the people towards Allah, guide towards His path and aware of His path. He is the salvation. Through him Allah guides the fortunate ones and he is His proof against the wretched ones.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 22, H. 22

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 196, Chapter 153, H. 7

# Necessity of a Divine Proof – Survival of the People and the Earth

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ لَا يَصْلُحُ النَّاسُ اِلَّا بِاِمَامٍ وَ لَا تَصْلُحُ الْاَرْضُ اِلَّا بِذَلِكَ

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) says, “The people cannot survive except with a (divinely appointed) Imam and the earth cannot survive except with him.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 22, H. 23

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 196, Chapter 153, H. 9

# Duties of a Divine Proof

عَنْ جَعْفَرِ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ اَنَّ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ قَالَ فِي كُلِّ خَلَفٍ مِنْ أُمَّتِي عَدْلٌ مِنْ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي يَنْفِي عَنْ هَذَا الدِّينِ تَحْرِيفَ الْغَالِينَ وَ انْتِحَالَ الْمُبْطِلِينَ وَ تَاْوِيلَ الْجُهَّالِ وَ اِنَّ اَئِمَّتَكُمْ وَفْدُكُمْ اِلَى اللهِ فَانْظُرُوا مَنْ تُوفِدُونَ فِي دِينِكُمْ وَ صَلَاتِكُمْ

Imam Jafar Ibn Muhammad (a.s.) informs vide his ancestors (a.s.) that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said,

“In every generation of my nation, there has to be a just (Imam) from my Ahle Bait (a.s.). He will dispel from this religion the distortion of the exaggerators, the bogus claims of the people of falsehood and the interpretation of the ignoramuses. Surely, your Imams are your delegation to Allah. So see whom you delegate in your religion and your prayers.”

## Note:

Here the term ‘Adl’ is used in its absolute sense i.e. putting everything in its place and giving everyone his due

The term ‘exaggerators’ too has been used in its absolute sense i.e. anyone who crosses the limits.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 30, H. 46

Qurb al-Asnaad, p. 37

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 221, Chapter 22, H. 7

# Divine Imams (a.s.) – The uninterrupted words of Allah

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللهِ بْنِ جُنْدَبٍ قَالَ سَاَلْتُ اَبَا الْحَسَنِؑ عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ لَقَدْ وَصَّلْنا لَهُمُ الْقَوْلَ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ قَالَ اِمَامٌ اِلَى اِمَامٍ

Abdullah Ibn Jundab reports, “I asked Imam Kazem (a.s.) about the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He - **“And indeed We have joined the ‘word’ uninterrupted perhaps they may be mindful[[1]](#footnote-1)”.** He (a.s.) said, “*One Imam to (another) Imam.”*

## References:

Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 415, H. 18 بَابٌ فِيهِ نُكَتٌ وَ نُتَفٌ مِنَ التَّنْزِيلِ فِي الْوَلَايَةِ

# Presence of an Imam – Survival of the Earth

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ لَوْ اَنَّ الْاِمَامَ رُفِعَ مِنَ الْاَرْضِ سَاعَةً لَمَاجَتْ بِاَهْلِهَا كَمَا يَمُوجُ الْبَحْرُ بِاَهْلِهِ

Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer a.s.) said, “If the Imam is raised from the earth even momentarily, the earth will gulp down its inhabitants like the ocean gulp downs its dwellers.”

## Note:

Here too the word Imam is used in its vast meaning i.e. Prophet, Messenger or successor i.e. any divine proof.

Moment here means even a fraction of a second.

‘Is removed’ means to be killed or elevated to the skies. In other words, Imam is a safety for the earth. Existence of earth depends on the presence of the Imam.

## References:

Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 179, H. 12 بَابُ اَنَّ الْاَرْضَ لَا تَخْلُو مِنْ حُجَّةٍ

# Absence of a Divine proof – Annihilation of existents

عَنْ زُرَارَةَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فِي حَدِيثٍ لَهُ فِي الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّؑ يَقُولُ فِي آخِرِهِ وَ لَوْ لَا مَنْ عَلَى الْاَرْضِ مِنْ حُجَجِ اللهِ لَنَفَضَتِ الْاَرْضُ مَا فِيهَا وَ اَلْقَتْ مَا عَلَيْهَا اِنَّ الْاَرْضَ لَا تَخْلُو سَاعَةً مِنَ الْحُجَّةِ

Zoraarah reports from Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) in a tradition from Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.), who says at the end of the narration,

‘And if none from the divine proofs would be present in the earth, the earth would quash whatever was in it and throw (as in an earthquake) whatever was upon it. Surely, the earth cannot be devoid of a divine proof even for a moment.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 34, Chapter 1, H. 57

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 202, Chapter 21, H. 4

# Divine Proof to Creation –Soul to Body

عَنْ اَبَانِ بْنِ تَغْلِبَ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ الْحُجَّةُ قَبْلَ الْخَلْقِ وَ مَعَ الْخَلْقِ وَ بَعْدَ الْخَلْقِ

Abaan Ibn Taghlib reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said, “The Divine Proof is before the creation, with the creation and after the creation.”

## Note:

Abaan Ibn Taghlib is highly respected and authentic companion of Imam (a.s.) and narrator of traditions. Even the opponents have vouched for his integrity.

Just as the human soul was before the human body, is with the human body and will continue to exist even after the human body has perished, the Imam is before the creation, with the creation and even after the creation has been annihilated.

The first man on the earth was a divine proof and likewise, the last too will be a divine proof.

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaaat, vol. 1, p. 487, Chapter 11, H. 1

# Divine Proof – Inevitable Need of the Creatures

عَنِ الْحَارِثِ بْنِ الْمُغِيرَةِ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ لَمْ يَتْرُكِ اللهُ الْاَرْضَ بِغَيْرِ عَالِمٍ يَحْتَاجُ النَّاسُ اِلَيْهِ وَ لَا يَحْتَاجُ اِلَيْهِمْ يَعْلَمُ الْحَلَالَ وَ الْحَرَامَ قُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ بِمَا ذَا يَعْلَمُ قَالَ بِمَوَارِيثِهِ مِنْ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ وَ مِنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ

Al-Haarith Ibn al-Mughirah reports, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say, ‘Allah has not left the earth without a (divinely appointed) learned man. The people need him but he does not them. He knows the permissible and the prohibited.’ I asked, ‘How does he know?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘Through his inheritances from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and from Ali Ibn Abi Taalib (a.s.)’.”

## Note:

Here, learned man is not used in its general meaning of a scholar because scholars are subject to sins and errors while an Imam is infallible.

People are in need of divine proofs but not vice-versa, even in non-religious sciences.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 40, H. 74 باب الاضطرار إلى الحجّة و أن الأرض لا تخلو من حجّة

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 224, Chapter 22, H. 18 باب اتصال الوصية من لدن آدمؑ و أن الأرض لا تخلو من حجة لله عز و جل على خلقه إلى يوم القيامة

# Divine Imam – Protected and Hoped One

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ لَا يَزَالُ فِي وُلْدِي مَاْمُونٌ مَاْمُولٌ

Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) reports from his ancestors (a.s.) that Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Talib (a.s.) said, “*There will always be in my progeny a protected and hoped one.*”

## Note:

Protected is used in its absolute sense. That is, he is protected from every negative trait like sins, errors, indecencies, ignorance, etc.

Hoped one means every positive hope and expectation is from him. Hopes of all the weakened people of the earth are pinned on him. Everybody – other than him – from whom people hoped, will disappoint them.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 40, Chapter 1, H. 76

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 228, Chapter 22, H. 22

# Presence of a Just Imam – Sign of Allah’s Majesty and Greatness

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ اِنَّ اللَّهَ اَجَلُّ وَ اَعْظَمُ مِنْ اَنْ يَتْرُكَ الْاَرْضَ بِغَيْرِ اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ

Abu Baseer (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) said,

“Surely, Allah is more Majestic and Greater than that He leaves the earth with a Just Imam.”

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 178, H. 6

# Divine Guides – Only from the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

قَالَ عَلِيٌّؑ لِرَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ اَ مِنَّا الْهُدَاةُ اَمْ مِنْ غَيْرِنَا قَالَ لَا بَلْ مِنَّا الْهُدَاةُ اِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ بِنَا اسْتَنْقَذَهُمُ اللهُ مِنْ ضَلَالَةِ الشِّرْكِ وَ بِنَا يَسْتَنْقِذُهُمُ اللهُ مِنْ ضَلَالَةِ الْفِتْنَةِ وَ بِنَا يُصْبِحُونَ اِخْوَاناً بَعْدَ الضَّلَالَةِ

Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) asked, “O Messenger of Allah! Are the guides from us or from other than us?” He (s.a.w.a.) replied, “No. The guides are from us till the Day of Judgment. Through us, Allah will liberate them from the deviation of polytheism, through us, Allah will liberate them from the deviation of mischief and they will become brothers after deviation through us.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 42, Chapter 1, H. 83

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 230, Chapter 22, H. 31

# Divine Proof – Last human on earth

عَنْ حَمْزَةَ بْنِ حُمْرَانَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ لَوْ لَمْ يَكُنْ فِي الْاَرْضِ اِلَّا اثْنَانِ لَكَانَ اَحَدُهُمَا الْحُجَّةَ وَ لَوْ ذَهَبَ اَحَدُهُمَا بَقِيَ الْحُجَّة

Hamzah Ibn Humraan reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said, “If there remained only two people in the earth, certainly one of them would be a divine proof. If one of them perished, the divine proof would remain.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 43, Chapter 1, H. 85

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 232, Chapter 22, H. 38

# Divine Proof – From Prophet Adam (a.s.) till the Hereafter

عَنْ يَزِيدَ الْكُنَاسِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ لَيْسَ تَبْقَى الْاَرْضُ يَا اَبَا خَالِدٍ يَوْماً وَاحِداً بِغَيْرِ حُجَّةٍ لِلهِ عَلَى النَّاسِ وَ لَمْ يَبْقَ مُنْذُ خَلَقَ اللهُ آدَمَ وَ اَسْكَنَهُ الْاَرْضَ

Yazeed al-Kunaasi reports that Imam Muhammad al-Baqer (a.s.) informed, “O Abaa Khalid! The earth cannot survive even for one single day without Allah’s proof upon the people. Nor has it survived since Allah created Adam and made him inhabit the earth.”

## Note:

Al-Kunaasah is an area of Kufa. Al-Kunaasi was from there.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 43, Chapter 1, H. 86

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 233, Chapter 22, H. 39

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) – The Stars of the Sky

عَنْ مَعْرُوفِ بْنِ خَرَّبُوذَ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍؑ يَقُولُ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اِنَّمَا مَثَلُ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي فِي هَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ كَمَثَلِ نُجُومِ السَّمَاءِ كُلَّمَا غَابَ نَجْمٌ طَلَعَ نَجْم‏

Ma’roof Ibn Kharrabooz reports, “I heard Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer a.s.) say that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘The likeness of my Ahle Bait (a.s.) in this nation is like the stars of the sky. Wheneever a star disappears, another rises’.”

## Note:

In this tradition, the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are likened to the stars in the sky. In some other traditions, the “scholars” are likened to the stars. Thus, we see that the real and actual implication of “scholars” are the Ahle Bait (a.s.). All others are their students, provided they submit completely to the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 44, Chapter 1, H. 90

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 281, Chapter 24, H. 31

# Only One Divine Proof on the Earth

عَنِ الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ اَبِي الْعَلَاءِ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ تُتْرَكُ الْاَرْضُ بِغَيْرِ اِمَامٍ قَالَ لَا قُلْنَا لَهُ تَكُونُ الْاَرْضُ وَ فِيهَا اِمَامَانِ قَالَ لَا اِلَّا اِمَامٌ صَامِتٌ لَا يَتَكَلَّمُ وَ يَتَكَلَّمُ الَّذِي قَبْلَهُ

Al-Husain Ibn Abi al-A’laa says, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.), ‘Can the earth be left without an Imam?’

He (a.s.) replied, ‘*No*’.

We inquired from him, ‘Can there be two Imams in the earth?’

He (a.s.) answered, ‘No but that one (Imam) is silent who does not speak and the one who is prior to him speaks’.”

## Note:

Silent means the Imam who is not responsible for executing the divine laws in presence of the Imam prior to him.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 51, Chapter 1, H. 102

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 486, Chapter 10, H. 11

# Divine Knowledge doesn’t go up again

عَنِ الْحَارِثِ بْنِ الْمُغِيرَةِ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ اِنَّ الْعِلْمَ الَّذِي أُنْزِلَ مَعَ آدَمَ لَمْ يُرْفَعْ وَ مَا مَاتَ مِنَّا عَالِمٌ اِلَّا وَرَّثَ عِلْمَهُ اِنَّ الْاَرْضَ لَا تَبْقَى بِغَيْرِ عَالِمٍ

Al-Haarith Ibn al-Mughirah says, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say, ‘Surely the knowledge which came down with (Prophet) Adam (a.s.) was not raised (back). No man of knowledge from us dies except that he gives his knowledge in inheritance. Surely, the earth cannot survive without a man of (divine) knowledge.”

## Note:

True knowledge is the one which is revealed by Allah on His emissaries (a.s.). Whatever He reveals, He does not raise it back towards the heavens.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 40, Chapter 1, H. 75

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 224, Chapter 22, H. 19

# Steadfastness on the Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and Imams (a.s.) after him

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِ الصَّادِقِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اَنَا سَيِّدُ النَّبِيِّينَ وَ وَصِيِّي سَيِّدُ الْوَصِيِّينَ وَ اَوْصِيَائِي سَادَةُ الْاَوْصِيَاءِ اِنَّ آدَمَ سَاَلَ اللَّهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اَنْ يَجْعَلَ لَهُ وَصِيّاً صَالِحاً فَاَوْحَى اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اِلَيْهِ اَنِّي اَكْرَمْتُ الْاَنْبِيَاءَ بِالنُّبُوَّةِ ثُمَّ اخْتَرْتُ خَلْقِي وَ جَعَلْتُ خِيَارَهُمُ الْاَوْصِيَاءَ ثُمَّ اَوْحَى اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اِلَيْهِ يَا آدَمُ اَوْصِ اِلَى شَيْثٍ فَاَوْصَى آدَمُ اِلَى شَيْثٍ وَ هُوَ هِبَةُ اللهِ بْنُ آدَمَ ..... وَ اَوْصَى يَحْيَى بْنُ زَكَرِيَّا اِلَى مُنْذِرٍ وَ اَوْصَى مُنْذِرٌ اِلَى سُلَيْمَةَ وَ اَوْصَى سُلَيْمَةُ اِلَى بُرْدَةَ ثُمَّ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ وَ دَفَعَهَا اِلَيَّ بُرْدَةُ وَ اَنَا اَدْفَعُهَا اِلَيْكَ يَا عَلِيُّ وَ اَنْتَ تَدْفَعُهَا اِلَى وَصِيِّكَ وَ يَدْفَعُهَا وَصِيُّكَ اِلَى اَوْصِيَائِكَ مِنْ وُلْدِكَ وَاحِدٍ بَعْدَ وَاحِدٍ حَتَّى يُدْفَعَ اِلَى خَيْرِ اَهْلِ الْاَرْضِ بَعْدَكَ وَ لَتَكْفُرَنَّ بِكَ الْأُمَّةُ وَ لَتَخْتَلِفَنَّ عَلَيْكَ اخْتِلَافاً شَدِيداً الثَّابِتُ عَلَيْكَ كَالْمُقِيمِ مَعِي وَ الشَّاذُّ عَنْكَ فِي النَّارِ وَ النَّارُ مَثْوًى لِلْكَافِرِينَ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) informs that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said, “I am the Chief of the Prophets and my successor is the Chief of the successors. My successors are the chiefs of the successors. Surely, (Prophet) Adam (a.s.) asked Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – that He should appoint for him a righteous successor. So Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – revealed to him, ‘Verily, I have honoured the Prophets with Prophethood. Thereafter, I selected My creatures and made the chosen ones among them as the successors. Then Allah said, ‘O Adam! You appoint Shaith as your successor and he was Hebatullah the son of Adam….and Yahya Ibn Zakariyya willed to Mundhir, who willed to Sulaimah, who willed to Burdah…Burdah handed it to me (viz. the Messenger of Allah s.a.w.a.), and I am handing it to you, O Ali! You should hand it to your successor and your successor should hand it over to the successors from your progeny, one after the other, till it is handed to the best person of the earth after you. Indeed, the nation will disbelieve on your account and there will be intense disagreements in it regarding you. The one who is steadfast upon you (i.e. your mastership) is like the one who is steadfast with me. The one who disassociates himself from you will be in the hell-fire and hell-fire is the abode of the disbelievers.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 57, Chapter 2, H. 1 باب 2- آخر في اتصال الوصية و ذكر الأوصياء من لدن آدم إلى آخر الدهر

Al-Amaali of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.), p. 402, Majlis 63, H. 3

# People cannot select an Imam for themselves

The following narration is a very lengthy one reported on the authority of Sa’d Ibn Abdillah **al-Ash’ari** **al-Qummi** (r.a.) in which he has asked several questions from our master the twelfth Imam, al-Mahdi (a.t.f.s.). One of these was as follows:

قُلْتُ فَاَخْبِرْنِي يَا مَوْلَايَ عَنِ الْعِلَّةِ الَّتِي تَمْنَعُ الْقَوْمَ مِنِ اخْتِيَارِ اِمَامٍ لِاَنْفُسِهِمْ قَالَ مُصْلِحٍ اَوْ مُفْسِدٍ قُلْتُ مُصْلِحٍ قَالَ فَهَلْ يَجُوزُ اَنْ تَقَعَ خِيَرَتُهُمْ عَلَى الْمُفْسِدِ بَعْدَ اَنْ لَا يَعْلَمَ اَحَدٌ بِمَا يَخْطُرُ بِبَالِ غَيْرِهِ مِنْ صَلَاحٍ اَوْ فَسَادٍ قُلْتُ بَلَى قَالَ فَهِيَ الْعِلَّةُ أُورِدُهَا لَكَ بِبُرْهَانٍ يَثِقُ بِهِ عَقْلُك‏

I (Sa’d) said, ‘Inform me, O my master, about the cause which prohibits the Imam from selecting an Imam for themselves.’

He (a.t.f.s.) asked, ‘Good (Imam) or bad (Imam)?’

I said, ‘Good’.

He (a.t.f.s.) argued, ‘Is it possible that they select a corrupt Imam as none knows about the thoughts of others, whether he is thinking good or bad?’

I replied, ‘Yes (it is possible).’

He (a.t.f.s.) reiterated, ‘This is the reason that I have brought for you as an argument on which your intellect can rely.’

## Note:

The above tradition in its entirety can be found in **Muntakhab al-Athar (English), vol. 2, H. 809** narrating from Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 2, pp. 454 -465, Chapter 23, H. 21 and Dalaael al-Imaamah, pp. 274 - 281]

Sa’d Ibn Abdillah was Ash’ari. The Ash’ariyoon were a Yemeni tribe which accepted Islam. Initially, most of them were Umavis and became staunch opponents of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Later, some of them accepted Shiaism and settled in the holy city of Qom. Sa’d was one of them who became a Shia and a very strong Rafedi as the beginning of this narration clearly proves beyond doubt. (For the beginning of this narration, see Muntakhab al-Athar).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 68, H. 3 أن الإمامة لا تكون إلا بالنص و يجب على الإمام النص على من بعده‏

al-Ehtejaaj, vol. 2, p. 464 احتجاج الحجة القائم المنتظر المهدي صاحب الزمان صلوات الله عليه و على آبائه الطاهرين

# Allah’s Advice to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ عُرِجَ بِالنَّبِيِّ ﷺ السَّمَاءَ مِائَةً وَ عِشْرِينَ مَرَّةً مَا مِنْ مَرَّةٍ اِلَّا وَ قَدْ اَوْصَى اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فِيهَا اِلَى النَّبِيِّ بِالْوَلَايَةِ لِعَلِيٍّ وَ الْاَئِمَّةِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِؑ اَكْثَرَ مِمَّا اَوْصَاهُ بِالْفَرَائِضِ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) informs, “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was taken to the skies one hundred and twenty times. Each time, Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – admonished the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) vis-à-vis the mastership of Ali (a.s.) and the Imams (a.s.) after him more than He admonished him (s.a.w.a.) about the religious duties.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p.69, H. 4 أن الإمامة لا تكون إلا بالنص و يجب على الإمام النص على من بعده

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 79, H. 10 and al-Khesaal, vol. 2, p. 600, H. 3 عرج النبي ﷺ إلى السماء مائة و عشرين مرة

# Imamate is in Allah’s Hands – He places wherever He wishes

عَمْرِو بْنِ الْاَشْعَثِ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقُولُ اَ تَرَوْنَ الْاَمْرَ اِلَيْنَا نَضَعُهُ حَيْثُ نَشَاءُ كَلَّا وَ اللهِ اِنَّهُ لَعَهْدٌ مَعْهُودٌ مِنْ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ اِلَى رَجُلٍ فَرَجُلٍ حَتَّى يَنْتَهِيَ اِلَى صَاحِبِهِ

Amr Ibn al-Ash’ath recounts, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) say,

‘Do you think that the affair (of Imamate) is in our hands, we place it wherever we please? Nay! By Allah, it is a promised covenant from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) till one person (Imam) after another, until it reaches to its master’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 70, H. 7

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 222, H. 11

# Prerogative of Imamat lies only with Allah the High

لَمَّا كَانَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ يَعْرِضُ نَفْسَهُ عَلَى القَبَائِلِ جَاءَ اِلَى بَنِي كِلَابٍ فَقَالُوا نُبَايِعُكَ عَلٰى اَنْ يَكُونَ لَنَا الْاَمْرُ بَعْدَكَ فَقَالَ الْاَمْرُ لِلهِ فَاِنْ شَاءَ كَانَ فِيكُمْ وَ كَانَ فِي غَيْرِكُمْ فَمَضَوْا وَ لَمْ يُبَايِعُوهُ وَ قَالُوا لَا نَضْرِبُ لِحَرْبِكَ بِاَسْيَافِنَا ثُمَّ تَحْكُمُ عَلَيْنَا غَيْرَنَا

“When the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) used to present himself before the tribes, he came to the Bani Kelaab. They said, ‘We will pay allegiance on the condition that the affair (Imamate) will be handed to us after you.’ He (s.a.w.a.) responded, ‘*The affair is for Allah. If He wishes, it will be in you and it can be for other than you.*’ They went away and did not pay allegiance, saying, ‘We will not fight your battles with our swords since you want to make others rule over us’.”

## Note:

In Jahiliyyah, Arabs were having Hajj. In fact, Hajj was there right from the time of Hazrat Adam (a.s.). During Jahiliyyah, the pagans had a mixed religion. Some things were taken from divine religions while others were taken from human practices and customs. Right from the beginning of Islam, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had the habit of meeting tribes coming for Hajj. Once he met Bani Kelaab. (Umm al-Baneen r.a. belonged to this tribe). They said to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that we will pay allegiance to you on the condition that you will hand over the rule to us after your death. Please pay attention: It was that time when Islam was new and the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) needed help from every possible quarter. Not like the time of martyrdom when there were hundreds of thousands of Muslims or like today, when there are millions. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) replied, “The affair (of Imamate) is for Allah the High. If He wishes, it can be in you or it can be for other than you.” They went away and didn’t pay allegiance to him. They said that we don’t want to fight for you as tomorrow you will appoint someone else as the rulers.

When the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) went for the Battle of Tabuk, he left behind Ali (a.s.) as his successor. Prior to that, Ali (a.s.) had participated in all wars. In this battle, the internal situation of Madina was very hostile. Tabuk was far from Madinah and to return quickly in an emergency was very difficult.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 74, H. 23

al-Manaaqeb of Ibn Shahr Aashob (r.a.)

# Preferring an inferior to a superior - Breach of Divine Trust

اَبُو ذَرٍّ عَنِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ مَنِ اسْتَعْمَلَ غُلَاماً فِي عِصَابَةٍ فِيهَا مَنْ هُوَ اَرْضَى لِلهِ مِنْهُ فَقَدْ خَانَ اللَّهَ

و قال أبو الحسن الرفاء لابن رامين الفقيه لما خرج النبي ﷺ من المدينة ما استخلف عليها أحدا قال بلى استخلف عليا قال و كيف لم يقل لأهل المدينة اختاروا فإنكم لا تجتمعون على الضلال قال خاف عليهم الخلف و الفتنة قال فلو وقع بينهم فساد لأصلحه عند عودته قال هذا أوثق قال فاستخلف أحدا بعد موته قال لا قال فموته أعظم من سفره فكيف أمن على الأمة بعد موته ما خافه في سفره و هو حي عليهم فقطعه

Abu Zarr (r.a.) narrates from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.),

“Whoever uses (i.e. prefers) a slave in a group in which there is somebody with whom Allah is more satisfied (i.e. he is more obedient to Allah), then indeed he has breached Allah’s trust.”

## An Interesting Debate

Abul Hasan al-Refaa, a Shia, said to Ibn Raameen al-Faqeeh, a Bakri, “When the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came out from Madinah, he did not appoint anybody.”

Ibn Raameen replied, “No. He appointed Ali.”

Al-Refaa retorted, “How come? Why he did not say to the people of Madinah that you select (your ruler) because you will not gather upon a deviation?”

Ibn Raameen said, “He (s.a.w.a.) feared that they will be entangled in discord and mischief.”

Al-Refaa: Had mischief and corruption occurred, he (s.a.w.a.) would have rectified it on his return.”

Ibn Raameen: This is better (that he appoints a successor instead of waiting for mischief and corruption to occur then rectify it).

Al-Refaa: Did he (s.a.w.a.) appoint anyone after his death?

Ibn Raameen: No

Al-Refaa: His (s.a.w.a.) death is greater than his journey. How he (s.a.w.a.) felt safe about his nation what he (s.a.w.a.) feared for them during his journey and while he (s.a.w.a.) was still alive?

Ibn Raameen just kept quiet.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 75, H. 24

al-Manaaqeb of Ibn Shahr Aashob (r.a.)

# Necessity of Knowing the Imam (a.s.) and Denier of a Divine Proof is an Infidel

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّ الْاَرْضَ لَا تَصْلُحُ اِلَّا بِالْاِمَامِ وَ مَنْ مَاتَ لَا يَعْرِفُ اِمَامَهُ مَاتَ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً وَ اَحْوَجُ مَا يَكُونُ اَحَدُكُمْ اِلَى مَعْرِفَتِهِ اِذَا بَلَغَتْ نَفْسُهُ هَذِهِ وَ اَهْوَى بِيَدِهِ اِلَى صَدْرِهِ يَقُولُ لَقَدْ كُنْتُ عَلٰى اَمْرٍ حَسَنٍ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) says,

“The earth cannot survive except with an Imam. Whoever dies without knowing his Imam, dies the death of paganism. You will need his recognition the most when your soul reaches here – and indicated towards his chest – saying, ‘You are on a good affair’.”

## Note:

لا تصلح means the earth cannot survive without an Imam or divine proof.

When the angel of death or his companions capture the soul of a person, they start from the feet and then move upwards to the knees. When they reach to the chest, man sees his position in Barzakh. At that moment, he realizes whether his choice of Imam was right or wrong.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 76, H. 2

al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 154, H. 79 and al-Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 21, H. 9

# Denier of any Imam is an Infidel and Naasebi is a Polytheist

مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ اِسْمَاعِيلَ عَنْ اَبِي الْحَسَنِ الرِّضَاؑ قَالَ مَنْ مَاتَ وَ لَيْسَ لَهُ اِمَامٌ مَاتَ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً فَقُلْتُ لَهُ كُلُّ مَنْ مَاتَ وَ لَيْسَ لَهُ اِمَامٌ مَاتَ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً قَالَ نَعَمْ وَ الْوَاقِفُ كَافِرٌ وَ النَّاصِبُ مُشْرِكٌ

Muhammad Ibn Ismaeel narrates from Imam Abu al-Hasan al-Reza (a.s.) who said, “*Whoever dies and there is no Imam for him (i.e. he does not know the Imam of his time), dies the death of paganism.*” I asked him, “Anybody who dies without knowing the Imam of his time dies the death of ignorance?” He (a.s.) replied, “*Yes. The Waqefi is an infidel while the Naasebi is a polytheist.*”

## Note:

The Waaqefiyyah are infidels. Imam Kazim (a.s.) was martyred during his prolonged imprisonment. As a result, some of his deputies got a feeling of independence. They hoarded the wealth of Khums. When the news of Imam’s (a.s.) martyrdom reached to them, they denied his death and claimed that he has gone in occultation. They formed a new sect called Waaqefiyyah (i.e. they suggested that Imamate had stopped at Imam Kazim (a.s.)). They deceived the people through their arguments in such a way that not a single follower from them thought that this is not a divine religion. But Imam Reza (a.s.) in this tradition clearly states that the Waaqefiyyah are unbelievers and infidels.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 78, H. 7

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 2, p. 668, H. 11

# Importance of Knowing the Imam of the time

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اَنَّهُ قَالَ يَا يَحْيَى مَنْ بَاتَ لَيْلَةً لَا يَعْرِفُ فِيهَا اِمَامَ زَمَانِهِ مَاتَ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“O Yahya! Whoever passes a night without knowing in it the Imam of his time, will die the death of paganism.”

## Note:

بات means to pass the night whether sleeping or being awake. Thus, people should be aware of the importance of the issue. If someone dies without knowing the Imam of his time, he will die the death of a disbeliever.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 78, H. 8

Al-Ghaibah of al-Nomani (r.a.), p. 127, Chapter 7, H. 1

# Believing an Imam from other than Allah is Polytheism

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ مَنْ اَشْرَكَ مَعَ اِمَامٍ اِمَامَتُهُ مِنْ عِنْدِ اللهِ مَنْ لَيْسَتْ اِمَامَتُهُ مِنَ اللهِ كَانَ مُشْرِكاً بِاللهِ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“Whoever associates with an Imam whose Imamate is from Allah an Imam whose Imamate is not from Allah is a polytheist (i.e. has ascribed a partner with Allah).”

## Note:

There is no difference if a person associates an idol with Allah OR associates an ordinary man with a divinely appointed Imam.

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 373, H. 6;

Al-Ghaibah of al-Nomani (r.a.), p. 130, Chapter 7, H. 8

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 78, H. 11

# Excuse about ignorance about Imam will not accepted

عَنْ اَبِي حَمْزَةَ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ لَا يُعْذِرُ اللهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ اَحَداً يَقُولُ يَا رَبِّ لَمْ اَعْلَمْ اَنَّ وُلْدَ فَاطِمَةَ هُمُ الْوُلَاةُ عَلَى النَّاسِ كَافَّةً وَ فِي شِيعَةِ وُلْدِ فَاطِمَةَ اَنْزَلَ اللهُ هَذِهِ الْآيَةَ خَاصَّةً يا عِبادِيَ الَّذِينَ اَسْرَفُوا عَلى‏ اَنْفُسِهِمْ لا تَقْنَطُوا مِنْ رَحْمَةِ اللهِ الْآيَةَ

Abu Hamzah al-Thumaali (r.a.) reports from Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer) (a.s.), “Allah will not accept the excuse on the Day of Judgment of the one who says, ‘O Lord! I did not know that the progeny of Fatima (s.a.) they are the rulers upon the people all of them. And for the Shias of Fatema’s progeny especially this verse was revealed, ‘**O My servants who have been extravagant with themselves! Don’t despair of Allah’s mercy…**”

## Note:

Often lack of knowledge of a matter can be an excuse for a thing. But for extremely important matters ignorance cannot be an excuse. For example, in a battle if a person is told to keep a watch on the enemies during the night, he cannot go to sleep citing that he was not sure that the enemies would attack during the night. The same applies for Imamate. You understand matters like praying, not drinking wine, looking at other’s women is bad, etc. but you did not follow Imamate?

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 80, H. 16

Tafseer al-Qummi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 250

# Conditions for witnessing Divine Mercy

قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ مَنْ سَرَّهُ اَنْ لَا يَكُونَ بَيْنَهُ وَ بَيْنَ اللهِ حِجَابٌ حَتَّى يَنْظُرَ اِلَى اللهِ وَ يَنْظُرَ اللهُ اِلَيْهِ فَلْيَتَوَالَ آلَ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ يَتَبَرَّاْ مِنْ عَدُوِّهِمْ وَ يَاْتَمَّ بِالْاِمَامِ مِنْهُمْ فَاِنَّهُ اِذَا كَانَ كَذٰلِكَ نَظَرَ اللهُ اِلَيْهِ وَ نَظَرَ اِلَى اللهِ

Imam Muhammad Baqer (a.s.) says,

“Whoever desires that there should not be any veil between him and Allah, so much so that he sees Allah and Allah sees him, he must accept the mastership of the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), express disgust towards their enemies and follow the Imam from them (a.s.). If he does so, Allah will look at him and he will look at Allah.”

## Note:

Obviously Allah the Almighty cannot be seen. What’s implied here is divine mercy and all other such bounties. Welaayah and Bara’ah both are important. The last part i.e. following their (a.s.) instructions is the most important.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 81, H. 17

Qurb al-Asnaad by Abdullah Ibn Ja’far al-Himyari (r.a.) p. 152, part 3

# Mastership of Ahle Bait (a.s.) – Condition for success

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ اِلَّا مَنْ تابَ وَ آمَنَ وَ عَمِلَ صالِحاً قَالَ وَ اللهِ لَوْ اَنَّهُ تَابَ وَ آمَنَ وَ عَمِلَ صَالِحاً وَ لَمْ يَهْتَدِ اِلَى وَلَايَتِنَا وَ مَوَدَّتِنَا وَ مَعْرِفَةِ فَضْلِنَا مَا اَغْنَى عَنْهُ ذٰلِكَ شَيْئاً

Imam Muhammad al-Baqir (a.s.) says concerning the word of Allah, “**Surely I will forgive the one who repented, believed and did good deeds…**” ‘*By Allah! If he repented, believed and did good deeds but was not guided towards our mastership, our love and the recognition of our excellence, none of the above will be of any use to him’.*”

## References

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 81, H. 19

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 259, 10th Majlis

# The Minimum Level of Belief

عَنْ سُلَيْمِ بْنِ قَيْسٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ عَلِيّاً ﷺ يَقُولُ وَ اَتَاهُ رَجُلٌ فَقَالَ لَهُ مَا اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ مُؤْمِناً وَ اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ كَافِراً وَ اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ ضَالًّا فَقَالَ لَهُ قَدْ سَاَلْتَ فَافْهَمِ الْجَوَابَ اَمَّا اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ مُؤْمِناً اَنْ يُعَرِّفَهُ اللهُ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى نَفْسَهُ فَيُقِرَّ لَهُ بِالطَّاعَةِ وَ يُعَرِّفَهُ نَبِيَّهُ ﷺ فَيُقِرَّ لَهُ بِالطَّاعَةِ وَ يُعَرِّفَهُ اِمَامَهَ وَ حُجَّتَهُ فِي اَرْضِهِ وَ شَاهِدَهُ عَلٰى خَلْقِهِ فَيُقِرَّ لَهُ بِالطَّاعَةِ قُلْتُ لَهُ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَ اِنْ جَهِلَ جَمِيعَ الْاَشْيَاءِ اِلَّا مَا وَصَفْتَ قَالَ نَعَمْ اِذَا أُمِرَ اَطَاعَ وَ اِذَا نُهِيَ انْتَهَى وَ اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ كَافِراً مَنْ زَعَمَ اَنَّ شَيْئاً نَهَى اللهُ عَنْهُ اَنَّ اللَّهَ اَمَرَ بِهِ وَ نَصَبَهُ دِيناً يَتَوَلَّى عَلَيْهِ وَ يَزْعُمُ اَنَّهُ يَعْبُدُ الَّذِي اَمَرَهُ بِهِ وَ اِنَّمَا يَعْبُدُ الشَّيْطَانَ وَ اَدْنَى مَا يَكُونُ بِهِ الْعَبْدُ ضَالًّا اَنْ لَا يَعْرِفَ حُجَّةَ اللهِ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى وَ شَاهِدَهُ عَلٰى عِبَادِهِ الَّذِي اَمَرَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ بِطَاعَتِهِ وَ فَرَضَ وَلَايَتَهُ قُلْتُ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ صِفْهُمْ لِي فَقَالَ الَّذِينَ قَرَنَهُمُ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ بِنَفْسِهِ وَ نَبِيِّهِ فَقَالَ يا اَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَ اَطِيعُوا الرَّسُولَ وَ أُولِي الْاَمْرِ مِنْكُمْ قُلْتُ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ جَعَلَنِيَ اللهُ فِدَاكَ اَوْضِحْ لِي فَقَالَ الَّذِينَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ فِي آخِرِ خُطْبَتِهِ يَوْمَ قَبَضَهُ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اِلَيْهِ اِنِّي قَدْ تَرَكْتُ فِيكُمْ اَمْرَيْنِ لَنْ تَضِلُّوا بَعْدِي مَا اِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ بِهِمَا كِتَابَ اللهِ وَ عِتْرَتِي اَهْلَ بَيْتِي فَاِنَّ اللَّطِيفَ الْخَبِيرَ قَدْ عَهِدَ اِلَيَّ اَنَّهُمَا لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ كَهَاتَيْنِ وَ جَمَعَ بَيْنَ مُسَبِّحَتَيْهِ وَ لَا اَقُولُ كَهَاتَيْنِ وَ جَمَعَ بَيْنَ الْمُسَبِّحَةِ وَ الْوُسْطَى فَتَسْبِقَ اِحْدَاهُمَا الْأُخْرَى فَتَمَسَّكُوا بِهِمَا لَا تَزِلُّوا وَ لَا تَضِلُّوا وَ لَا تَقَدَّمُوهُمْ فَتَضِلُّوا

Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Aameri al-Hilaali says that a person came to Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and asked, “What is the minimum limit by which a person becomes a believer? What is the minimum limit by which a person becomes a disbeliever? What is the minimum limit by which a person becomes deviated?”

Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) said, “Since you have asked, understand the answer. As for the minimum limit by which a person becomes a believer is that when Allah – Blessed and High be He – introduces Himself, he accepts Him through obedience, when He introduces His Prophet (s.a.w.a.), he accepts him through obedience and when He introduces His Imam, His Proof upon His earth and His witness upon His creatures, he should accept him through obedience.”

I asked, “O Ameeral Momineen! Even if he is ignorant about everything except that what you have described?”

He (a.s.) replied:

Yes. When he is ordered, he should obey and when he is restrained, he must keep away.

As for the minimum limit by which a person becomes a disbeliever is the one who thinks that a thing which Allah has prohibited, Allah has ordered it, he makes a religion upon which he prevails and he thinks that he is worshipping the one who has ordered him to do so while (in reality), he is worshipping the Satan.

## Note:

In every era, falsehood manifests itself in a very systematic manner. It does not come naked and say I am falsehood so beware of me. Thus, in every era, falsehood is camouflaged and presents itself as truth. Even in the time of Sulaim it was difficult to decipher despite the presence of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) himself.

In the above tradition, Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) has used the 59th verse of Surah Nisaa as an evidence for Imamate. The opponents interpret Ulil Amr as rulers even if he is a transgressor and sinner and consider him as the application of this verse, due to which his obedience becomes absolute like that of Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.). When an ordinary person will not contradict his statement, then how will Allah do it?

For example, Allah the High says in the Holy Quran, “**O you who believe! Fasting has been made obligatory upon you**”. But the ruler of Tunisia, Habib Burqiba, prohibited fasting for government servants on duty. So, we should obey Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.) or Habib Burqiba?

With the exception of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and Ameerul Momineen (a.s.), all rulers throughout history who formed an apparent Islamic government, made laws in violation of the Shariah and were themselves non-infallible, rather transgressors. How can one obey Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.) and the transgressor ruler at the same time? Such a stark contrast is against intellect as well as Shariah. Therefore, those in authority are in reality only those who don’t pass any judgment except in conformity with the judgment of Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.). So, if we believe that the Ulil Amr are other than the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.), contradiction is bound to occur. While, in the Holy Quran, contradiction is impossible. Hence, the problem lies with the interpretation of the opponents, which is wrong and erroneous.

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 414, H. 1

Kitaab-o-Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Hilaali (r.a.), p. 616, 8th Hadees

# Not Knowing the Imam of our time is Paganism

عَنِ الرِّضَاؑ عَنْ آبَائِهِ عَنْ عَلِيٍّؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ مَنْ مَاتَ وَ لَيْسَ لَهُ اِمَامٌ مِنْ وُلْدِي مَاتَ مِيتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً وَ يُؤْخَذُ بِمَا عَمِلَ فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ وَ الْاِسْلَامِ

Imam Reza (a.s.) narrates from his ancestors from Ali (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.aw.a.) said,

“Whoever dies without knowing his Imam from my progeny, dies the death of paganism. He will be punished for what he did in the jaahiliyyah and Islam.”

## Note:

That is, whoever dies without recognizing the Imam of his time, will be raised as a disbeliever in Barzakh as well as the Hereafter. The word ‘my progeny’ indicates that the Imams (a.s.) are appointed by Allah and it is not for the people to select them.

This person was an infidel during the jaahiliyyah. Later, he accepted Islam apparently. Tradition says that

عَنِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ اَنَّهُ قَالَ الْاِسْلَامُ يَجُبُّ مَا قَبْلَهُ

“(Acceptance of) Islam severs the actions (of disbelief) before it.”

He will not be punished for it. But when a person accepts Islam apparently, i.e. he did not believe in Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and Imams (a.s.), he is an infidel and will die as one. So, his actions during paganism as well as in Islam will not have any significance and he will be punished for the same in the Hereafter.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 81, H. 18

Oyoon-o-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 2, p. 58, H. 214, Chapter 31

# Aim of Creation – Recognition of Imam (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ خَرَجَ الْحُسَيْنُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّؑ عَلٰى اَصْحَابِهِ فَقَالَ اَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اِنَّ اللَّهَ جَلَّ ذِكْرُهُ مَا خَلَقَ الْعِبَادَ اِلَّا لِيَعْرِفُوهُ فَاِذَا عَرَفُوهُ عَبَدُوهُ فَاِذَا عَبَدُوهُ اسْتَغْنَوْا بِعِبَادَتِهِ عَنْ عِبَادَةِ مَا سِوَاهُ فَقَالَ لَهُ رَجُلٌ يَا ابْنَ رَسُولِ اللهِ بِاَبِي اَنْتَ وَ أُمِّي فَمَا مَعْرِفَةُ اللهِ قَالَ مَعْرِفَةُ اَهْلِ كُلِّ زَمَانٍ اِمَامَهُمُ الَّذِي يَجِبُ عَلَيْهِمْ طَاعَتُهُ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) informs,

“Imam Husain Ibn Ali (a.s.) came out to his companions, ‘O People! Surely Allah – Majestic is His remembrance – did not create the servants but that they recognize Him. When they recognize Him, they will worship Him. When they will worship Him, they will become needless of the worship of other than Him.’ A man asked him, ‘O son of Allah’s Messenger! May my parents be held your ransom! What is the recognition of Allah?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘The recognition by the people of every era of their Imam, whose obedience is obligatory upon them’.”

## Note:

Once, a person has the true recognition of Allah, he will not worship anyone else. When you recognize the Imams from the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.), the Imam (a.s.) will teach you Allah’s recognition. Divine recognition is impossible without Imams’ teachings. Refer to the teachings and poems of the philosophers and the mystics, see how they have introduced Allah to the people. Compare these with the teachings of the infallible Imams (a.s.). You will immediately realize the difference between the two. Hence, we see the sentences in the traditions, عَنْ بُرَيْدٍ الْعِجْلِيِّ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍؑ يَقُولُ بِنَا عُبِدَ اللهُ وَ بِنَا عُرِفَ اللهُ وَ بِنَا وُحِّدَ اللهُ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى Imam Baqer (a.s.) says, “*Through us, Allah is worshipped and through us Allah – Blessed and High be He – is declared as One.*” (Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 145, H. 10).

The philosophers and mystics have themselves not recognized Allah, then how can they impart true recognition to the people? Hence, it is said in Arabic,فاقد الشيء لا يعطي “One who is devoid of a thing cannot grant it to others.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 83, H. 22

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 9, H. 1, Chapter 9

# Testimony of Tauheed not acceptable without belief in Imamat of Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي سَعِيدٍ الْخُدْرِيِّ قَالَ كَانَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ جَالِساً وَ عِنْدَهُ نَفَرٌ مِنْ اَصْحَابِهِ فِيهِمْ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ اِذْ قَالَ مَنْ قَالَ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ دَخَلَ الْجَنَّةَ فَقَالَ رَجُلَانِ مِنْ اَصْحَابِهِ فَنَحْنُ نَقُولُ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ فَقَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اِنَّمَا تُقْبَلُ شَهَادَةُ اَنْ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مِنْ هَذَا وَ مِنْ شِيعَتِهِ الَّذِينَ اَخَذَ رَبُّنَا مِيثَاقَهُمْ فَقَالَ الرَّجُلَانِ فَنَحْنُ نَقُولُ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهِ فَوَضَعَ رَسُولُ اللهِ يَدَهُ عَلٰى رَاْسِ عَلِيٍّؑ ثُمَّ قَالَ عَلَامَةُ ذٰلِكَ اَنْ لَا تُحِلَّا عَقْدَهُ وَ لَا تَجْلِسَا مَجْلِسَهُ وَ لَا تُكَذِّبَا حَدِيثَهُ

Abu Saeed al-Khudri narrates, “One day, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) was sitting and with him were a few of his companions, among them was Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.). He (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘*Whoever says there is no god but Allah will enter Paradise’.* Two of his companions (apparently referring to the first and the second rulers) said, ‘We proclaim that there is no god but Allah’. At this, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) remarked, ‘*The testimony of there is no god but Allah will ONLY be accepted from him and his Shiites those whose covenant Allah has taken (in Aalam-e-Zarr).’* The two said, ‘But we believe that there is no god but Allah’. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) placed his hand on the head of Ali (a.s.) and said, ‘*The sign of this is that both of you don’t untie his knot (of allegiance), don’t sit in his place (of caliphate) and don’t deny his word.*”

## Note:

Abu Saeed al-Khudri is from the tribe of Khudrah, an Arabian tribe. He was a venerable companion and Imam Husain (a.s.) has remembered him on the Day of Aashuraa.

Generally, in traditions, when name is not taken in the negative connotation, it is due to the fear for the life of the narrator because this person (the one who is not named) is highly respected by some and hence, will lead to some problems for the narrator. His followers will try to take revenge from the narrator. Hence, here the two refers to the first and the second rulers.

Untying the knot of allegiance which was taken in Ghadeer and other occasions. Don’t usurp his position of caliphate and don’t deny his sayings. But they did all that was prohibited and even worse.

Question: This tradition proves the Imamate of Ali (a.s.) but how does it prove the Imamate of the other Imams (a.s.)?

Answer: Divine texts amply testify that whatever is applicable for Ali (a.s.) is also relevant for the remaining Imams (a.s.) from his progeny like obligatory obedience, knowledge of the unseen, divine appointment, etc. اَوَّلُنَا مُحَمَّدٌ وَ اَوْسَطُنَا مُحَمَّدٌ وَ آخِرُنَا مُحَمَّدٌ وَ كُلُّنَا مُحَمَّدٌ (Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 16, H. 2). All of them are one light.

Apparently, every criminal is a Muslim. Does it make him eligible for paradise? This tahleel (saying there is no god but Allah) is not sufficient for a person to go to Paradise. Umar killed a person for drinking wine. Obviously, that person was a Muslim and eligible for Paradise. So why did Umar kill him while he was a man for paradise? Thus, merely this statement for a person to go to Paradise.

Imam Reza (a.s.) during his journey to Neshaapoor recited the famous narration of the golden chain (السلسلة الذهبية) in front of a huge gathering of Sunni scholars. He (a.s.) clarified that there are conditions for it and that he (a.s.) is one of the conditions. That is, Imamate is one of the conditions for a person to enter Paradise. No learned person – regardless of his sect – will ever accept that a person like Saddam (may Allah curse him) will go to Paradise just because he has uttered that there is no god but Allah. Saddam himself will not accept such a logic otherwise he would not have killed so many of his rivals like Ahmad Hasan al-Bakr or waged a war against Iran as all of them were reciters of the kalemah.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 84, H. 25

Sawaab al-A’maal of Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 7

# Whoever forsakes the Imam of his time will be destroyed

عَنْ اَبِي الْمَغْرَاءِ عَنْ اَبِي ذَرِيحٍ عَنْ اَبِي حَمْزَةَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ مِنَّا الْاِمَامُ الْمَفْرُوضُ طَاعَتُهُ مَنْ جَحَدَهُ مَاتَ يَهُودِيّاً اَوْ نَصْرَانِيّاً وَ اللهِ مَا تَرَكَ اللهُ الْاَرْضَ مُنْذُ قَبَضَ اللهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ آدَمَ اِلَّا وَ فِيهَا اِمَامٌ يُهْتَدَى بِهِ اِلَى اللهِ حُجَّةً عَلَى الْعِبَادِ وَ مَنْ تَرَكَهُ هَلَكَ وَ مَنْ لَزِمَهُ نَجَا حَقّاً عَلَى اللهِ

Abu Hamza al-Thumali (r.a.) reports from Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.), “From us is the Imam whose obedience is obligatory. Whoever denies him will die as a Jew or a Christian. By Allah! Allah has not left the earth since Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – caused Adam (a.s.) to die except that in it is an Imam through whom people are guided towards Allah as a Proof upon the servants. Whoever abandons him will be destroyed and whoever fastens unto him will be saved. This is binding upon Allah.”

## Note:

Here, there is one important point. One person is like another. Why should one person obey another? There should definitely be something in the obeyed one which the obeying one does not have. For example, when you have a toothache you go to a dentist. He tells you to open your mouth, you do. Whatever he orders you oblige. Why? He is a specialist in that field. Likewise, in religion, there should be someone who has knowledge from Allah so that his obedience is compulsory. When Allah appoints someone, He orders for his complete and absolute obedience. This appointment should be from the side of Allah. Just as in the case of the dentist, if he does not have a certificate and degree from the Medical Council, how can he practice his trade and why will anyone go to him? Whoever disobeys this divine appointee will die the death of a Jew or a Christian. Here, Jew or Christian are merely examples. It means that he dies the death of an infidel. جحود means to deny after knowing.

Another example: Government builds roads and highways between cities. It also makes some rules and regulations so that there is road discipline and speed on these roads. Whoever follows these rules and discipline will be saved. If somebody does not follow these rules, he will meet with an accident and perish. Both these consequences are logical and rational. Ships and birds also have paths charted out in oceans and air. They don’t sail or fly as they please. If they don’t follow the charted route, they will run into problems.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 85, H. 27

al-Mahaasen, vol. 1, p. 92, H. 45

Sawaab al-A’maal, p. 205

# Worship without recognition of Imam (a.s.) is in vain

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍؑ يَقُولُ اِنَّ مَنْ دَانَ اللَّهَ بِعِبَادَةٍ يُجْهِدُ فِيهَا نَفْسَهُ بِلَا اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ مِنَ اللهِ فَاِنَّ سَعْيَهُ غَيْرُ مَقْبُولٍ وَ هُوَ ضَالٌّ مُتَحَيِّرٌ وَ مَثَلُهُ كَمَثَلِ شَاةٍ ضَلَّتْ عَنْ رَاعِيهَا وَ قَطِيعِهَا فَتَاهَتْ ذَاهِبَةً وَ جَائِيَةً يَوْمَهَا فَلَمَّا اَنْ جَنَّهَا اللَّيْلُ بَصُرَتْ بِقَطِيعِ غَنَمٍ مَعَ رَاعِيهَا فَجَاءَتْ اِلَيْهَا فَبَاتَتْ مَعَهَا فِي رَبَضِهَا فَلَمَّا اَنْ سَاقَ الرَّاعِي قَطِيعَهُ اَنْكَرَتْ رَاعِيَهَا وَ قَطِيعَهَا فَهَجَمَتْ مُتَحَيِّرَةً تَطْلُبُ رَاعِيَهَا وَ قَطِيعَهَا فَبَصُرَتْ بِسَرْحِ قَطِيعِ غَنَمٍ آخَرَ فَعَمَدَتْ نَحْوَهَا وَ حَنَّتْ اِلَيْهَا فَصَاحَ بِهَا الرَّاعِي الْحَقِي بِقَطِيعِكِ فَاِنَّكِ تَائِهَةٌ مُتَحَيِّرَةٌ قَدْ ضَلَلْتِ عَنْ رَاعِيكِ وَ قَطِيعِكِ فَهَجَمَتْ ذَعِرَةً مُتَحَيِّرَةً لَا رَاعِيَ لَهَا يُرْشِدُهَا اِلَى مَرْعَاهَا اَوْ يَرُدَّهَا فَبَيْنَا هِيَ كَذٰلِكَ اِذَا اغْتَنَمَ الذِّئْبُ ضَيْعَتَهَا فَاَكَلَهَا وَ هَكَذَا يَا مُحَمَّدَ بْنَ مُسْلِمٍ مَنْ اَصْبَحَ مِنْ هَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ لَا اِمَامَ لَهُ مِنَ اللهِ عَادِلٌ اَصْبَحَ تَائِهاً مُتَحَيِّراً اِنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حَالِهِ تِلْكَ مَاتَ مِيتَةَ كُفْرٍ وَ نِفَاقٍ وَ اعْلَمْ يَا مُحَمَّدُ اَنَّ اَئِمَّةَ الْحَقِّ وَ اَتْبَاعَهُمْ عَلٰى دِينِ اللهِ اِلَى آخِرِهِ

Muhammad Ibn Muslim (r.a.) reports, “I heard Imam Abu Ja’far al-Baqer (a.s.) say, ‘Surely, the one who believes in Allah with a worship in which he exerts himself but without a just Imam from Allah, then his efforts will not be accepted and he is deviated and confused. His example is like that of a sheep which has separated from its shepherd and its flock. Whole day it keeps wandering, coming and going, lost. When night descends, it sees a flock with its shepherd, comes to it and spends the night with it in its pen. When the shepherd drives its flock, it does not recognize its shepherd and its flock and hence, flees in confusion and seeking its shepherd and its flock. On departing, it sees another flock of cattle. It intends to go towards it and is about to reach it when its shepherd cries, ‘Go towards your flock. You are lost and confused. You are deviated from your shepherd and your flock’. So, it flees in panic and confused. It does not have any shepherd to guide it towards its pasture or return it. In the meantime, a wolf seizes this opportunity, kills it and devours it. O Muhammad! This is exactly the case of the one from this nation who does not have a just Imam from Allah. He gets up in the morning, all lost and confused. If he dies in this condition, dies the death of disbelief and hypocrisy. Know, O Muhammad, the Imams of truth and their followers are upon the religion of Allah till its end.”

## Note:

The first phrase, ‘who believes in Allah’ means that he believes but not the religion sent by Allah. He exerts himself implies that like the Kharjiites he worships a lot but since his worship is not in the right direction, it is not only not beneficial for him but even harmful.

Look at the youth who don’t believe in Islam and religion. They spend their lives in wasteful things and finally, when their death comes near, they realize that they have lost everything.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 86, H. 29

al-Mahaasen, vol. 1, p. 92, H. 47

al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 374, H.2

# Imam (a.s.) is standard between Allah and creatures

مَرْوَانَ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ الْاِمَامُ عَلَمٌ بَيْنَ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ بَيْنَ خَلْقِهِ فَمَنْ عَرَفَهُ كَانَ مُؤْمِناً وَ مَنْ اَنْكَرَهُ كَانَ كَافِراً

Marwan Ibn Muslim narrates from Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.), “An Imam is a standard between Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – and His creatures. Whoever recognizes him is a believer and whoever denies him is a disbeliever.”

## Note:

Allah has created man and made a religion for him. But without a divine Imam, this religion cannot be followed. Just as one cannot get proper treatment without a proper doctor and a house cannot be built without a proper engineer. One who recognizes him is a believer is quite logical because a person who is a patient, if he does not go to a qualified doctor, his sickness will become worse. If he goes to a qualified doctor, he will get proper treatment and will be cured of his illness. The same applies for the role of engineers and architects in building of houses.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 88, H. 32

Kamaal al-Deen

# Denier of Imam (a.s.) is an Apostate

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ قُلْتُ لَهُ اَ رَاَيْتَ مَنْ جَحَدَ اِمَاماً مِنْكُمْ مَا حَالُهُ قَالَ مَنْ جَحَدَ اِمَاماً مِنَ اللهِ وَ بَرِءَ مِنْهُ وَ مِنْ دِينِهِ فَهُوَ كَافِرٌ مُرْتَدٌّ عَنِ الْاِسْلَامِ لِاَنَّ الْاِمَامَ مِنَ اللهِ وَ دِينَهُ دِينُ اللهِ وَ مَنْ بَرِئَ مِنْ دِينِ اللهِ فَدَمُهُ مُبَاحٌ فِي تِلْكَ الْحَالِ اِلَّا اَنْ يَرْجِعَ اَوْ يَتُوبَ اِلَى اللهِ مِمَّا قَالَ

Muhammad Ibn Muslim reports that he asked Imam Abu Jafar al-Baqer (a.s.), “Do you think that anyone who denies an Imam from you, what’s his condition?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘*Whoever denies an Imam from Allah and distances himself from him and his religion is a disbeliever and an apostate from Islam. For, an Imam is from Allah and his religion is Allah’s religion. Thus, whoever distances from Allah’s religion, his blood is permissible in this condition except that he returns or repents to Allah from whatever he has said.*”

## Note:

One who denies the Imam due to some worldly attractions is a disbeliever and an apostate. This is because he has denied Allah and his religion because an Imam is from Him.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 89, H. 34

al-Ghaibah of al-Nomani, p. 129, H. 3, Chapter 7

# Living or Dead – Imams (a.s.) are the same

عَنِ ابْنِ مُسْكَانَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ مَنْ اَنْكَرَ وَاحِداً مِنَ الْاَحْيَاءِ فَقَدْ اَنْكَرَ الْاَمْوَاتَ

Abdullah Ibn Muskaan narrates from Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.), “Whoever denies anyone of the living ones then indeed he has denied the dead ones.”

## Note:

Thus, anyone who denies a living Imam has denied the past Imams (a.s.). When Imam Reza (a.s.) was brought from Madinah to Marv by Mamoon al-Abbasi the accursed, among the incidents that occurred was that Mamoon invited the scholars of different religions from different parts of the world so that they may debate with Imam (a.s.). He wanted them to defeat Imam (a.s.) so that he could prove that Imam (a.s.) was not a divine appointee and an ordinary person.

In one of these debates, a Christian monk asked Imam (a.s.),

قَالَ الْجَاثَلِيقُ مَا تَقُولُ فِي نُبُوَّةِ عِيسَى وَ كِتَابِهِ هَلْ تُنْكِرُ مِنْهُمَا شَيْئاً قَالَ الرِّضَاؑ اَنَا مُقِرٌّ بِنُبُوَّةِ عِيسَى وَ كِتَابِهِ وَ مَا بَشَّرَ بِهِ أُمَّتَهُ وَ اَقَرَّتْ بِهِ الْحَوَارِيُّونَ وَ كَافِرٌ بِنُبُوَّةِ كُلِّ عِيسًى لَمْ يُقِرَّ بِنُبُوَّةِ مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ وَ بِكِتَابِهِ وَ لَمْ يُبَشِّرْ بِهِ أُمَّتَه‏

(Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 10, p. 301)

‘Do you believe in Eesa (a.s.)?’ The purpose of his question was that if Imam (a.s.) replies positively, then he would say that ok, you believe in Eesa but we don’t believe in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). So, there is consensus about Eesa but not for Muhammad. Imam (a.s.) replied, ‘*I believe in Eesa who gave glad tidings about Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).*’

That is, I believe in the religion of Eesa completely without any deficiency i.e. the one that includes the prophecy about Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Similarly, one who believes in Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) has to believe in Imam Reza (a.s.) and all Imams (a.s.). One cannot say that I believe in all Imams (a.s.) except Imam Muntazar (a.t.f.s.).

Obviously, in the above tradition, the usage of the word living and dead is metaphorical because Imams (a.s.) even in their death are living.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 95, H. 1

al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 373, H. 8

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 14 and vol. 2, p. 410, H. 1

# Denier of Imam (a.s.) is not a Believer

عَنْ اَبَانِ بْنِ تَغْلِبَ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ مَنْ عَرَفَ الْاَئِمَّةَ وَ لَمْ يَعْرِفِ الْاِمَامَ الَّذِي فِي زَمَانِهِ اَ مُؤْمِنٌ هُوَ قَالَ لَا قُلْتُ اَ مُسْلِمٌ هُوَ قَالَ نَعَمْ

Abaan Ibn Taghlib (who was an extremely respected companion) chronicles, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.), ‘Whoever recognizes the Imams (a.s.) but did not recognize the Imam who is in his time, is he a believer?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘*No*’. I inquired, ‘Is he a Muslim?’ He (a.s.) answered, ‘*Yes*.’

## Note:

Here, the word ‘Muslim’ is used in its second sense as in Surah Hujuraat (49): Verse 14 قالَتِ الْاَعْرابُ آمَنَّا قُلْ لَمْ تُؤْمِنُوا وَ لكِنْ قُولُوا اَسْلَمْنا وَ لَمَّا يَدْخُلِ الْإيمانُ في‏ قُلُوبِكُمْ and not in its first sense i.e. that is, the one who has really brought Islam and believed in.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 96, H. 2

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 2, p. 410, H. 3

# Denier of Imams (a.s.) is denier of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

الرِّضَا عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنْتَ وَ الْاَئِمَّةُ مِنْ وُلْدِكَ بَعْدِي حُجَجُ اللهِ عَلٰى خَلْقِهِ وَ اَعْلَامُهُ فِي بَرِيَّتِهِ فَمَنْ اَنْكَرَ وَاحِداً مِنْهُمْ فَقَدْ اَنْكَرَنِي وَ مَنْ عَصَا وَاحِداً مِنْهُمْ فَقَدْ عَصَانِي وَ مَنْ جَفَا وَاحِداً مِنْهُمْ فَقَدْ جَفَانِي وَ مَنْ وَصَلَكُمْ فَقَدْ وَصَلَنِي وَ مَنْ اَطَاعَكُمْ فَقَدْ اَطَاعَنِي وَ مَنْ وَالَاكُمْ فَقَدْ وَالَانِي وَ مَنْ عَادَاكُمْ فَقَدْ عَادَانِي لِاَنَّكُمْ مِنِّي خُلِقْتُمْ مِنْ طِينَتِي وَ اَنَا مِنْكُمْ

Imam Reza (a.s.) vide his ancestors (a.s.) narrates from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) who said, “O Ali! You and the Imams (a.s.) from your progeny after me are Allah’s proofs upon His creatures and His standards among His creatures. So, whoever denies any one of you (as in Kamaal al-Deen), then indeed he has denied me. Whoever disobeys any one of you has indeed disobeyed me. Whoever is disloyal to any one of you is disloyal to me. Whoever has joined relations with you has joined relations with me. Whoever obeys you has obeyed me. Whoever accepts your mastership has accepted my mastership. Whoever bears enmity against you has borne enmity against me because you are from me, you are created from my soil and I am from you.”

## Note:

A’laam is the plural of alam, which means a standard and a mountain. It implies something which is clear, apparent and can be seen by everybody.

So, anybody who denies even one Imam (a.s.) is like the one who has denied all of them (a.s.). If a person denies the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) in entirety, is he different from the one who denies only some of his statements?

We have said earlier that all of them are Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), are from the same light, etc.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 97, H. 4

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 2, p. 413, H. 13

# Terms for Intercession (Shafa’at)

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ تَمَامٍ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّ فُلَاناً مَوْلَاكَ يُقْرِئُكَ السَّلَامَ وَ يَقُولُ لَكَ اضْمَنْ لِيَ الشَّفَاعَةَ فَقَالَ اَ مِنْ مَوَالِينَا قُلْتُ نَعَمْ قَالَ اَمْرُهُ اَرْفَعُ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ قَالَ قُلْتُ اِنَّهُ رَجُلٌ يُوَالِي عَلِيّاً وَ لَمْ يَعْرِفْ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ مِنَ الْاَوْصِيَاءِ قَالَ ضَالٌّ قُلْتُ فَاَقَرَّ بِالْاَئِمَّةِ جَمِيعاً وَ جَحَدَ الْآخِرَ قَالَ هُوَ كَمَنْ اَقَرَّ بِعِيسَى وَ جَحَدَ بِمُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ اَوْ اَقَرَّ بِمُحَمَّدٍ وَ جَحَدَ بِعِيسَىؑ نَعُوذُ بِاللهِ مِنْ جَحْدِ حُجَّةٍ مِنْ حُجَجِهِ

Muhammad Ibn Tamaam reports, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.), ‘So and so has accepted your mastership and conveys salutation to you and says to you, ‘Guarantee intercession for me.’ He (a.s.) asked, ‘*Is* *he from those who have accepted our mastership?*’ I replied in the affirmative. He (a.s.) said, ‘*His matter is higher than that.*’ I said, ‘He is a man who has accepted the mastership of Ali but does not know the successors after him.’ (i.e. he does not acknowledge the other Imams (a.s.)). He (a.s.) retorted, ‘*He is deviated.*’ I inquired, ‘What about the one who acknowledges all the Imams but denies one of them?’ He (a.s.) answered, ‘*He is like the one who acknowledges Eesa (a.s.) but denies Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) or acknowledges Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) but denies Eesa (a.s.). We seek refuge in Allah from the denial of a proof from his proofs (a.s.).*”

## Note:

His affair is higher than that implies that if he has truly accepted our mastership, he is not in need of intercession.

Question: Why Imam (a.s.) asked whether he has accepted our mastership? Was he not aware of the unseen?

Answer:

Allah asks in the Holy Quran, ‘What is in your right hand, O Moosa?’ He said, ‘It is my staff.’ Was Allah not having knowledge of the unseen that it is staff? Often, a person knows something but for a specific purpose and aim, raises a question so that the point becomes clear for everyone.

The knowers of the unseen are not ordered to use their knowledge of the unseen except rarely. Those who possess the power to perform miracles don’t always perform them except when required.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 97, H. 5

al-Ghaibah of al-No’mani, p. 112, H. 4, Chapter 5

# Test of the People is Massive

عَنِ الْمُفَضَّلِ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ بَلِيَّةُ النَّاسِ عَظِيمَةٌ اِنْ دَعَوْنَاهُمْ لَمْ يُجِيبُونَا وَ اِنْ تَرَكْنَاهُمْ لَمْ يَهْتَدُوا بِغَيْرِنَا

Mufazzal says that Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“The calamity or test of the people is massive. If we call them, they don’t respond and if we leave them, they will not be guided with other than us.”

## Note:

If the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) does not guide the people, Abu Jahl will guide them?

If Ali (a.s.) does not guide the people, who will guide them?

If Hasan (a.s.) does not guide the people, Moaviyah will guide them?

If Husain (a.s.) does not guide the people, Yazeed will guide them?

Even today, if the just jurists will not guide the people, will the unjust ones guide them?

The riders of the world are many but the takers of religion are very few. After the martyrdom of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), barely a few people were with Ameerul Momineen (a.s.). But when he (a.s.) got the apparent caliphate, he (a.s.) had thousands of soldiers in the Battle of Siffeen. Thus, this tradition wants to see that just follow the Imam (a.s.), regardless of him having the world or not.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 99, H. 1

باب 6- أن الناس لا يهتدون إلا بهم و أنهم الوسائل بين الخلق و بين الله و أنه لا يدخل الجنة إلا من عرفهم

al-Faqeeh, vol. 4, p. 405, H. 5875

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 609, 7th Majlis, H. 4

# Religion should be based on the Holy Quran and Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ مُحَمَّدٍ الْحَلَبِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ لِي اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّهُ مَنْ عَرَفَ دِينَهُ مِنْ كِتَابِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ زَالَتِ الْجِبَالُ قَبْلَ اَنْ يَزُولَ وَ مَنْ دَخَلَ فِي اَمْرٍ بِجَهْلٍ خَرَجَ مِنْهُ بِجَهْلٍ قُلْتُ وَ مَا هُوَ فِي كِتَابِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ قَالَ قَوْلُ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ ما آتاكُمُ الرَّسُولُ فَخُذُوهُ وَ ما نَهاكُمْ عَنْهُ فَانْتَهُوا وَ قَوْلُهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ مَنْ يُطِعِ الرَّسُولَ فَقَدْ اَطاعَ اللَّهَ وَ قَوْلُهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يا اَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَ اَطِيعُوا الرَّسُولَ وَ أُولِي الْاَمْرِ مِنْكُمْ وَ قَوْلُهُ تَبَارَكَ اسْمُهُ اِنَّما وَلِيُّكُمُ اللهُ وَ رَسُولُهُ وَ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا الَّذِينَ يُقِيمُونَ الصَّلاةَ وَ يُؤْتُونَ الزَّكاةَ وَ هُمْ راكِعُونَ وَ قَوْلُهُ جَلَّ جَلَالُهُ فَلا وَ رَبِّكَ لا يُؤْمِنُونَ حَتَّى يُحَكِّمُوكَ فِيما شَجَرَ بَيْنَهُمْ ثُمَّ لا يَجِدُوا فِي اَنْفُسِهِمْ حَرَجاً مِمَّا قَضَيْتَ وَ يُسَلِّمُوا تَسْلِيماً وَ قَوْلُهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يا اَيُّهَا الرَّسُولُ بَلِّغْ ما أُنْزِلَ اِلَيْكَ مِنْ رَبِّكَ وَ اِنْ لَمْ تَفْعَلْ فَما بَلَّغْتَ رِسالَتَهُ وَ اللهُ يَعْصِمُكَ مِنَ النَّاسِ وَ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ قَوْلُ رَسُولِ اللهِ لِعَلِيٍّؑ مَنْ كُنْتُ مَوْلَاهُ فَعَلِيٌّ مَوْلَاهُ اللَّهُمَّ وَالِ مَنْ وَالَاهُ وَ عَادِ مَنْ عَادَاهُ وَ انْصُرْ مَنْ نَصَرَهُ وَ اخْذُلْ مَنْ خَذَلَهُ وَ اَحِبَّ مَنْ اَحَبَّهُ وَ اَبْغِضْ مَنْ اَبْغَضَه‏

Muhammad al-Halabi (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) told me, “Surely, the one who knows his religion from the Book of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He, the mountains will move before he moves. But whoever enters an affair with ignorance, will come out of it with ignorance.” I asked, “And where is this (point) in the Book of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He?” He (a.s.) replied, “The word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**Whatever the Messenger gives you, take it and from whatever he prohibits, abstain from it**’ and His word – Mighty and Majestic be He, ‘**Whoever obeys the Messenger then indeed he has obeyed Allah**’ and His word – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**O you who believe! Obey Allah, obey His Messenger and obey those possessing authority among you**’ and His word – Blessed be His Name – ‘**Your Master are only Allah, His Messenger and those who believe, establish the prayers and give charity during genuflection**’ and His word – Mighty is His Majesty – ‘**By your Lord, they will not believe till they appoint you as a judge in their disputes and then they don’t find any hesitation in their hearts for what you judge and submit with a total submission’** andHis word– Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**O Messenger! Convey what has been revealed to you from your Lord. And if you don’t do it, then as if you have not conveyed the message at all. And Allah will protect you from the people’**. From this is the saying of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) to Ali (a.s.), ‘Of whosoever I am his master, this Ali is his master too. O Allah! You take him as a slave who takes him as his master, bear enmity against the one who bears enmity against him, help him who helps him (Ali) and forsake him who forsakes him, love him who loves him and hate him who hates him.”

## Note:

In Aleppo (Halab), Syria, great scholars were found. Some of them were in the era of the infallible Imams (a.s.) and the other group was after their (a.s.) period. The narrator of this tradition was from the former group.

When you learn your religion from the Holy Quran, your religion will be with knowledge and strong. He is taking the religion from its pure source viz. the two heavy things.

Mountains don’t move easily. They are a symbol of firmness, strength and steadfastness. When one’s faith is taken from the Holy Quran and the holy Ahle Bait (a.s.), then the mountains can move but not the faith of this believer. Hujr Ibn Adi (r.a.) and his friends (r.a.) faced terrible torture from Moaviyah but they didn’t budge from their faith.

Then Imam (a.s.) proceeds to cite evidences of mastership from the Holy Quran. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) has ordered for the mastership of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.). One should believe from the heart, not only apparently. If somebody does not believe from the heart, he is not a believer (as per the verse of Surah Nisaa).

**Objection**: Is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) mustajaab al-da’wah (i.e. one whose supplication is accepted) or not?

**Answer**: It’s clear that he (s.a.w.a.) is so.

**Objection**: They object then this tradition is incorrect because many people abandoned him. But they were not abandoned.

**Answers**: There are two answers for this:

The Holy Quran says, “قالَ قَدْ أُجيبَتْ دَعْوَتُكُما فَاسْتَقيما وَ لا تَتَّبِعانِ سَبيلَ الَّذينَ لا يَعْلَمُونَ” “He (Allah) said: Indeed, the supplication of you two has been accepted, so be firm and don’t follow the path of those who don’t know.” (Surah Yunus (10): Verse 89). But in the traditions, it has come that their supplication was accepted after forty years.

ابْنُ اَبِي عُمَيْرٍ عَنْ هِشَامِ بْنِ سَالِمٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ كَانَ بَيْنَ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ قَدْ أُجِيبَتْ دَعْوَتُكُما وَ بَيْنَ اَخْذِ فِرْعَوْنَ اَرْبَعِينَ عَاماً

(Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 489, H. 5). Is this verse fabricated?

2) Are materialistic matters more important than spiritual ones? Who is more successful; the one who eats well but does not pray or the one who eats simple bread but prays? A true believer, inwardly and outwardly, but poor is better than a rich but irreligious man. Is it not so? Who is the loser? Similarly, the Muslims were abandoned in spiritual matters and those of knowledge. If material belongings were so important, Allah would have given his most beloved creature (s.a.w.a.) all material pleasures.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 102, H. 11

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) Le Shiah al-Murataza (a.s.) by Emaaduddin Tabari (r.a.) [a 6th century scholar] p. 129)

# Best is he who treats the Ahle Bait (a.s.) well

عَنْ اَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ خَيْرُكُمْ خَيْرُكُمْ لِاَهْلِي مِنْ بَعْدِي

Abu Hurairah (l.a.) reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“The best of you is the one who is the best of you in his dealings with my family after me.”

## Note:

It is said that والفضل ما شهدت به الاعداء (Excellence is when your enemy praises you). Thus, the standard and criterion of goodness and evil is his behavior towards the Ahle Bait (a.s.). If his behavior is positive, he is good; God forbid, if it is otherwise, then he is evil. And in both sides, good as well as evil, there are levels. ‘*After me*’ implies after the martyrdom of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) till the Day of Judgment.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 104, H. 1

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) Le Shiah al-Murtaza (a.s.) by Emaaduddin Tabari (r.a.) [a 6th century scholar] p. 39)

# No Worship without Mastership

الْحَسَنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّؑ قَالَ اِنَّ اللهَ افْتَرَضَ خَمْساً وَ لَمْ يَفْتَرِضْ اِلَّا حَسَناً جَمِيلًا الصَّلَاةَ وَ الزَّكَاةَ وَ الْحَجَّ وَ الصِّيَامَ وَ وَلَايَتَنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ فَعَمِلَ النَّاسُ بِاَرْبَعٍ وَ اسْتَخَفُّوا بِالْخَامِسَةِ وَ اللّهِ لَا يَسْتَكْمِلُوا الْاَرْبَعَةَ حَتَّى يَسْتَكْمِلُوهَا بِالْخَامِسَةِ

Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) says,

“Surely, Allah has made obligatory five things and He has not made obligatory except good and beautiful things. Prayers, poor-rate, Hajj, fasting and the mastership of us Ahle Bait (a.s.). The people acted on four but took the fifth lightly. By Allah! The (first) four will not be completed till they complete them by the fifth.”

## Note:

Allah is the All-Knowing Who knows what is good and what is bad for His creatures. He is also the Wise and Just Who puts everything in its place. If something is not fruitful for man, He will not make it obligatory. If something is not harmful, He will not prohibit it. He is not unjust to anyone even for an atom-weight. He is Needless and Self-sufficient. Therefore, when He orders His servants to establish prayers, He knows that prayers are good and beautiful for His servants. He is not in need of prayers that He ordered them for His benefit. He does not intend to trouble His servants because He is not unjust. Thus, everything that He makes obligatory is good and beautiful. When the goodness and beauty of a thing is intense, Allah makes it obligatory. When it is not so intense, He makes it recommended. For an obligatory act, there are levels and the same applies for recommended actions as well. When an action is neither good nor bad, neither beautiful nor ugly, He simply makes it permissible for the servants. When an act is ugly and bad but not extreme in its intensity, He makes it abominable and when it is extremely intense in its ugliness and evil, He makes it prohibited.

Why Khums is not mentioned in the above tradition? The reason is that Khums is an off-shoot of Zakaat. Just as he has not mentioned Umrah because Umrah is a supplementary for Hajj.

The fifth is the mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). It is necessary that people should accept their mastership; they cannot afford to disobey or defy them or bear enmity against them. But the people did not pay heed to it. Although, the four without the fifth are incomplete. In other words, Allah will not accept these four without the fifth.

Is prayer more important or mastership of Ahle Bait (a.s.)?

No doubt, mastership is more important because without it prayers will not be accepted. The same applies for the other acts of worship. Moreover, it is the Imam (a.s.) who guides the people to the more correct way of performing all the acts of worship. But this by no means implies that a follower of Ahle Bait (a.s.) should take his prayer lightly. For, the Ahle Bait (a.s.) were an embodiment of divine worship and also exhorted their followers towards prayers saying that their intercession will not reach to those who take their prayers lightly.

Then why has Imam (a.s.) placed it after the four acts of worship?

Considering the understanding and comprehension levels of the people is a very important thing. Otherwise, people will wage a war against the Imam (a.s.). For example, there is a tradition in Bukhari, where the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) addressed Ayesha as follows:

يَا عَائِشَةُ، لَوْلاَ قَوْمُكِ حَدِيثٌ عَهْدُهُمْ، قَالَ ابْنُ الزُّبَيْرِ بِكُفْرٍ، لَنَقَضْتُ الْكَعْبَةَ فَجَعَلْتُ لَهَا بَابَيْنِ باب يَدْخُلُ النَّاسُ، وَبَابٌ يَخْرُجُونَ ‏

“O Aisha! Had not your people been still close to the pre-Islamic period of ignorance (infidelity), I would have dismantled the Ka’bah and would have made two doors in it; one for entrance and the other for exit.” (Bukhari, Kitab al-Ilm, Hadis 126)

The Kabah had two doors since its inception. But the pagans shut one door and kept only one door. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intended to restore it to its original divine state but he (s.a.w.a.) feared that the people would not be able to digest this matter and it would lead to internal strife in the society.

Similarly, in the above narration, Imam Sajjad (a.s.) has kept the most important thing at the end of the duties. For, had he (a.s.) kept mastership ahead of prayers, some stupid people would have risen against him saying that he has disbelieved and would have gathered to kill him (a.s.).

Was it right for Imam Sajjad (a.s.) to present Islam in its distorted form (as in the above narration)?

The answer is NO. Then why he has done it in this narration? He has not presented it in its distorted form; actually, he (a.s.) has presented it in its actual form. Although he (a.s.) has mentioned mastership in the end, yet by mentioning that none of the acts will be accepted without mastership, he (a.s.) has clearly underlined its importance.

Hadis Saqlain is narrated by both the sects copiously. The chains are of various kinds and the sentences too. Scholars have written independent treatises on this tradition. We have presented here only one narration from one chain and left the others for the sake of brevity.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 105, H. 4

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.), p. 108

# Two Precious Things

اَبِي سَعِيدٍ الْخُدْرِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ اِنِّي قَدْ تَرَكْتُ فِيكُمُ الثَّقَلَيْنِ مَا اِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ بِهِمَا لَنْ تَضِلُّوا بَعْدِي وَ اَحَدُهُمَا اَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْآخَرِ كِتَابُ اللّهِ حَبْلٌ مَمْدُودٌ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ اِلَى الْاَرْضِ وَ عِتْرَتِي اَهْلُ بَيْتِي اَلَا وَ اِنَّهُمَا لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ

Abu Saeed al-Khudri reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“I am leaving behind you two precious things; if you fasten unto both of them, you will NEVER be deviated after me. One of them is greater than the other. The Book of Allah is the extended rope from the sky to the earth and my progeny, my Ahle Bait (a.s.). Beware! The two will not be separated from each other they meet me at the Pond.”

## Note:

The Holy Quran is present in the libraries and houses of the disbelievers. Books of traditions too abound in their libraries. But do they fasten unto them? No. Hence, these are not a source of guidance for them. In most of the Muslim cities and countries too, the same applies. They don’t fasten unto them.

Extended rope is a metaphorical term used here. It means it is the thing to be fastened unto.

You will never see any contradiction between the teachings of the Holy Quran and the Ahle Bait (a.s.) even in a single instance. You will see contradiction between the Holy Quran and the actions or teachings of other rulers/tyrants/despots but never with the Ahle Bait (a.s.) till the Day of Judgment. What does this mean? It means that that there is no path other than that of the Holy Quran and the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Together they form the path of salvation. Independently, neither of them are self-sufficient.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 106, H. 7

al-Taraaef of Sayyed Ibn Taawoos (r.a.), vol. 1, p. 113, H. 171

# Reward for loving the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَلِيٍّؑ اَنَّ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ اَخَذَ بِيَدِ حَسَنٍ وَ حُسَيْنٍ وَ قَالَ مَنْ اَحَبَّنِي وَ اَحَبَّ هَذَيْنِ وَ اَبَاهُمَا وَ اُمَّهُمَا كَانَ مَعِي فِي دَرَجَتِي يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

Ali (a.s.) informs that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) took the hands of Hasan and Husain and said, Whoever loves me, loves these two and loves their parents, he will be with me at my level in Paradise.

## Note:

Here, there’s a question.

Is mere love enough? Many non-Muslims love the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Their love – not mastership – of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and Ahle Bait (a.s.). Will they be with them (a.s.) in the Paradise?

The answers are as follows:

This sentence of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) is conditional. That is, whoever loves these infallible guides (a.s.) but with the condition of Islam.

This tradition says that ‘he will be with me on the Day of Judgment’; it does not say that he will be with me in Paradise. It is also possible that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intercedes on his behalf and he goes to Paradise. One who is ignorant and qaasir (not enemy and muqassir), perhaps he will be tested once again in the hereafter and can go to Paradise if he passes that test. If it is argued that in another narration it is mentioned that he will be with me in Paradise, then the same narration also stipulates that if he follows my Sunnah.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 116, H. 27

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 90

# War and Peace of Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ زَيْدِ بْنِ اَرْقَمَ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ لِعَلِيٍّ وَ فَاطِمَةَ وَ الْحَسَنِ وَ الْحُسَيْنِ اَنَا حَرْبٌ لِمَنْ حَارَبْتُمْ وَ سِلْمٌ لِمَنْ سَالَمْتُمْ‏

Zaid Ibn Arqam reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said to Ali, Fatemah, Hasan and Husain (peace be on them all),

“I am at war with the one whom you fight and at peace with the one with whom you are at peace.”

## Note:

Apparently, all the people of the cloak were together and the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to them this statement in the presence of other Muslims.

Whoever is your enemy, I am his enemy and whoever is at peace with you I am at peace with him. “You” means all the Imams (a.s.).

We should go through the annals of history and classify the people whether they were friends/supporters/helper of Ahle Bait (a.s.) or their enemies? We should be very clear in our minds as to where we must align ourselves, regardless of our preconceived notions and beliefs.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 116, H. 28

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel, vol. 2, p. 44 under the verse of Tatheer

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Door of Hettah

عَنْ عِكْرِمَةَ عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ مَنْ دَانَ بِدِينِي وَ سَلَكَ مِنْهَاجِي وَ اتَّبَعَ سُنَّتِي فَلْيَدِنْ بِتَفْضِيلِ الْاَئِمَّةِ مِنْ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي عَلٰى جَمِيعِ اُمَّتِي فَاِنَّ مَثَلَهُمْ فِي هَذِهِ الْاُمَّةِ مَثَلُ بَابِ حِطَّةٍ فِي بَنِي اِسْرَائِيلَ

Ekremah narrates from Ibn Abbas that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Whoever believes in my religion, treads my path and follows my Sunnah, he MUST believe in the superiority of the Imams (a.s.) from my Ahle Bait (a.s.) upon my entire nation. For, their likeness in this nation is like that of the Door of Hettah in the Bani Israel.”

## Note:

Ekremah was known for his hatred towards the Ahle Bait (a.s.) and their Shiites. Here, Ibn Abbas implies Abdullah because Abbas – the uncle of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) – had many sons, from whom Abdullah was the most famous among the people and the knowledgeable. But Ibn Abbas was not totally loyal to Ali (a.s.). Whoever refers to his life will realize this fact.

Coming to the tradition, whoever believes that any of the preceding three rulers were superior to Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) are NOT Muslims in the light of this tradition.

The Bani Israel were ordered to enter the door of Hettah so that their sins would be forgiven and whoever entered it saying Hettah would be forgiven. The Holy Quran has mentioned about it.

وَ اِذْ قُلْنَا ادْخُلُوا هذِهِ الْقَرْيَةَ فَكُلُوا مِنْها حَيْثُ شِئْتُمْ رَغَداً وَ ادْخُلُوا الْبابَ سُجَّداً وَ قُولُوا حِطَّةٌ نَغْفِرْ لَكُمْ خَطاياكُمْ وَ سَنَزيدُ الْمُحْسِنينَ

(Surah Baqarah (2): Verse 58 and Surah A’raaf (7): Verse 161)

وَ ادْخُلُوا الْبابَ الْقَرْيَةَ سُجَّداً مَثَّلَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى عَلَى الْبَابِ مِثَالَ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ عَلِيٍّ وَ اَمَرَهُمْ اَنْ يَسْجُدُوا تَعْظِيماً لِذَلِكَ الْمِثَالِ وَ اَنْ يُجَدِّدُوا عَلٰى اَنْفُسِهِمْ بَيْعَتَهُمَا وَ ذِكْرَ مُوَالَاتِهِمَا وَ لِيَذْكُرُوا الْعَهْدَ وَ الْمِيثَاقَ الْمَأْخُوذَيْنِ عَلَيْهِمْ لَهُمَا وَ قُولُوا حِطَّةٌ اَيْ قُولُوا اِنَّ سُجُودَنَا لِلَّهِ تَعْظِيماً لِمِثَالِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ عَلِيٍّ وَ اعْتِقَادُنَا لِوَلَايَتِهِمَا حِطَّةٌ لِذُنُوبِنَا وَ مَحْوٌ لِسَيِّئَاتِنَا قَالَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى نَغْفِرْ لَكُمْ اَيْ بِهَذَا الْفِعْلِ خَطاياكُمْ السَّالِفَةَ وَ نُزِيلُ عَنْكُمْ آثَامَكُمُ الْمَاضِيَةَ وَ سَنَزِيدُ الْمُحْسِنِينَ مَنْ كَانَ فِيكُمْ لَمْ يُقَارِفِ الذُّنُوبَ الَّتِي قَارَفَهَا مَنْ خَالَفَ الْوَلَايَةَ وَ ثَبَتَ عَلٰى مَا اَعْطَى اللَّهُ مِنْ نَفْسِهِ مِنْ عَهْدِ الْوَلَايَةِ فَاِنَّا نَزِيدُهُمْ بِهَذَا الْفِعْلِ زِيَادَةَ دَرَجَاتٍ وَ مَثُوبَاتٍ وَ ذَلِكَ قَوْلُهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ سَنَزِيدُ الْمُحْسِنِينَ قَوْلُهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فَبَدَّلَ الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا قَوْلًا غَيْرَ الَّذِي قِيلَ لَهُمْ اَيْ لَمْ يَسْجُدُوا كَمَا اُمِرُوا وَ لَا قَالُوا مَا اُمِرُوا وَ لَكِنْ دَخَلُوهَا مِنْ مُسْتَقْبِلِيهَا بِاَسْتَاهِهِمْ وَ قَالُوا هنطا سمقانا اَيْ حِنْطَةٌ حَمْرَاءُ يُنَقُّونَهَا اَحَبُّ اِلَيْنَا مِنْ هَذَا الْفِعْلِ وَ هَذَا الْقَوْلِ ‏

(Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 13, p. 182, H. 19 narrating from Tafseer al-Imam (a.s.), p. 259, H. 127)

“Allah the High imprinted the images of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and Ali (a.s.) on the door and ordered them (viz. the Israelis) that they should prostrate to these images out of reverence and they should renew for themselves their allegiance and the mention of their mastership and that they should remember the pledge and promise which was taken from them concerning these two and say “Hettah” i.e. say ‘Verily our prostration for Allah in reverence for the images of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and Ali (a.s.) and our belief in their mastership is a cause for the removal of our sins and erasure of misdeeds. Allah the High says ‘**We will forgive for you’** i.e. with this act **your sins**’ of the past and remove your vices of yore ‘**and soon we shall increase for the good-doers**’ whoever among you did not commit the sin committed by those who opposed the mastership and was steadfast on what Allah granted him from His side from the covenant of mastership, We will increase their grades and rewards on account of this action. And this is the meaning of the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He - ‘**and soon we shall increase for the good-doers**’. The word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**Then the unjust ones changed the word to other than what was said to them’** i.e. they did not prostrate as they were ordered and they did not utter what they were commanded but they entered it from its front on their backs and instead they uttered ‘red wheat that they clean is dearer to us than this action and this word.’

Thus, whoever intends to enter the city of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), he must enter it through the door ordained by him (s.a.w.a.).

The door of Hettah for Bani Israel was made of wood. So, is a door of wood superior to Ahle Bait (a.s.)? Entering through this wooden door can be the cause of Allah’s satisfaction but entering through the Ahle Bait (a.s.) cannot be the cause of His satisfaction? **Take lesson, O people of wisdom!**

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 119, H. 39

Al-Amaali of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.), p. 74, 17th Majlis

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the Ark of Salvation

صَعِدَ اَبُو ذَرٍّ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ عَلٰى دَرَجَةِ الْكَعْبَةِ حَتَّى اَخَذَ بِحَلْقَةِ الْبَابِ ثُمَّ اَسْنَدَ ظَهْرَهُ اِلَيْهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اَيُّهَا النَّاسُ مَنْ عَرَفَنِي فَقَدْ عَرَفَنِي وَ مَنْ اَنْكَرَنِي فَاَنَا اَبُو ذَرٍّ سَمِعْتُ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ يَقُولُ اِنَّمَا مَثَلُ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي فِي هَذِهِ الْاُمَّةِ كَمَثَلِ سَفِينَةِ نُوحٍ مَنْ رَكِبَهَا نَجَا وَ مَنْ تَرَكَهَا هَلَكَ وَ سَمِعْتُ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ يَقُولُ اجْعَلُوا اَهْلَ بَيْتِي مِنْكُمْ مَكَانَ الرَّأْسِ مِنَ الْجَسَدِ وَ مَكَانَ الْعَيْنَيْنِ مِنَ الرَّأْسِ فَاِنَّ الْجَسَدَ لَا يَهْتَدِي اِلَّا بِالرَّأْسِ وَ لَا يَهْتَدِي الرَّأْسُ اِلَّا بِالْعَيْنَيْنِ

One day, Abuzar (r.a.) ascended on the steps of the Kabah till he held the latch of the door; thereafter, he leant his back towards it (i.e. Kabah) and addressed (the people) thus, “O People! Whoever knows me then indeed he knows me and whoever does not know me, then I am Abuzar. I heard the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) say,

‘The likeness of my Ahle Bait (a.s.) in this nation is like the Ark of Noah (a.s.). Whoever boards it will be saved and whoever leaves it will be destroyed.’

And I heard the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) say,

‘Make my Ahle Bait (a.s.) to you like the head is to the body and the eyes are to the head. Surely, the body cannot be guided without the head and the head cannot be guided without the eyes.”

## Note:

Raafe’ the narrator of this narration is the slave of Abuzar. When Abuzar says, ‘I am Abuzar’, he was implying that I am no ordinary person; I am speaking the truth and Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) has testified for this.

As is well-known, Abuzar was openly criticizing the rulers after the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). Abuzar was not in need of any witness as the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had testified for him that

مَا اَظَلَّتِ الْخَضْرَاءُ وَ لَا اَقَلَّتِ الْغَبْرَاءُ عَلٰى ذِي لَهْجَةٍ اَصْدَقَ مِنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ

“Trees don’t shadow and dust does not fall on a speaking person more truthful than Abuzar’.

But Usman Ibn Affaan asked Abuzar for a witness. So he brought Ali (a.s.) and Miqdad as witnesses. Apparently, Usman accepted their witnesses in favour of Abuzar. But later, he acted against all of these persons.

All those who have abandoned the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are drowned and destroyed.

The position of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) is like the head to the body and the eyes to the head. When man walks, true that he walks with his legs and when he buys something, he does it so with his hands. But in all this process, you look at his face and while talking with him, you look at this eyes. This narration shows that guidance is not possible without the Ahle Bait (a.s.). If you want guidance for this world as well as the hereafter, go to the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 121, H. 43

Amaali of Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 482, 17th Majlis

# Truth must be the criterion not personalities

اَبَانُ بْنُ اَبِي عَيَّاشٍ دَخَلْتُ عَلٰى عَلِيِّ بْنِ الْحُسَيْنِؑ وَ عِنْدَهُ اَبُو الطُّفَيْلِ عَامِرُ بْنُ وَاثِلَةَ صَاحِبُ رَسُولِ اللّهِ ﷺ وَ كَانَ مِنْ خِيَارِ اَصْحَابِ عَلِيٍّؑ وَ لَقِيتُ عِنْدَهُ عُمَرَ بْنَ اَبِي سَلَمَةَ ابْنَ اُمِّ سَلَمَةَ زَوْجَةِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ فَعَرَضْتُ عَلَيْهِ كِتَابَ سُلَيْمِ بْنِ قَيْسٍ فَقَالَ لِي صَدَقَ سُلَيْمٌ رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اِنَّهُ يَضِيقُ صَدْرِي بِبَعْضِ مَا فِيهِ لِاَنَّ فِيهِ هَلَاكَ اُمَّةِ مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ رَأْساً مِنَ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ وَ الْاَنْصَارِ رَأْساً وَ التَّابِعِينَ غَيْرَكُمْ اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ شِيعَتِكُمْ فَقَالَ يَا اَخَا عَبْدِ الْقَيْسِ اَ مَا بَلَغَكَ اَنَّ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ قَالَ اِنَّ مَثَلَ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي كَمَثَلِ سَفِينَةِ نُوحٍ فِي قَوْمِهِ مَنْ رَكِبَهَا نَجَا وَ مَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهَا غَرِقَ وَ كَمَثَلِ بَابِ حِطَّةٍ فِي بَنِي اِسْرَائِيلَ فَقُلْتُ نَعَمْ فَقَالَ مَنْ حَدَّثَكَ فَقُلْتُ سَمِعْتُهُ مِنْ اَكْثَرَ مِنْ مِائَةٍ مِنَ الْفُقَهَاءِ فَقَالَ مِمَّنْ فَقُلْتُ سَمِعْتُهُ مِنْ حُبَيْشِ بْنِ الْمُعْتَمِرِ وَ ذَكَرَ اَنَّهُ سَمِعَهٗ مِنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ وَ هُوَ آخِذٌ بِحَلْقَةِ الْكَعْبَةِ يُنَادِي بِهِ نِدَاءً يَرْوِيهِ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللّهِ ﷺ فَقَالَ وَ مِمَّنْ فَقُلْتُ وَ مِنَ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ اَبِي الْحَسَنِ الْبَصْرِيِّ اَنَّهُ سَمِعَ مِنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ وَ مِنَ الْمِقْدَادِ بْنِ الْاَسْوَدِ وَ مِنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ فَقَالَ وَ مِمَّنْ فَقُلْتُ وَ مِنْ سَعِيدِ بْنِ الْمُسَيَّبِ وَ عَلْقَمَةَ بْنِ قَيْسٍ وَ اَبِي ظَبْيَانَ الْحُسَيْنِيِّ وَ مِنْ عَبْدِ الرَّحْمَنِ بْنِ اَبِي لَيْلَى كُلُّ هَؤُلَاءِ اَخْبَرَ اَنَّهُ سَمِعَهُ مِنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ قَالَ اَبُو الطُّفَيْلِ وَ عُمَرُ بْنُ اَبِي سَلَمَةَ وَ نَحْنُ وَ اللّهِ سَمِعْنَاهُ مِنْ اَبِي ذَرٍّ وَ سَمِعْنَاهُ مِنْ عَلِيٍّؑ وَ الْمِقْدَادِ وَ سَلْمَانَ ثُمَّ اَقْبَلَ عُمَرُ بْنُ اَبِي سَلَمَةَ فَقَالَ وَ اللّهِ لَقَدْ سَمِعْتُهُ مِمَّنْ هُوَ خَيْرٌ مِنْ هَؤُلَاءِ كُلِّهِمْ سَمِعْتُهٗ مِنْ رَسُولِ اللّهِ ﷺ سَمِعْتُهٗ اِذْ نَادَى وَ وَعَاهُ قَلْبِي فَاَقْبَلَ عَلِيُّ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِؑ فَقَالَ اَ وَ لَيْسَ هَذَا الْحَدِيثُ وَحْدَهُ يَنْتَظِمُ جَمِيعَ مَا اَفْظَعَكَ وَ عَظُمَ فِي صَدْرِكَ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْاَحَادِيثِ اتَّقِ اللهَ يَا اَخَا عَبْدِ الْقَيْسِ فَاِنْ وَضَحَ لَكَ اَمْرٌ فَاقْبَلْهُ وَ اِلَّا فَاسْكُتْ تَسْلَمْ وَ رُدَّ عِلْمَهُ اِلَى اللّهِ فَاِنَّكَ بِاَوْسَعَ مِمَّا بَيْنَ السَّمَاءِ وَ الْاَرْضِ

Abaan Ibn Abi Ayyaash is the narrator of the book Sulaim Ibn Qais directly. He reports, “I went to Imam Sajjad (a.s.) and inquired about his opinion concerning this book. At that moment, Abu al-Tufail Aamir Ibn Waathelah – a companion of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and a very good companion of Ali (a.s.) – was sitting with him (a.s.). There, I also met Umar Ibn Abi Salamah, the son of Umm Salamah the wife of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). [Umm Salamah before her marriage to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was married to a man called Abu Salamah, from whom she had a son called Umar. This Umar was a nice man and was trained and brought up in the house of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)].

I presented to him (a.s.) the Book of Sulaim. Imam (a.s.) said, “Sulaim – may Allah have mercy on him –has spoken the truth.”

I said, “May I be held your ransom! Some concepts in it straiten my heart. For, in it is the destruction of the nation of Muhamamd (s.a.w.a.) including the top Muhajireen, Ansar and the Taabeen except you Ahle Bait (a.s.) and your Shiites.”

Imam (a.s.) replied, “O brother of Abd al-Qais! Have you not heard that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘Surely, the likeness of my Ahle Bait is like that of the Ark of Noah in his nation? Whoever boards it will be saved and whoever is left behind will be drowned and the likeness of the door of Hettah in the Bani Israel?”

I replied in the affirmative.

He (a.s.) asked, “Who has narrated to you?”

I answered that I have heard it from more than hundred learned scholars.

He (a.s.) inquired again, “Like whom?” (i.e. give some examples)

I said, “I have heard it from Hubaish (or Hanash) Ibn al-Motamir and he mentioned that he had heard it from Abuzar while he was holding the latch of the door of the Kabah calling out loudly that he had heard it from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).”

Imam (a.s.) asked, “And from who else?”

I answered, “Al-Hasan Ibn Abi al-Hasan al-Basri who heard it from Abuzar and from Miqdad Ibn Aswad and Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.).”

(Al-Hasan al-Basri was an erratic (متقلبة) personality. There is a personality that is unstable (قلقة) and there is an erratic one. The latter stems from natural short-coming (قصور) while the former is due to one’s weakness in faith (تقصير). The latter needs someone to guide him, otherwise he gets swayed by anyone. But the former is like a chameleon who changes his colour as per his convenience and material/worldly benefits. Al-Hasan al-Basri initially was among the supporters of Ali (a.s.) but later, became the backer of the Umayyads like Marwan and his governor Hajjaj Ibn Yusuf (l.a.). He openly voiced his support for both these tyrants. So much so that it is said, “But for the sword of Hajjaj and the tongue of al-Hasan al-Basri, the government of Marwan couldn’t have stabilized (لو لا سيف الحجاج و لسان الحسن البصري لم يستقم الحكم الاموي المرواني).” Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) had even called him as the Saamari of this nation. Al-Hasan al-Basri has narrated the above narration during his period in truth).

He (a.s.) asked, “From who else?”

I replied, “From Saeed Ibn al-Musayyeb, Alqamah Ibn Qais, Abu Zabyaan al-Janbi (al-Janb was an Arabian family) and Abd al-Rahman Ibn Abi Lailaa, all of whom reported that they heard from Abuzar.”

At this, Abu al-Tufail and Umar Ibn Abi Salamah intervened, “By Allah! We have also heard it from Abuzar and we have also heard it from Ali (a.s.), Miqdad and Salman.”

Thereafter, Umar Ibn Abi Salamah turned towards me and said, “I have heard it from the one who is superior to all of these. I heard it from the Messsenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). I heard him (s.a.w.a.) when he said loudly and my heart retained it.”

Then Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) turned towards me and asked,

“Is this narration alone not enough to pacify all that bothers you and is great in your heart than all these (other) narrations (recorded in the Book of Sulaim)? Fear Allah! O Brother of Abd al-Qais, if a matter is clear for you, accept it and if not, keep quiet, you will be safe and refer its knowledge to Allah because with you (is the license to leave the matter due to ignorance) is whatever is vaster than the heavens and the earth.”

## Note:

Abd al-Qais is the name of the narrator’s family. If the matter is clear, then accept it. That is, even if the whole world is against you like about Prophet Ibraheem (a.s.) the Noble Quran says he was a single nation (أمة واحدة).

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 124, H. 52

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are Allah’s extended rope

قَالَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ فَاطِمَةُ بَهْجَةُ قَلْبِي وَ ابْنَاهَا ثَمَرَةُ فُؤَادِي وَ بَعْلُهَا نُورُ بَصَرِي وَ الْاَئِمَّةُ مِنْ وُلْدِهَا اُمَنَاءُ رَبِّي وَ حَبْلٌ مَمْدُودٌ بَيْنَهُ وَ بَيْنَ خَلْقِهِ مَنِ اعْتَصَمَ بِهِمْ نَجَا وَ مَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهُمْ هَوَى‏

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Fatemah is the joy of my heart. Her two sons (Hasan and Husain) are the fruits of my heart. Her husband is the light of my eyes and the Imams from her progeny are the trustees of my Lord, an extended rope between Him and His creatures. Whoever fastens unto them will be saved and whoever lags behind them will be destroyed.”

## Note:

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) never spoke of his own desire. He spoke only what was revealed to him (s.a.w.a.). Revelation was sometimes terminological like the Holy Quran and sometimes it was not part of the Noble Quran; rather, it was Hadis Qudsi and sometimes it was his saying and part of his Sunnah. Thus, this tradition is not an expression of love of a father for his daughter or for his grandsons or his son-in-law or his descendants.

***Trustees of my Lord*** in this narration means in their word, action and silence they should be relied upon and there is no exception to this. They are trustees in all matters i.e. their trusteeship is absolute.

[The question here is, “Why did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) attribute the Imams (a.s.) to Fatemah (s.a.) and not to Ali (a.s.)?” Perhaps, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was relied upon by the Muslims at least apparently. But they did not show such faith in Ali (a.s.) even apparently because of their jealousy and hatred towards him. Their words and actions prove this fact as they believe that his predecessors were superior to Ali (a.s.)!! Therefore, if the Imams (a.s.) are attributed to the daughter of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), at least they will show some apparent respect for the Imams (a.s.).]

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 110, H. 16

Al-Taraaef of Sayed Ibn Taawoos (r.a.), vol. 1, p. 117, H. 180

# Benchmarks for Success and Failure

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ لِعَلِيٍّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنَا مَدِينَةُ الْحِكْمَةِ وَ اَنْتَ بَابُهَا وَ لَنْ تُؤْتَى الْمَدِينَةُ اِلَّا مِنْ قِبَلِ الْبَابِ وَ كَذَبَ مَنْ زَعَمَ اَنَّهُ يُحِبُّنِي وَ يُبْغِضُكَ لِاَنَّكَ مِنِّي وَ اَنَا مِنْكَ لَحْمُكَ مِنْ لَحْمِي وَ دَمُكَ مِنْ دَمِي وَ رُوحُكَ مِنْ رُوحِي وَ سَرِيرَتُكَ سَرِيرَتِي وَ عَلَانِيَتُكَ عَلَانِيَتِي وَ اَنْتَ اِمَامُ اُمَّتِي وَ خَلِيفَتِي عَلَيْهَا بَعْدِي سُعِدَ مَنْ اَطَاعَكَ وَ شَقِيَ مَنْ عَصَاكَ وَ رَبِحَ مَنْ تَوَلَّاكَ وَ خَسِرَ مَنْ عَادَاكَ وَ فَازَ مَنْ لَزِمَكَ وَ هَلَكَ مَنْ فَارَقَكَ مَثَلُكَ وَ مَثَلُ الْاَئِمَّةِ مِنْ وُلْدِكَ بَعْدِي مَثَلُ سَفِينَةِ نُوحٍ مَنْ رَكِبَهَا نَجَا وَ مَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهَا غَرِقَ وَ مَثَلُكُمْ مَثَلُ النُّجُومِ كُلَّمَا غَابَ نَجْمٌ طَلَعَ نَجْمُ اِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ

Ibn Abbas chronicles that the Messsenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said to Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.),

“O Ali! I am the city of wisdom and you are its gate. The city is not approached but from its gate. He has lied who thinks that he loves me but hates you because you are from me and I am from you. Your flesh is my flesh and your blood is my blood. Your soul is my soul, your secret is my secret and your apparent is my apparent. You are the Imam of my nation and my Caliph upon it after me. Fortunate is he who obeys you and wretched is he who disobeys you. Winner is he who accepts your mastership and loser is he who bears enmity against you. Successful is he who fastens unto you and destroyed is the one who separates from you. Your likeness and the likeness of the Imams (a.s.) from your progeny after me is like that of the Ark of Noah. Whoever boards it will be saved and whoever lags behind will drown. The likeness of you Imams (a.s.) is that of the stars; whenever one star disappears another star appears (and this shall continue) till the Day of Judgment.”

## Note:

In the above tradition, the word ‘wisdom’ (حكمة) is neither in the meaning of medicine nor philosophy. Rather, one of meanings is to ‘put a thing in its place’ in this world as well as the hereafter including its worlds like the Barzakh, the A’raaf, the Heaven and the Hell. Thus, wisdom cannot be found in any other place except here viz. the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and Ameerul Momineen (a.s.).

“*You are from me and I am from you”* is the same concept as propounded in the Verse of Maledictioon (*Mubaahelah*). This being from the same self is not restricted to any one aspect of the personality. Rather, it talks about all its aspects. Thus, apparently there are two bodies but the original existence (light and self) is one reality. There are many references for this fact. “I and Ali from the same light”. Till Abdul Muttalib they were in one loin. Thereafter, this light was split into Abdullah and Abu Talib (peace be on them both). There should be no astonishment at such traditions.

‘*Successful is he who fastens unto you and destroyed is the one who separates from you*’ also grades. The level of Salman’s success was different from that of Abuzar. The same applies for destruction.

The series of guides will continue till the Day of Judgment. Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.) is the last of them. Today, like in the times of previous Imams (a.s.), it is the duty of the people to contact their Imam (a.s.). For example, Ali (a.s.) did not contact Salman. The latter contacted Ali (a.s.) and obeyed his instructions. But today, it is he (a.t.f.s.) who visits whosoever he wishes. Thus, in reality, it is not occultation but manifestation with all its intensity. Imam (a.t.f.s.) will appear for the general masses at the time of reappearance. Thereafter, he (a.t.f.s.) will be martyred. Imam Husain (a.s.) will come instantly and the period of Raj’ah will start.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 125, H. 53

Amaali of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.), p. 125, 26th Majlis, p. 269, 45th Majlis

Kamaal al-Deen, vol. 1, p. 241, Chapter 22, H. 65

# Denial of Ali (a.s.) is Denial of Allah

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنْتَ اَخِي وَ وَارِثِي وَ وَصِيِّي وَ خَلِيفَتِي فِي اَهْلِي وَ اُمَّتِي فِي حَيَاتِي وَ بَعْدَ مَمَاتِي مُحِبُّكَ مُحِبِّي وَ مُبْغِضُكَ مُبْغِضِي يَا عَلِيُّ اَنَا وَ اَنْتَ اَبَوَا هَذِهِ الْاُمَّةِ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنَا وَ اَنْتَ وَ الْاَئِمَّةُ مِنْ وُلْدِكَ سَادَةٌ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَ مُلُوكٌ فِي الْآخِرَةِ مَنْ عَرَفَنَا فَقَدْ عَرَفَ اللهَ وَ مَنْ اَنْكَرَنَا فَقَدْ اَنْكَرَ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“O Ali! You are my brother, my heir, my successor and my Caliph in my family and my nation during my life and after my death. One who loves you loves me and one who hates you hates me. O Ali! I and you are the fathers of this nation. O Ali! I, you and the Imams from your progeny are the leaders in this world and kings in the hereafter. Whoever knows us then indeed he has known Allah and whoever denies us has indeed denied Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He.”

## Note:

*‘….my Caliph in my family…’* is important. If the wives of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) violated the conditions of marriage after his (s.a.w.a.) martyrdom, the right of divorce was in the hands of Ali (a.s.). Did he (a.s.) divorce some wives of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) after his death or not is a matter of debate among the historians and scholars.

The last sentence shows that the cognition of Allah the High is possible only through them (a.s.). Their appointment is from Allah the High and hence, one who denies them has denied Him.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 128, H. 59

Amaali of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.), p. 657, 94th Majlis

# Ali (a.s.) – The Separator of Truth and Falsehood

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ عَنْ آبَائِهِ ﷺ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ خُذُوا بِحُجْزَةِ هَذَا الْاَنْزَعِ يَعْنِي عَلِيّاً فَاِنَّهُ الصِّدِّيقُ الْاَكْبَرُ وَ هُوَ الْفَارُوقُ يُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ الْحَقِّ وَ الْبَاطِلِ مَنْ اَحَبَّهُ هَدَاهُ اللَّهُ وَ مَنْ اَبْغَضَهُ اَبْغَضَهُ اللَّهُ وَ مَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهُ مَحَقَهُ اللَّهُ وَ مِنْهُ سِبْطَا اُمَّتِي الْحَسَنُ وَ الْحُسَيْنُ وَ هُمَا ابْنَايَ وَ مِنَ الْحُسَيْنِ اَئِمَّةُ الْهُدَى اَعْطَاهُمُ اللَّهُ عِلْمِي وَ فَهْمِي فَتَوَلُّوهُمْ وَ لَا تَتَّخِذُوا وَلِيجَةً مِنْ دُونِهِمْ فَيَحِلَّ عَلَيْكُمْ غَضَبٌ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَ مَنْ يَحْلِلْ عَلَيْهِ غَضَبٌ مِنْ رَبِّهِ فَقَدْ هَوى‏ وَ مَا الْحَياةُ الدُّنْيا اِلَّا مَتاعُ الْغُرُورِ

Imam Muhammad Baqir (a.s.) reports vide his ancestors that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said, “Fasten unto the belt of this man with a broad forehead viz. Ali (a.s.). For, he is the most truthful person and he is the distinguisher who distinguishes between truth and falsehood. Whoever loves him Allah guides him and whoever bears malice against him Allah bears malice against him. Whoever lags behind him Allah will destroy him. From him are the two grandsons of my nation, al-Hasan and al-Husain and they are my two sons. From Husain (a.s.) are the Imams of guidance. Allah has granted them my knowledge and my understanding. So accept their mastership and don’t take any confidante other than them lest the wrath of your Lord befalls you. And on whosoever the wrath of his Lord befalls indeed he is destroyed. And what is this worldly life except the provision of deception?”

## Note:

Truthfulness does not depend only on one’s words. Rather, it also depends on one’s deeds. For example, a person claims to be a Muslim but does not pray then he is not a truthful person. He is a hypocrite. So, Ali (a.s.) was truthful but not only in words but deeds as well and he was the greatest in this regard.

Faarooq means who distinguishes excessively between truth and falsehood. Ali (a.s.) was at this level especially because he was having the knowledge of the unseen due to which he could easily distinguish between truth and falsehood.

Reward and punishment are in this world, barzakh, a’raaf and hereafter (paradise and hell). One of the rewards for Ali’s love is guidance in this world. And the punishment for bearing enmity against Ali is that Allah bears enmity against him.

None is allowed to enter the system of Imamah except through these twelve Imams (a.s.).

The enjoyments of this world are nothing except deception. What is the connection of this last sentence with the previous statements of the tradition? It means that don’t allow the world to deceive you against the Imams (a.s.) for the sake of few days enjoyment of this deceptive world.

Is there any difference between knowledge and understanding?

Yes. Knowledge implies laws and principles while understanding is to uncover these laws and principles.

It is possible that a person does not know many laws and principles but he is able to explore and discover the rationale behind these laws.

Thus, Imams (a.s.) had both knowledge as well as understanding of the entire system of creation.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 129, H. 60

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 53, H. 2, Chapter 23

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 673, H.8, Majlis 96

# Divine Imams (a.s.) never misguide

رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ يَقُولُ مَنْ اَحَبَّ اَنْ يَحْيَا حَيَاتِي وَ يَمُوتَ مِيتَتِي وَ يَدْخُلَ الْجَنَّةَ الَّتِي وَعَدَنِي رَبِّي فَلْيَتَوَلَّ عَلِيَّ بْنَ اَبِي طَالِبٍ وَ ذُرِّيَّتَهُ الطَّاهِرِينَ اَئِمَّةَ الْهُدَى وَ مَصَابِيحَ الدُّجَى مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَاِنَّهُمْ لَنْ يُخْرِجُوكُمْ مِنْ بَابِ الْهُدَى اِلَى بَابِ الضَّلَالَةِ

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

‘Whoever loves that he should live my life, die my death and enter the Paradise that my Lord has promised me, then he must accept the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and his pure progeny, the Imams of guidance and the lamps in darkness after him. Surely, they will never bring you out from the door of guidance to the door of deviation and misguidance.’

## Note:

It is very important for a person to die a proper death on belief and faith and not an apostate.

The fate of Zubair Ibn Awaamm

فأنفذه إلى أمير المؤمنينؑ فلما رأى رأس الزبير و سيفه قال ناولني السيف فناوله فهزه و قال سيف طالما قاتل به بين يدي رسول الله ﷺ و لكن الحين و مصارع السوء ثم تفرس في وجه الزبير و قال لقد كان لك برسول الله ﷺ صحبة و منة قرابة و لكن الشيطان دخل منخريك فأوردك هذا المورد

The real Khaareji were Talhah and Zubair. For, but for these two, the Battle of Siffeen wouldn’t have occurred and if there was no battle of Siffeen, the Khawaarej would not take place.

The Ahle Bait (a.s.) did not enjoy such a position only because of their relationship with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) because there were many other close relatives who were deviated.

None except the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the lamps in darkness. In the physical presence of infallible Imams (a.s.), it is prohibited to use one’s own jurisprudence. For example, Umar Ibn al-Khattaab issued an edict for the prohibition of temporary marriage (*mut’ah al-nisaa*) and *Hajj tamattu*, which were permissible during the time of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). He even took pride in defying this order of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) by saying, ‘There were two mut’ahs that were permissible during the time of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) but I prohibited them’. This quote is found in several books of all Muslims. Such defiance is unpardonable and beyond justification.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 143, H. 96

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 105

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are Allah’s Chosen Ones

الرِّضَا عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ اَنْتَ يَا عَلِيُّ وَ وُلْدُكَ خِيَرَةُ اللّهِ مِنْ خَلْقِهِ

Imam Reza (a.s.) reports vide his holy ancestors (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“You, O Ali, and your sons are the chosen ones of Allah from His creatures.”

## Note:

Since the infallible Imams (a.s.) were the best and greatest, Allah the Almighty has chosen them. Had others been superior, certainly Allah the High out of His prudence, knowledge and justice would have chosen them. Now, when it is established that they are the most superior and chosen ones, isn’t it obligatory upon the people to follow the superior ones instead of the inferior ones?

Ibn Abi al-Hadeed – the commentator of Nahj al-Balaaghah – says (rather shamelessly), الحمد لله الذي قدم المفضول علي الفاضل “All praise is for Allah Who gave preference to the inferior upon the superior”.

We say, “O son of Hadeed! You can commit such an unjust act but Allah the Wise will never do such a thing since He is Wise, Knowing, Powerful and Just.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 145, H. 102

Oyoon-o-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.)

# Salutations on the Progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)

فِيمَا احْتَجَّ الرِّضَاؑ عَلٰى عُلَمَاءِ الْعَامَّةِ فِي فَضْلِ الْعِتْرَةِ الطَّاهِرَةِ اَنَّهُ سَاَلَ الْعُلَمَاءَ فَقَالَ اَخْبِرُونِي عَنْ قَوْلِ اللّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يس وَ الْقُرْآنِ الْحَكِيمِ اِنَّكَ لَمِنَ الْمُرْسَلِينَ عَلى‏ صِراطٍ مُسْتَقِيمٍ فَمَنْ عَنَى بِقَوْلِهِ يس قَالَتِ الْعُلَمَاءُ يس مُحَمَّدٌ ﷺ لَمْ يَشُكَّ فِيهِ اَحَدٌ قَالَ اَبُو الْحَسَنِؑ فَاِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اَعْطَى مُحَمَّداً وَ آلَ مُحَمَّدٍ مِنْ ذَلِكَ فَضْلًا لَا يَبْلُغُ اَحَدٌ كُنْهَ وَصْفِهِ اِلَّا مَنْ عَقَلَهُ وَ ذَلِكَ اَنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ لَمْ يُسَلِّمْ عَلٰى اَحَدٍ اِلَّا عَلَى الْاَنْبِيَاءِ ﷺ فَقَالَ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى سَلامٌ عَلى‏ نُوحٍ فِي الْعالَمِينَ وَ قَالَ سَلامٌ عَلى‏ اِبْراهِيمَ وَ قَالَ سَلامٌ عَلى‏ مُوسى‏ وَ هارُونَ وَ لَمْ يَقُلْ سَلَامٌ عَلٰى آلِ نُوحٍ وَ لَمْ يَقُلْ سَلَامٌ عَلٰى آلِ اِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ لَا قَالَ سَلَامٌ عَلٰى آلِ مُوسَى وَ هَارُونَ وَ قَالَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ سَلَامٌ عَلٰى آلِ يس يَعْنِي آلَ مُحَمَّدٍ عَلَيْهِمُ السَّلَام‏

Among the arguments of Imam Reza (a.s.) against the opposing scholars vis-à-vis the excellence of the pure progeny (a.s.) was that he (a.s.) asked the scholars, “All of you inform me about the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – Ya Seen and the Wise Quran. Surely, you are from the Messengers upon the right path.’ Whom did He imply by His word Ya Seen?” The scholars replied, “Ya Seen is Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). No doubt about it.” Imam Reza (a.s.) retorted,

“Surely Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – gave Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad from this excellence, none can reach to the essence of his attribute except the one who uses his intellect. For, Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – has not send salutations except on the Prophets (a.s.). So He – blessed and High be He – said, ‘Salutations be on Noah in the worlds’ and He said, ‘Salutations be on Ibraheem’ and He said, ‘Salutations be on Moosa and Haroon’ but He did not say ‘Salutations be on the progeny of Noah’. He did not say ‘Salutations be on the progeny of Ibraheem’. He did not say, ‘Salutations be on the progeny of Moosa and Haroon’. But He – Mighty and Majestic be He – said, ‘Salutations be on the progeny of Ya Seen.’ That is, the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).”

## Note:

From the above tradition, the least we can derive is that the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are of the level as that of the Divine Prophets (a.s.) – if not more – and since the latter are infallible, the former too have to be the same.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 167, H. 1

Oyoon-o-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.)

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the People of Remembrance

فِيمَا بَيَّنَ الرِّضَاؑ عِنْدَ الْمَأْمُونِ مِنْ فَضْلِ الْعِتْرَةِ الطَّاهِرَةِ اَنْ قَالَ وَ اَمَّا التَّاسِعَةُ فَنَحْنُ اَهْلُ الذِّكْرِ الَّذِينَ قَالَ اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فَسْئَلُوا اَهْلَ الذِّكْرِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ لا تَعْلَمُونَ فَنَحْنُ اَهْلُ الذِّكْرِ فَاسْاَلُونَا اِنْ كُنْتُمْ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ فَقَالَتِ الْعُلَمَاءُ اِنَّمَا عَنَى بِذَلِكَ الْيَهُودَ وَ النَّصَارَى فَقَالَ اَبُو الْحَسَنِؑ سُبْحَانَ اللّهِ وَ هَلْ يَجُوزُ ذَلِكَ اِذاً يَدْعُونَنَا اِلَى دِينِهِمْ وَ يَقُولُونَ اِنَّهُ اَفْضَلُ مِنْ دِينِ الْاِسْلَامِ فَقَالَ الْمَأْمُونُ فَهَلْ عِنْدَكَ فِي ذَلِكَ شَرْحٌ بِخِلَافِ مَا قَالُوا يَا اَبَا الْحَسَنِ فَقَالَؑ نَعَمْ الذِّكْرُ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ وَ نَحْنُ اَهْلُهُ وَ ذَلِكَ بَيِّنٌ فِي كِتَابِ اللّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ حَيْثُ يَقُولُ فِي سُورَةِ الطَّلَاقِ فَاتَّقُوا اللهَ يا اُولِي الْاَلْبابِ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قَدْ اَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ اِلَيْكُمْ ذِكْراً رَسُولًا يَتْلُوا عَلَيْكُمْ آياتِ اللّهِ مُبَيِّناتٍ فَالذِّكْرُ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ وَ نَحْنُ اَهْلُهُ

Among Imam Reza’s (a.s.) explanations in front of Mamoon (l.a.) about the superiority of the Progeny of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.), he (a.s.) said, “*As for the ninth (verse which is a proof of our superiority), then we are the people of remembrance about whom Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – says, ‘***Then ask the people of remembrance if you don’t know**’ *so we are the people of remembrance; ask us if you are not knowing.*” The scholars argued, “By this, He implies the Jews and the Christians.” Imam Abu al-Hasan (Reza) (a.s.) retorted, “*Glory be to Allah! Is this possible? In this case, they will call us towards their religion and they will say that it (their religion) is superior to Islam.*” At this Mamoon interrupted, “Do you have any explanation contrary to what they are saying, O Aba al-Hasan?” He (a.s.) answered, “*Yes. Remembrance (*ذكر*) implies the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and we are his family (*اهل*). This is explained in the Book of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – when He says in Surah Talaq* ‘**So fear Allah, O people of intellect, those who believed; indeed Allah has sent upon you a remembrance, a messenger who recites for you the clear verses of Allah**’. *Thus, remembrance is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and we are his family.*”

## Note:

Almost all or at least most of the scholars of Ahl Tasannun suggest that people of remembrance (اهل الذكر) means people of the book (اهل الكتاب) viz. the Jews and the Christians. Here, Imam (a.s.) is using this verse as a proof of the superiority of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Thus, they are the most superior and hence, it is the duty of the entire nation to submit to them.

“Glory be to Allah” in its secondary meaning is used for expressing amazement (كلمة تعجب).

If you ask the Jews and the Christians what is right and what is wrong? Islam or Judaism/Christianity? The answer is obvious. No wise man will ever accept such an interpretation.

In the verse of Surah Talaq, which Imam (a.s.) has quoted as evidence, remembrance does not mean the Holy Quran because here it also talks about the recitation of verses which the Book does not do, it is done by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Of course, even if we assume that remembrance means the Majestic Quran, then the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the people of the Holy Quran. Nobody knows the Book of Allah like they do, as mentioned earlier. As tradition says, فَقَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ وَيْحَكَ يَا قَتَادَةُ اِنَّمَا يَعْرِفُ الْقُرْآنَ مَنْ خُوطِبَ بِهِ (Kafi, vol. 8, p. 311, H. 485) Imam Muhammad Baqir (a.s.) said, “*Woe unto you, O Qataadah! Only the addressee of the Quran knows it.*”

There is absolutely no disagreement between the Shia and Ahl Tasannun scholars that the Holy Quran is NOT an ordinary book which can be understood by all and sundry. It is loaded with concepts, codes, hidden meanings, knowledge of the unseen, etc. So a scholar, who is not connected to the knowledge of the unseen, even if he is an expert in Arabic literature, cannot comprehend the Holy Quran. Only he can understand it whom the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) has taught its esoteric meanings; and he has taught none except the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 173, H. 2

Oyoon al-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 1, p. 239, Chapter 23, H.1 باب ذكر مجلس الرضاؑ مع المأمون في الفرق بين العترة و الأمة

# Knowledge of Quran is ONLY with the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

زُرَارَةَ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ فِي قَوْلِهِ فَسْئَلُوا اَهْلَ الذِّكْرِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ لا تَعْلَمُونَ مَنِ الْمُعَنْوَنُ بِذَلِكَ قَالَ نَحْنُ قُلْتُ فَاَنْتُمُ الْمَسْئُولُونَ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ وَ نَحْنُ السَّائِلُونَ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ فَعَلَيْنَا اَنْ نَسْاَلَكُمْ قَالَ نَعَمْ قُلْتُ وَ عَلَيْكُمْ اَنْ تُجِيبُونَا قَالَ لَا ذَاكَ اِلَيْنَا وَ اِنْ شِئْنَا فَعَلْنَا وَ اِنْ شِئْنَا تَرَكْنَا ثُمَّ قَالَ هذا عَطاؤُنا فَامْنُنْ اَوْ اَمْسِكْ بِغَيْرِ حِسابٍ‏

Zoraarah asked Imam Abu Jafar al-Baqer (a.s.) about the word of Allah, “**Ask the people of remembrance if you are not knowing**.” Who are implied by this?

He (a.s.) replied, “We.”

I inquired, “So you are the ones who should be asked?”

He (a.s.) replied, “Yes.”

I asked, “And we are the questioners?”

Again, he (a.s.) replied in the affirmative.

I questioned, “So, is it obligatory upon us to ask you?”

He (a.s.) said, “Yes.”

I asked, “Is it compulsory upon you to reply to us (our question)?”

He (a.s.) responded, “No. This is up to us. If we please, we will reply and if we please, we will leave it.” Then he (a.s.) recited the following verse, ‘This is our grant. So, give or withhold without any account’.”

## Note:

Here, the word remembrance is used in its first meaning viz. the Holy Quran. The people of Quran are those whose knowledge of Quran is complete, not based on whims and views which are certainly prone to errors. Thus, they should know the whole Quran, not part of it.

The last sentence is important. It is not necessary for the Imams (a.s.) to answer all questions. Allah has given them the Quran in its entirety. He has made it obligatory for the people to question but it’s not necessary for them (a.s.) to reply. They (a.s.) will see if it is ok to reply, they will do so; not otherwise. (Here, the example of giving money to Jaabir and Kumait can be given).

Imam (a.s.) quotes the verse from Quran about Prophet Sulaiman (a.s.). When for a lowly thing like worldly bounties, Allah has given the authority to Sulaiman to exercise his choice, then for a spiritual bounty like knowledge, Allah will not give the Ahle Bait (a.s.) authority?

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 174, H. 3

Tafseer Ali Ibn Ibraheem al-Qummi, vol. 2, p. 68

# Hallmarks of a Shia

عَنْ اَحْمَدَ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ قَالَ كَتَبَ اِلَيَّ اَبُو الْحَسَنِ الرِّضَاؑ عَافَانَا اللَّهُ وَ اِيَّاكَ اَحْسَنَ عَافِيَتِهِ اِنَّمَا شِيعَتُنَا مَنْ تَابَعَنَا وَ لَمْ يُخَالِفْنَا وَ اِذَا خِفْنَا خَافَ وَ اِذَا اَمِنَّا اَمِنَ قَالَ اللَّهُ فَسْئَلُوا اَهْلَ الذِّكْرِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ لا تَعْلَمُونَ وَ قَالَ فَلَوْ لا نَفَرَ مِنْ كُلِّ فِرْقَةٍ مِنْهُمْ طائِفَةٌ لِيَتَفَقَّهُوا فِي الدِّينِ وَ لِيُنْذِرُوا قَوْمَهُمْ الْآيَةَ فَقَدْ فُرِضَتْ عَلَيْكُمُ الْمَسْاَلَةُ وَ الرَّدُّ اِلَيْنَا وَ لَمْ يُفْرَضْ عَلَيْنَا الْجَوَابُ اَ وَ لَمْ تُنْهَوْا عَنْ كَثْرَةِ الْمَسَائِلِ فَاَبَيْتُمْ اَنْ تَنْتَهُوا اِيَّاكُمْ وَ ذَاكَ فَاِنَّهُ اِنَّمَا هَلَكَ مَنْ كَانَ قَبْلَكُمْ بِكَثْرَةِ سُؤَالِهِمْ لِاَنْبِيَائِهِمْ قَالَ اللَّهُ يا اَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لا تَسْئَلُوا عَنْ اَشْياءَ اِنْ تُبْدَ لَكُمْ تَسُؤْكُمْ‏

Ahmad Ibn Muhammad reports, “(Imam) Abu al-Hasan al-Reza (a.s.) wrote to me,

“May Allah keep us and you safe in the best of safety! Surely, our Shiite is the one who follows us and does not disobey us. When we are fearful, he is fearful and when we are safe, he is safe. Allah says, ‘Then ask the people of remembrance if you know not.’ And He says, “…then why does not a group among you go to acquire deep knowledge in religion and warn their nation (till the end of the verse).’ Indeed, He has made asking obligatory upon you and referring unto us but He has not made replying obligatory upon us. Have you not been prohibited from excessive questioning? But you refused to restrain yourself. Surely, many people before you have been destroyed due to their excessive questioning from their Prophets (a.s.). Allah says, ‘O you who believe! Don’t ask about things which if they are manifested for you, will hurt you.’

## Note:

Sometimes, in traditions, a word is used in its real and actual sense and at other times, it is used to show its higher or highest levels. For example, a tradition says,

قَالَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ لَا صَلَاةَ اِلَّا بِفَاتِحَةِ الْكِتَابِ

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said, “*No prayer is performed without the Surah Faatehah.*” Here, it is used in its real meaning.

But sometimes, it is used in its higher meanings like قَالَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ لَا صَلَاةَ لِجَارِ الْمَسْجِدِ اِلَّا فِي مَسْجِدِهِ The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) remarked, “*The prayer of a mosque’s neighbor will not be valid till he prays in the mosque.*” Here, it is only showing the importance of praying in a mosque. It does not mean that his prayer is void if he doesn’t pray in a mosque. It only implies that it will become more complete if he follows this advice. The same applies for the word Shia or Muslim or Momin or Muttaqi, etc. The more a person follows, the higher his position is. It doesn’t mean that if somebody does not follow 100% he is not a Shia.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 183, H. 44

Tafseer al-Ayyaashi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 261, H. 33

# Reins of Religion in the hands of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ مُوسَى بْنِ اَشْيَمَ قَالَ دَخَلْتُ عَلٰى اَبِي عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ فَسَاَلْتُهُ عَنْ مَسْاَلَةٍ فَاَجَابَنِي فِيهَا بِجَوَابٍ فَاَنَا جَالِسٌ اِذْ دَخَلَ رَجُلٌ فَسَاَلَهُ عَنْهَا بِعَيْنِهَا فَاَجَابَهُ بِخِلَافِ مَا اَجَابَنِي فَدَخَلَ رَجُلٌ آخَرُ فَسَاَلَهُ عَنْهَا بِعَيْنِهَا فَاَجَابَهُ بِخِلَافِ مَا اَجَابَنِي وَ خِلَافِ مَا اَجَابَ بِهِ صَاحِبِي فَفَزِعْتُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ وَ عَظُمَ عَلَيَّ فَلَمَّا خَرَجَ الْقَوْمُ نَظَرَ اِلَيَّ وَ قَالَ يَا ابْنَ اَشْيَمَ كَاَنَّكَ جَزِعْتَ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اِنَّمَا جَزِعْتُ مِنْ ثَلَاثَةِ اَقَاوِيلَ فِي مَسْاَلَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ فَقَالَ يَا ابْنَ اَشْيَمَ اِنَّ اللهَ فَوَّضَ اِلَى دَاوُدَ اَمْرَ مُلْكِهِ فَقَالَ هذا عَطاؤُنا فَامْنُنْ اَوْ اَمْسِكْ بِغَيْرِ حِسابٍ وَ فَوَّضَ اِلَى مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ اَمْرَ دِينِهِ فَقَالَ ما آتاكُمُ الرَّسُولُ فَخُذُوهُ وَ ما نَهاكُمْ عَنْهُ فَانْتَهُوا وَ اِنَّ اللهَ فَوَّضَ اِلَى الْاَئِمَّةِ مِنَّا وَ اِلَيْنَا مَا فَوَّضَ اِلَى مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ فَلَا تَجْزَعْ

Moosa Ibn Ashyam reports, “I went to Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) and asked him a question. He (a.s.) gave me a reply. I was sitting when another man entered and asked exactly the same question. Imam (a.s.) replied contrary to what he (a.s.) replied to me. Then, yet another man entered and asked precisely the same question. Now, Imam (a.s.) replied other than what he (a.s.) replied to me and the second person. I got frightened because of this and it was difficult for me to bear. When the people dispersed, he (a.s.) looked at me and said, ‘*O son of Ashyam! It seems you are restless*.’ I replied, ‘May I be held your ransom! I am restless due to the three (different) replies to one question’. He (a.s.) retorted, ‘*O son of Ashyam! Surely Allah delegated to Prophet Dawood the affairs of His kingdom and said, ‘***This is our grant. So, spend or withhold without reckoning.***’ And He delegated to Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) the affair of His religion and said, ‘***Whatever the Messenger gives you, take it and from whatever He restrains you, abstain from it***.’ Verily, Allah has delegated to the Imams (a.s.) from us and unto us whatever He has delegated unto Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). Hence, don’t be impatient’*.”

## Note:

Shariah laws are many and of various types. For example, ablutions for obligatory prayers is obligatory at the least. But if there is any excuse, then the ablutions will become prohibited and should be replaced with *tayammum*. Since the infallible Imams (a.s.) are having knowledge of the unseen, they guide the people accordingly. Sometimes, they say perform ablutions and at other times, they say do tayammum. For some in the gathering, they see the apparent contradiction and get confused. Imam (a.s.) has judged only for the facilitation for the questioner. Another thing is that many traditions have come that Allah trained His Prophet (s.a.w.a.); when the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was trained, Allah handed over the religion to him. Now, he has the power to relate the branches of Islam. Just like a professor at the university explains the basic laws and gives different problems to students to solve. Now many laws have been formulated by the Prophet (s.a.w.a.). For example, earlier all the daily prayers were two units each but the Greatest Prophet (s.a.w.a.) has increased some of them; noon and night prayers to four each and dusk to three. The Imams (a.s.) have this power to execute their legislative mastership. Thus, the Imams (a.s.) used to reply questioners of the same question with different answers, which were apparently contradictory to the naïve.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 185, H. 52

al-Ikhtesaas, p. 329

# Only the Imams (a.s.) are the bearers of Quranic sciences

عَنْ عَبْدِ الْعَزِيزِ الْعَبْدِيِّ قَالَ سَاَلْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ عَنْ قَوْلِ اللّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ بَلْ هُوَ آياتٌ بَيِّناتٌ فِي صُدُورِ الَّذِينَ اُوتُوا الْعِلْمَ قَالَ هُمُ الْاَئِمَّةُ مِنْ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ ص

Abd al-Aziz al-Abdi reports, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) about the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**Nay! It (the Quran) is a clear sign in the hearts of those who have been given the knowledge**’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘*They are the Imams from the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)*’.”

## Note:

The sciences of the Holy Quran are absolutely clear for those who are its addressees (i.e. the infallible Imams a.s.) and the students of such addressees. But for others, they don’t know except the apparent translation and are totally ignorant of its hidden meanings.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 189, H. 5

Kanz Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under this verse

# Knowledge of Shariah Laws is miniscule to the knowledge of the unseen (1)

بُرَيْدٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اِنَّ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ اَفْضَلُ الرَّاسِخِينَ فِي الْعِلْمِ فَقَدْ عَلِمَ جَمِيعَ مَا اَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ مِنَ التَّنْزِيلِ وَ التَّأْوِيلِ وَ مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُنْزِلَ عَلَيْهِ شَيْئاً لَمْ يُعَلِّمْهُ التَّأْوِيلَ وَ اَوْصِيَاؤُهُ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ يَعْلَمُونَهُ كُلَّهُ قَالَ قُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اِنَّ اَبَا الْخَطَّابِ كَانَ يَقُولُ فِيكُمْ قَوْلًا عَظِيماً قَالَ وَ مَا كَانَ يَقُولُ قُلْتُ قَالَ اِنَّكُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ عِلْمَ الْحَلَالِ وَ الْحَرَامِ وَ الْقُرْآنِ [فَقَالَ عِلْمُ الْحَلَالِ وَ الْحَرَامِ وَ الْقُرْآنِ‏] يَسِيرٌ فِي جَنْبِ الْعِلْمِ الَّذِي يَحْدُثُ بِاللَّيْلِ وَ النَّهَارِ

Buraid al-Ejli (r.a.) reports from Imam Muhammad al-Baqer (a.s.),

“Verily, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) was the most superior of those firmly entrenched in knowledge. Indeed, he (s.a.w.a.) knew all what Allah sent down upon him from the descent and the interpretation. It does not behove Allah that He sends down something upon him but does not teach him its interpretation. The successors after him know it in its entirety.”

I asked, “May I be held your ransom! Surely, Aba al-Khattaab used to say about you a great thing!” He (a.s.) asked, “What did he say?” I replied, “He said that you have the knowledge of the permissible and the prohibited and the Quran.” He (a.s.) retorted,

“The knowledge of the permissible and the prohibited and the Quran is insignificant in front of the knowledge which occurs day and night.”

## Note:

“Those firmly entrenched in knowledge” implies those who have the knowledge of the unseen and their knowledge is free of faults and deficiencies.

It is worth paying attention that according to the Holy Quran itself, “There is not a wet thing nor a dry thing but that it is in the Open Book.” It comprises of all the knowledge. Its apparent indicates about some things and its concealed conveys others. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his successors (a.s.) possess this knowledge in its entirety. This is indeed an amazing aspect of the knowledge of the unseen if one reflects over it!

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 192, H. 15

Tafseer Ali Ibn Ibraheem al-Qummi (r.a.) under this verse

# Knowledge of Shariah Laws is miniscule to the knowledge of the unseen (2)

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ كَلَامٌ قَدْ سَمِعْتُهُ مِنْ اَبِي الْخَطَّابِ فَقَالَ اعْرِضْهُ عَلَيَّ فَقُلْتُ يَقُولُ اِنَّكُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ الْحَلَالَ وَ الْحَرَامَ وَ فَصْلَ مَا بَيْنَ النَّاسِ فَسَكَتَ فَلَمَّا اَرَدْتُ الْقِيَامَ اَخَذَ بِيَدِي فَقَالَ يَا مُحَمَّدُ عِلْمُ الْحَلَالِ وَ الْحَرَامِ يَسِيرٌ فِي جَنْبِ الْعِلْمِ الَّذِي يَحْدُثُ فِي اللَّيْلِ وَ النَّهَارِ

Muhammad Ibn Muslim (r.a.) reports, “I said to Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) that I have heard some talk from Abu al-Khattaab.” He (a.s.) replied, “Tell me about it.” I informed, “He says that surely you know the permissible and the prohibited and the judgments among the people.” He (a.s.) kept quiet. When I intended to get up, he (a.s.) held my hand and said,

“O Muhammad! The knowledge of the permissible and the prohibited is insignificant in front of the knowledge which occurs in the night and the day.”

## Note:

Abu al-Khattaab was a narrator from the infallible guides (a.s.) but later deviated from the right path. The infallible Imams (a.s.) denounced him and informed the people about their distancing from him. They even cursed him. After the Imams (a.s.) deprecated him, informed the people about it and cursed him, people who had heard traditions from him came to the Imams (a.s.) to verify the veracity of what he had said so that false traditions don’t permeate in the Shiite literature.

The Imams (a.s.) knew the unseen and it was not difficult for them to know it.

The knowledge of the Imams (a.s.) is in a state of constant upgradation by Allah, day and night, in this world as well as the hereafter.

Insignificant here means that the knowledge of the permissible and prohibited may be difficult for the ordinary scholars whose knowledge is acquired but for the Imams (a.s.), whose knowledge is divine, it is not difficult at all. The ordinary scholars have to strive to derive edicts from the texts. Jurisprudence is great but when compared to the knowledge of the Imams (a.s.), it is truly insignificant.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 192, H. 15

Al-Ikhtesaas of Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Noman famous as al-Mufeed (r.a.)

# Infinite Knowledge of the Imams (a.s.)

يَعْقُوبَ بْنِ جَعْفَرٍ قَالَ كُنْتُ مَعَ اَبِي الْحَسَنِؑ بِمَكَّةَ فَقَالَ لَهُ رَجُلٌ اِنَّكَ لَتُفَسِّرُ مِنْ كِتَابِ اللّهِ مَا لَمْ تَسْمَعْ بِهِ فَقَالَ اَبُو الْحَسَنِ عَلَيْنَا نَزَلَ قَبْلَ النَّاسِ وَ لَنَا فُسِّرَ قَبْلَ اَنْ يُفَسَّرَ فِي النَّاسِ فَنَحْنُ نَعْرِفُ حَلَالَهُ وَ حَرَامَهُ وَ نَاسِخَهُ وَ مَنْسُوخَهُ وَ سَفَرِيَّهُ وَ حَضَرِيَّهُ وَ فِي اَيِّ لَيْلَةٍ نَزَلَتْ كَمْ مِنْ آيَةٍ وَ فِيمَنْ نَزَلَتْ وَ فِيمَا نَزَلَتْ فَنَحْنُ حُكَمَاءُ اللّهِ فِي اَرْضِهِ وَ شُهَدَاؤُهُ عَلٰى خَلْقِهِ وَ هُوَ قَوْلُ اللّهِ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى سَتُكْتَبُ شَهادَتُهُمْ وَ يُسْئَلُونَ فَالشَّهَادَةُ لَنَا وَ الْمَسْاَلَةُ لِلْمَشْهُودِ عَلَيْهِ فَهَذَا عِلْمُ مَا قَدْ اَنْهَيْتُهُ اِلَيْكَ وَ اَدَّيْتُهُ اِلَيْكَ مَا لَزِمَنِي فَاِنْ قَبِلْتَ فَاشْكُرْ وَ اِنْ تَرَكْتَ فَ اِنَّ اللهَ عَلى‏ كُلِّ شَيْ‏ءٍ شَهِيدٌ

Yaqub Ibn Ja’far reports: I was with Imam Abu al-Hasan al-Kazem (a.s.) at Makkah when a man told him, “You interpret the Book of Allah what you have not heard.” Imam Abu al-Hasan (a.s.) replied,

“It was revealed upon us before the people. It was interpreted for us before its interpretation among the people. So, we know the verses concerning the permissible and prohibited, its abrogating and abrogated verses, those which were revealed during the stay in cities and those during the journeys, in which night how many verses were revealed, about whom it was revealed and about what it was revealed. We are Allah’s sages in His earth, His witnesses on His creatures and this is the word of Allah, ‘Soon their testimonies shall be written and they will be asked’. So the testimonies are for us and the questioning is against whom we testify. This is the knowledge that I am conveying to you and transferring to you whatever was binding on me. If you accept, then be thankful and if you abandon, then surely Allah is having power over all things.”

## Note:

The man tries to imply that the knowledge of the Imam (a.s.) is like that of the ordinary people. Imam (a.s.) clarifies for him that this is not the case.

The mention of night is important because during the day the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) was with the people but during the night, he would be alone and only his Ahle Bait (a.s.) viz. the four pure ones (a.s.) were aware of the angel’s descent.

We are Allah’s sages means that our wisdom is from Allah and hence, perfect, complete and devoid of all deficiencies.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 196, H. 26

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 198, H. 4, Chapter 8

# Ali (a.s.) – The Miracle of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)

عَنِ الثُّمَالِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ اِنَّ عَلِيّاً آيَةٌ لِمُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ وَ اِنَّ مُحَمَّداً يَدْعُو اِلَى وَلَايَةِ عَلِيٍّ ع

Abu Hamzah al-Thumaali (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Ja’far al-Baqer (a.s.) said,

“Surely, Ali (a.s.) was a miracle for Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and surely Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) invited towards the mastership of Ali (a.s.).”

## Note:

In a university, there are several professors and they vary in knowledge and experience. How do we come to know which professor is greater in knowledge and better than others? There are various ways and one of them is through the students. If the students are more knowledgeable and have deeper understanding than students of other professors, you come to know that this professor is better.

Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) was the sign of the greatness of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) vis-à-vis knowledge and other perfections. He (a.s.) was the self of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.). When Ali (a.s.) is so knowledgeable, you can understand how great his teacher must be?

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) invited the people towards the mastership of Ali (a.s.). Wasn’t he (s.a.w.a.) truthful? Definitely, he was truthful and even the pagans acknowledged this fact. So, if the mastership of Ali (a.s.) was not good or right for the people, he (s.a.w.a.) would never have invited the people towards it.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 208, H. 11

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 71, H. 5, Chapter 7

# Deeds not acceptable without Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

يُونُسَ بْنِ خَبَّابٍ عَنِ الْبَاقِرِ عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ مَا بَالُ اَقْوَامٍ اِذَا ذَكَرُوا آلَ اِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ آلَ عِمْرَانَ اسْتَبْشَرُوا وَ اِذَا ذَكَرُوا آلَ مُحَمَّدٍ اشْمَاَزَّتْ قُلُوبُهُمْ وَ الَّذِي نَفْسُ مُحَمَّدٍ بِيَدِهِ لَوْ اَنَّ اَحَدَهُمْ وَافَى بِعَمَلِ سَبْعِينَ نَبِيّاً يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مَا قَبِلَ اللَّهُ مِنْهُ حَتَّى يُوَافِيَ بِوَلَايَتِي وَ وَلَايَةِ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ

Yunus Ibn Khabbaab reports from Imam al-Baqer (a.s.) vide his forefathers (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“What is wrong with the people? When they mention the progeny of Ibraheem and the progeny of Imran, they rejoice. But when they mention the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), their hearts start trembling. I swear by the One in whose hand is Muhammad’s life! If any one of them brings the acts of seventy Prophets (a.s.) on the Day of Judgment, Allah will not accept from him till he brings my mastership and the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.).”

## Note:

When Allah is the Truth and the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) is truthful, then why do the opponents feel like that? It means in reality they don’t believe in the truthfulness of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Mastership is the condition. If a Christian believes in all Prophets (a.s.) but does not believe in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), will his religion be accepted? The same applies for the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 208, H. 11

Kanz Jaame’ al-Fawaaed, p. 112 under verse of Surah Aale Imran

# Holy Prophet’s (s.a.w.a.) Will to Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ دَخَلْتُ عَلٰى اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فَقُلْتُ يَا اَبَا الْحَسَنِ اَخْبِرْنِي بِمَا اَوْصَى اِلَيْكَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ قَالَ سَاُخْبِرُكُمْ اِنَّ اللهَ اصْطَفَى لَكُمُ الدِّينَ وَ ارْتَضَاهُ وَ اَتَمَّ نِعْمَتَهُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَ كُنْتُمْ اَحَقَّ بِها وَ اَهْلَها وَ اِنَّ اللهَ اَوْحَى اِلَى نَبِيِّهِ اَنْ يُوصِيَ اِلَيَّ فَقَالَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ يَا عَلِيُّ احْفَظْ وَصِيَّتِي وَ ارْعَ ذِمَامِي وَ اَوْفِ بِعَهْدِي وَ اَنْجِزْ عِدَاتِي وَ اقْضِ دَيْنِي وَ اَحْيِ سُنَّتِي وَ ادْعُ اِلَى مِلَّتِي لِاَنَّ اللهَ تَعَالَى اصْطَفَانِي وَ اخْتَارَنِي فَذَكَرْتُ دَعْوَةَ اَخِي مُوسَى فَقُلْتُ اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْ لِي وَزِيراً مِنْ اَهْلِي كَمَا جَعَلْتَ هَارُونَ مِنْ مُوسَى فَاَوْحَى اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اِلَيَّ اَنَّ عَلِيّاً وَزِيرُكَ وَ نَاصِرُكَ وَ الْخَلِيفَةُ مِنْ بَعْدِكَ ثُمَّ يَا عَلِيُّ اَنْتَ مِنْ اَئِمَّةِ الْهُدَى وَ اَوْلَادُكَ مِنْكَ فَاَنْتُمْ قَادَةُ الْهُدَى وَ التُّقَى وَ الشَّجَرَةُ الَّتِي اَنَا اَصْلُهَا وَ اَنْتُمْ فَرْعُهَا فَمَنْ تَمَسَّكَ بِهَا فَقَدْ نَجَا وَ مَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهَا فَقَدْ هَلَكَ وَ هَوَى وَ اَنْتُمُ الَّذِينَ اَوْجَبَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى مَوَدَّتَكُمْ وَ وَلَايَتَكُمْ وَ الَّذِينَ ذَكَرَهُمُ اللَّهُ فِي كِتَابِهِ وَ وَصَفَهُمْ لِعِبَادِهِ فَقَالَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ مِنْ قَائِلٍ اِنَّ اللهَ اصْطَفى‏ آدَمَ وَ نُوحاً وَ آلَ اِبْراهِيمَ وَ آلَ عِمْرانَ عَلَى الْعالَمِينَ ذُرِّيَّةً بَعْضُها مِنْ بَعْضٍ وَ اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ فَاَنْتُمْ صَفْوَةُ اللّهِ مِنْ آدَمَ وَ نُوحٍ وَ آلِ اِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ آلِ عِمْرَانَ وَ اَنْتُمُ الْاُسْرَةُ مِنْ اِسْمَاعِيلَ وَ الْعِتْرَةُ الْهَادِيَةُ مِنْ مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ عَلَيْهِمْ

Ibn Abbas reports: I went to Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and said to him, “O Aba al-Hasan! Inform me what the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) has willed unto you.” He (a.s.) said,

“Soon I shall inform you. Surely, Allah chose for you the religion and selected it and completed His bounties upon you while you were deserving it and worthy of it. Verily, Allah revealed to His Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that he (s.a.w.a.) should will unto me. So the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘O Ali! Preserve my will, observe my agreements, fulfil my promises, repay my loans, enliven my Sunnah and call towards my religion. For, Allah – the High – chose me and selected me. So, I remembered the prayer of my brother (Prophet) Moosa (a.s.) and I said, ‘O Allah! Appoint for me a minister from my family’ like you appoint Haroon for Moosa. Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – revealed to me, ‘Surely, Ali is your minister, your helper and your Caliph after you.’ Then, O Ali, you are from the Imams of guidance and your descendants are from you. So all of you are the leaders of guidance and piety and the tree, whose root I am and you are its branch. So whoever fastens unto it (the tree), then indeed he will be saved and whoever lags behind, then indeed he will be destroyed and perished. You are those whose love and mastership Allah – the High – has made obligatory and Allah has remembered him in His Book and described them for His servants. So, Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – said, ‘Surely Allah chose Adam, Noah, the progeny of Abraham and the progeny of Imran upon the worlds; (they are) descendants of each other. And Allah is the All-Hearing, the All-Knowing.’ You are the chosen ones of Allah from Adam, Noah, the progeny of Abraham and the progeny of Imran. You are the family of Ismaaeel and the guiding progeny from Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)”

## Note:

The above tradition is important and its importance increases due to its narrator being Ibn Abbas.

The people in general and the Muslims in particular get their lineage from their fathers and not mothers. For example, if a person’s father is from Baghdad and his mother is from Basra, he will called as Baghdadi and not Basri. But in the case of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), Allah has made an exception. Of course, Imam Hasan and Husain (a.s.) were the sons of Ali (a.s.) but here, Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.) have made an exception that they are also called as the sons of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).

There is a difference between guidance and piety. A person may be guided but may not be pious. Imams (a.s.) lead the people towards both.

Again, there is a difference between هلك and هوي. Halaka means destroyed and Hawaa means collapse. Destruction in this world, Barzakh and the hereafter. But collapse means punishment. Sometimes destruction may be without punishment. For example, a person meets with a car accident and is killed. But this is not punishment because it is not his fault. But hawaa means destruction with punishment.

When the storm of Prophet Noah (a.s.) came, only those who boarded the ark were saved and others were destroyed. Now, when they alighted from the ark, they married and had children. Hence, the entire human kind is the progeny of Adam and Noah, including tyrants like Namrood, Firaon, Yazid, Saddam, etc.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 221, H. 24

Ta’veel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah, p. 112 under the verse of Surah Aale Imran

# Prophet Ibrahim’s (a.s.) invocation

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ فِي قَوْلِ اللّهِ يَحْكِي قَوْلَ اِبْرَاهِيمَ خَلِيلِ اللّهِ رَبَّنا اِنِّي اَسْكَنْتُ مِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِي بِوادٍ غَيْرِ ذِي زَرْعٍ عِنْدَ بَيْتِكَ الْمُحَرَّمِ اِلَى آخِرِ الْقِصَّةِ فَقَالَؑ مَا قَالَ اِلَيْهِ يَعْنِي الْبَيْتَ مَا قَالَ اِلَّا اِلَيْهِمْ اَ فَتَرَوْنَ اَنَّ اللهَ فَرَضَ عَلَيْكُمْ اِتْيَانَ هَذِهِ الْاَحْجَارِ وَ التَّمَسُّحَ بِهَا وَ لَمْ يَفْرُضْ عَلَيْكُمْ اِتْيَانَنَا وَ سُؤَالَنَا وَ حُبَّنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ اللّهِ مَا فَرَضَ عَلَيْكُمْ غَيْرَهُ

From Imam Baqir (a.s.) concerning Allah’s word – expressing the words of Ibrahim, the friend of Allah (a.s.), “Our Lord! Surely I have settled a part of my offspring in a valley unproductive of fruit near Thy Sacred House, our Lord! That they may keep up prayer; therefore make the hearts of some people yearn towards them and provide them with fruits; haply they may be grateful.”[[2]](#footnote-2) He (a.s.) said,

“He (Allah) did not say, ‘towards him’ i.e. the House. Rather, He said, ‘Towards them’. Do you think that Allah made obligatory upon you to come to these stones and to wipe (yourselves) with them but did not make obligatory upon you to come to us, ask us and the love of us Ahl al-Bait? By Allah! He did not make obligatory upon you except this.”

## Note:

From the progeny of Ibrahim (a.s.) are the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.). Imam (a.s.) says that Ibrahim (a.s.) prayed that Allah should make the hearts of the people inclined towards his progeny and not the Ka’bah. Why? The reason being the ‘Allah’s Emissary’ (سفيرالله) is greater than His House (بيت الله). The latter was material and later became holy due to its attachment with Allah but the emissary of Allah was created holy.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 224, H. 39

Tafseer-o-Furaat Ibn Ibrahim al-Kufi, p. 223 under the above verse

# Followers of Ahle Bait (a.s.) are their progeny

عُمَرَ بْنِ يَزِيدَ قَالَ قَالَ لِي اَبُو عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ اَنْتُمْ وَ اللّهِ مِنْ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ قُلْتُ مِنْ اَنْفُسِهِمْ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ قَالَ نَعَمْ وَ اللّهِ مِنْ اَنْفُسِهِمْ قَالَهَا ثَلَاثاً ثُمَّ نَظَرَ اِلَيَّ وَ نَظَرْتُ اِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ يَا عُمَرُ اِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يَقُولُ فِي كِتَابِهِ اِنَّ اَوْلَى النَّاسِ بِاِبْراهِيمَ لَلَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوهُ وَ هذَا النَّبِيُّ وَ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَ اللَّهُ وَلِيُّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

Umar Ibn Yazid reports, “Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) told me, ‘By Allah! You are from the progeny of Muhammad.’ I asked, ‘From themselves, may I be held your ransom?’ He (a.s.) retorted, ‘Yes, by Allah, from themselves.’ And he (a.s.) repeated this thrice. Thereafter, he (a.s.) looked at me and I looked at him. He (a.s.) said,

‘O Umar! Surely, Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – says in His Book, Verily the closest to Ibrahim of the people are those who follow him and this Prophet and those who believed. And Allah is the Master of the believers’**[[3]](#footnote-3)**.”

## Note:

The Saadaat (i.e. the progeny of the infallible guides a.s.) should all be revered. But if a person follows the Ahle Bait (a.s.), should he also be revered? Yes. In fact, the value of following is more than the value of lineage (قيمة اتباع اكثر من قيمة انتساب). For example, if a non-sayyed is of the level of Salman (r.a.), should he be revered or not? Here, Imam Sadeq (a.s.) laid down a very important principle, He (a.s.) said, “Those who follow him (s.a.w.a.) are the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).”

Also, if a Sayyed commits sins, his punishment is double than that of a non-Sayyed.

## References:

Behaar, vol. 23, p. 225, H. 43

Majma’ al-Bayan under the verse

# Love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) – Wage for Messengership

عَنِ الْحَاكِمِ اَبِي الْقَاسِمِ الْحَسْكَانِيِّ عَنِ الْقَاضِي اَبِي بَكْرٍ الْحِيرِيِّ [الْحِمْيَرِيِ‏] عَنْ اَبِي الْعَبَّاسِ الضُّبَعِيِّ عَنِ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ زِيَادٍ السَّرِيِّ عَنْ يَحْيَى بْنِ عَبْدِ الْحَمِيدِ الْحِمَّانِيِّ عَنْ حُسَيْنٍ الْاَشْتَرِ عَنْ قَيْسٍ عَنِ الْاَعْمَشِ عَنِ ابْنِ جُبَيْرٍ عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ لَمَّا نَزَلَتْ قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْراً الْآيَةَ قَالُوا يَا رَسُولَ اللّهِ مَنْ هَؤُلَاءِ الَّذِينَ اُمِرْنَا بِمَوَدَّتِهِمْ قَالَ عَلِيٌّ وَ فَاطِمَةُ وَ وُلْدُهُمَا

Al-Haakim al-Haskaani narrates vide his chain of narrators that when the verse, “Say I don’t ask you any reward for my prophethood except the love of my closest relatives” Ibn Abbas reports, “The people asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah! Who are these we are ordered to love them?’ He (s.a.w.a.) replied, “Ali, Fatima and their progeny.”

## Note:

In other traditions, in the same reference, the names Imam Hasan (a.s.) and Imam Husain (a.s.) have also come.

Hakim Haskani is a well-known scholar of Ahl Tasannun. He is from Haskaan which is in Neshapour in Iran. The narrator is Ibn Abbas, which shows the importance of the narration.

It is obvious that Allah has not ordered to love the relatives who were sinners, transgressors and disbelievers. He also did not order to love the relatives who were ordinary believers. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) clearly specified those who ought to be loved.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 229

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel of Al-Haakim al-Haskaani, vol. 2, p. 193 under the verse.

# Hell is the fate without Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

فِي كِتَابِ شَوَاهِدِ التَّنْزِيلِ مَرْفُوعاً اِلَى اَبِي اُمَامَةَ الْبَاهِلِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ اِنَّ اللهَ تَعَالَى خَلَقَ الْاَنْبِيَاءَ مِنْ اَشْجَارٍ شَتَّى وَ خُلِقْتُ اَنَا وَ عَلِيٌّ مِنْ شَجَرَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ فَاَنَا اَصْلُهَا وَ عَلِيٌّ فَرْعُهَا وَ الْحَسَنُ وَ الْحُسَيْنُ ثِمَارُهَا وَ اَشْيَاعُنَا اَوْرَاقُنَا فَمَنْ تَعَلَّقَ بِغُصْنٍ مِنْ اَغْصَانِهَا نَجَا وَ مَنْ زَاغَ هَوَى وَ لَوْ اَنَّ عَبْداً عَبَدَ اللهَ بَيْنَ الصَّفَا وَ الْمَرْوَةِ اَلْفَ عَامٍ ثُمَّ اَلْفَ عَامٍ ثُمَّ اَلْفَ عَامٍ حَتَّى يَصِيرَ كَالشَّنِّ الْبَالِي ثُمَّ لَمْ يُدْرِكْ مَحَبَّتَنَا اَكَبَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلٰى مَنْخِرَيْهِ فِي النَّارِ ثُمَّ تَلَا قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْراً اِلَّا الْمَوَدَّةَ فِي الْقُرْبى‏

Al-Haakim al-Haskaani records on the authority of Abu Amaamah al-Baaheli who reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) declared,

“Surely, Allah – the High – created the Prophets from various trees but I and Ali were created from one tree. So, I am its root, Ali is its branch, Hasan and Husain are its fruits and our Shiites are its leaves. Whoever fastens unto any of its branches will be saved and whoever deviates will be deviated. If a person worships Allah between Safaa and Marwah for a thousand years, then again a thousand years, till he becomes like a worn-out skin but does not love us, Allah will throw him on his face in the hell-fire.”

Then, he (a.s.) recited the verse of Surah Shura.

## Note:

The above tradition shows that Ali (a.s.) was not from the companions, narrators, students, etc. of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), although all these traits fitted him. He was the self of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

A good deed is a good deed but if it is performed in a blessed place, its value increases. Hence, the mention of the two blessed hills of Safaa and Marwah.

Without the love of Ahle Bait (a.s.), all the worship is useless – regardless of its quantity – and the person is eligible for hell.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 230

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel under the verse

# Love and Obedience

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ اَنَّ رَسُولَ اللّهِ ﷺ حِينَ قَدِمَ الْمَدِينَةَ وَ اسْتَحْكَمَ الْاِسْلَامَ قَالَتِ الْاَنْصَارُ فِيمَا بَيْنَهُمْ يَأْتِي رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ فَنَقُولُ لَهُ تَعْرُوكَ اُمُورٌ فَهَذِهِ اَمْوَالُنَا فَاحْكُمْ فِيهَا غَيْرَ حَرِجٍ وَ لَا مَحْظُورٍ عَلَيْكَ فَاَتَوْهُ فِي ذَلِكَ فَنَزَلَ قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْراً اِلَّا الْمَوَدَّةَ فِي الْقُرْبى‏ فَقَرَاَهَا عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَالَ تَوَدُّونَ قَرَابَتِي مِنْ بَعْدِي فَخَرَجُوا مِنْ عِنْدِهِ مُسَلِّمِينَ لِقَوْلِهِ فَقَالَ الْمُنَافِقُونَ اِنَّ هَذَا لَشَيْ‏ءٌ افْتَرَاهُ فِي مَجْلِسِهِ اَرَادَ بِذَلِكَ اَنْ يُذَلِّلَنَا لِقَرَابَتِهِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَنَزَلَتْ اَمْ يَقُولُونَ افْتَرى‏ عَلَى اللّهِ كَذِباً فَاَرْسَلَ اِلَيْهِمْ فَتَلَاهَا عَلَيْهِمْ فَبَكَوْا وَ اشْتَدَّ عَلَيْهِمْ فَاَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ وَ هُوَ الَّذِي يَقْبَلُ التَّوْبَةَ عَنْ عِبادِهِ الْآيَةَ فَاَرْسَلَ فِي اَثَرِهِمْ فَبَشَّرَهُمْ قَالَ وَ يَسْتَجِيبُ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَ هُمُ الَّذِينَ سَلَّمُوا لِقَوْلِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ تَعَالَى وَ مَنْ يَقْتَرِفْ حَسَنَةً نَزِدْ لَهُ فِيها حُسْناً اَيْ مَنْ فَعَلَ طَاعَةً نَزِدْ لَهُ فِي تِلْكَ الطَّاعَةِ حُسْناً بِاَنْ نُوجِبَ لَهُ الثَّوَاب

Ibn Abbas reports, “When the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) came to Madinah and Islam became strong, the Ansar said among themselves, ‘When the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) comes we will say, ‘Affairs (of Islam like battles) have put you in hardships. This is our wealth. You can use it as you will without any restriction and prohibition upon you’. They came with this intention. At this point, the verse, ‘Say: I don’t ask you for any reward but that you love my closest relatives’ was revealed. He (s.a.w.a.) recited it for them and said, ‘Love my relatives after me.’ They went away submitting to his advice. The hypocrites insinuated, ‘This is a lie which he has forged in his gathering. By this, he intends to subjugate us before his relatives after him.’ Immediately, the following verse was revealed, ‘Or are they saying that he has forged a lie against Allah?’ He (s.a.w.a.) called for them and recited for them the verse. They cried. He (s.a.w.a.) became even more severe upon them. At which, the verse, ‘And He is the One Who accepts the repentance from His servants… (Till the end of the verse)’ was revealed, due to which, he (s.a.w.a.) sent for them and gave them glad-tidings. ‘And He answers those who believe…’ and these were those who had submitted to his word. Thereafter, Allah the High said, ‘Whoever earns a good deed, We will increase for him in it a goodness…” yes, whoever does an act of obedience, we will increase for him in this act of obedience a goodness i.e. We will make him eligible for reward.”

## Note:

One of the important prerequisites of love is obedience. Hadis says, ان المحب لمن يحب مطيع ‘*Surely the lover obeys the one whom he loves’*. If someone loves the Ahle Bait (a.s.), he must obey them.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 231

Ta’veel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah, p. 531 under the verse of Surah Shura, Verse 23

# Status of one who dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)

عَنِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ اَنَّهُ قَالَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ شَهِيداً اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ مَغْفُوراً لَهُ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ تَائِباً اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ مُؤْمِناً مُسْتَكْمِلَ الْاِيمَانِ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ بَشَّرَهُ مَلَكُ الْمَوْتِ بِالْجَنَّةِ ثُمَّ مُنْكَرٌ وَ نَكِيرٌ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ يُزَفُّ اِلَى الْجَنَّةِ كَمَا تُزَفُّ الْعَرُوسُ اِلَى بَيْتِ زَوْجِهَا اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ فُتِحَ لَهُ فِي قَبْرِهِ بَابَانِ اِلَى الْجَنَّةِ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ جَعَلَ اللَّهُ قَبْرَهُ مَزَارَ مَلَائِكَةِ الرَّحْمَةِ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى حُبِّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ عَلَى السُّنَّةِ وَ الْجَمَاعَةِ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى بُغْضِ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ جَاءَ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مَكْتُوبٌ بَيْنَ عَيْنَيْهِ آيِسٌ مِنْ رَحْمَةِ اللّهِ اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى بُغْضِ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مَاتَ كَافِراً اَلَا وَ مَنْ مَاتَ عَلٰى بُغْضِ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَمْ يَشَمَّ رَائِحَةَ الْجَنَّة

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said, “Whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad dies a martyr; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad dies a forgiven one; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad dies a repentant one; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad dies a believer whose faith is complete; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad the angel of death will give him glad-tidings of paradise, followed by Munkar and Nakeer (in giving glad-tidings); know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad he will be carried to Paradise like a bride is carried to the house of her groom; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad two doors to Paradise are opened for him in his grave; know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad Allah will make his grave as a place of visitation for the angels of mercy; and know that whoever dies on the love of the progeny of Muhammad dies on the Sunnah and the Jam’ah; know that whoever dies on the hatred of the progeny of Muhammad will come on the Day of Judgment while it is written on his forehead ‘He has despaired from the mercy of Allah’; know that whoever dies on the hatred of the progeny of Muhammad dies an unbeliever; know that whoever dies on the hatred of the progeny of Muhammad will not even smell the fragrance of Paradise.”

## Note:

To understand the meaning of the above narration, one must read the importance of a martyr in the books of traditions, like Baab Fazl al-Shahaadah in Kaafi.

His faith will become perfect in one flash, even if he was not having proper faith. Obviously, such narrations are difficult to digest but they are as they are.

Zaffa – yazuffu means the angels will take him in congregation with a lot of care.

Sunnah implies the word, act or silence of infallible guides (a.s.).

Human co-operation, congregation and large numbers help only in wordly matters but not in divine affairs. If all humans gather together on a false matter, will it be correct? No. In Islam, the criterion for consensus is truth.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 233

Tafseer al-Kashshaaf of Abul Qasim Mahmood Ibn Umar al-Zamakhshari – a well-known scholar of the Ahl Tasannun.

# Who are the closest relatives?

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَالَ لَمَّا نَزَلَتِ الْآيَةُ قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْراً اِلَّا الْمَوَدَّةَ فِي الْقُرْبى‏ قُلْتُ يَا رَسُولَ اللّهِ مَنْ قَرَابَتُكَ الَّذِينَ افْتَرَضَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْنَا مَوَدَّتَهُمْ قَالَ عَلِيٌّ وَ فَاطِمَةُ وَ وُلْدُهُمَا ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ يَقُولُهَا

Ibn Abbas reports, “When the verse ‘Say: I don’t ask you any reward for it except the love of my closest relatives’ was revealed, I asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah! Who are your closest relatives those love Allah has made obligatory upon us?’ He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘Ali, Fatima and their children.’ He (s.a.w.a.) repeated this statement thrice.”

## Note:

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) emphasized the point by repeating the statement thrice.

If the beloved is not infallible, he may be a transgressor, sinner or even unbeliever. Hence, it is important and necessary that they should be infallible. The general leaders of the world (apparently Muslims) are sinners and transgressors and in some cases, not even Muslims. Allah says in the Holy Quran ‘**Whoever does not judge with whatever Allah has revealed he is a disbeliever**.’

Even if a person is just in its jurisprudential application, it is not necessary that he is always keeping away from sins. How can Allah order to obey and love such a person who may sometimes commit sins?

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 241, H. 12

Tafseer Furaat Ibn Ibrahim under the verse

# The Narration of the Cloak

رَوَى الثَّعْلَبِيُّ فِي تَفْسِيرِ هَذِهِ الْآيَةِ تَعْيِينَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ مِنْ طُرُقٍ فَمِنْهَا عَنْ اُمِّ سَلَمَةَ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللّهِ ﷺ اَنَّهُ قَالَ لِفَاطِمَةَ ايتِنِي [ايتِينِي‏] بِزَوْجِكِ وَ ابْنَيْكِ فَاَتَتْ بِهِمْ فَاَلْقَى عَلَيْهِمْ كِسَاءً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ يَدَهُ عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَالَ اللَّهُمَّ هَؤُلَاءِ آلُ مُحَمَّدٍ فَاجْعَلْ صَلَوَاتِكَ وَ بَرَكَاتِكَ عَلٰى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ فَاِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ قَالَتْ فَرَفَعْتُ الْكِسَاءَ لِاَدْخُلَ مَعَهُمْ فَاجْتَذَبَهُ وَ قَالَ اِنَّكِ لَعَلَى خَيْرٍ

Al-Tha’labi – the famous commentator of Ahl Tasannun– in his exegesis under the verse of purification reports on the authority of Umm Salmah – one of the best wives of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) after Hazrat Khadijah (s.a.) – from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) who said to Fatima (s.a.), “Bring to me your husband and your two sons.” She brought them. He (s.a.w.a.) put a cloak on them. Thereafter, he (s.a.w.a.) put his hand above them and invoked, “O Allah! These are the progeny of Muhammad. So put Your salutations and blessings upon the progeny of Muhammad. Surely, You are the Praiseworthy, the Majestic.” She (Umm Salmah) says, “I raised the cloak so that I could be with them.” He (s.a.w.a.) put me away saying, ‘Surely, you are on goodness (but not deserving to be in this cloak’.”

## Note:

This narration is called as the Hadis al-Kisaa. The reason for putting the cloak was to bring in exclusivity, so that none else in the house could claim being one of them. Remember, Umm Salmah (r.a.) was greater in position than an ordinary just and righteous person.

But in its exclusive meaning it implies the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.) including the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).

Another point is that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said, “…*upon Aale Muhammad*” when he (s.a.w.a.) could have said “…upon them’. The answer is that if he would have used the pronoun it would be restricted to the people under the cloak. But his repeating the progeny of Muhammad implied that it was for all the infallible ones from their progeny who are having all the perfections which the other four in the cloak had like wilayat takveeni, wilayat tashreei, tayyul arz, ilm ghaib, etc. i.e. those Imams (a.s.) who were not yet born.

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 250, H. 24 narrating from sources of Ahl Tasannun.

# Two Lights of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

عَنْ كَعْبِ بْنِ عِيَاضٍ قَالَ طَعَنْتُ عَلٰى عَلِيٍّؑ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ رَسُولِ اللّهِ ﷺ فَوَكَزَنِي فِي صَدْرِي ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا كَعْبُ اِنَّ لِعَلِيٍّؑ نُورَيْنِ نُوراً فِي السَّمَاءِ وَ نُوراً فِي الْاَرْضِ فَمَنْ تَمَسَّكَ بِنُورِهِ اَدْخَلَهُ اللهُ الْجَنَّةَ وَ مَنْ اَخْطَاَهُ اَدْخَلَهُ النَّارَ فَبَشِّرِ النَّاسَ عَنِّي بِذٰلِكَ

Ka’b Ibn Eyaaz reports, “I criticized Ali in front of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). So he (s.a.w.a.) boxed me in my chest and said,

‘O Ka’b! Surely for Ali (a.s.) there are two lights; one light in the sky and the other in the earth. Whoever fastens unto his light, Allah will make him enter paradise and whoever finds faults with him, Allah will make him enter hell. So give glad tidings to the people from my side about this.”

## Note:

Please bear in mind that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was at the highest pinnacle of ethics. And yet he (s.a.w.a.) boxed Ka’b for this act of insolence. وكز means to box as has come in the Holy Quran فَوَكَزَهُ مُوسى‏ فَقَضى‏ عَلَيْهِ (Surah Qasas: Verse 15) “**So Musa boxed him and killed him**.”

Also remember that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) does not do anything from his side. If he (s.a.w.a.) has boxed Ka’b, then you can imagine what Allah the High will do to this insolent fool?

Light in the skies means for the angels. Ali (a.s.) is a source of guidance for them. So whoever fastens to the light of guidance of Ali (a.s.), Allah the Merciful will cause him to enter him paradise.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) also ordered him to spread this narration among the people.

## References

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 319, H. 34

Taveel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah

# Criterion for Success – Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

عَنِ ابْنِ اَبِي يَعْفُورٍ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ اِنِّي اُخَالِطُ النَّاسَ فَيَكْثُرُ عَجَبِي مِنْ اَقْوَامٍ لَا يَتَوَالَوْنَكُمْ وَ يَتَوَالَوْنَ فُلَاناً وَ فُلَاناً لَهُمْ اَمَانَةٌ وَ صِدْقٌ وَ وَفَاءٌ وَ اَقْوَامٌ يَتَوَالَوْنَكُمْ لَيْسَ لَهُمْ تِلْكَ الْاَمَانَةُ وَ لَا الْوَفَاءُ وَ لَا الصِّدْقُ قَالَ فَاسْتَوَى اَبُو عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ جَالِساً وَ اَقْبَلَ عَلَيَّ كَالْمُغْضَبِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لَا دِينَ لِمَنْ دَانَ بِوِلَايَةِ اِمَامٍ جَائِرٍ لَيْسَ مِنَ اللّهِ وَ لَا عَتْبَ عَلٰى مَنْ دَانَ بِوِلَايَةِ اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ مِنَ اللّهِ قُلْتُ لَا دِينَ لِاُولَئِكَ وَ لَا عَتْبَ عَلٰى هَؤُلَاءِ ثُمَّ قَالَ اَ لَا تَسْمَعُ قَوْلَ اللّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اللَّهُ وَلِيُّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا يُخْرِجُهُمْ مِنَ الظُّلُماتِ اِلَى النُّورِ مِنْ ظُلُمَاتِ الذُّنُوبِ اِلَى نُورِ التَّوْبَةِ اَوِ الْمَغْفِرَةِ لِوَلَايَتِهِمْ كُلَّ اِمَامٍ عَادِلٍ مِنَ اللّهِ قَالَ وَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا اَوْلِياؤُهُمُ الطَّاغُوتُ يُخْرِجُونَهُمْ مِنَ النُّورِ اِلَى الظُّلُماتِ فَاَيُّ نُورٍ يَكُونُ لِلْكَافِرِ فَيَخْرُجُ مِنْهُ اِنَّمَا عَنَى بِهَذَا اَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا عَلٰى نُورِ الْاِسْلَامِ فَلَمَّا تَوَالَوْا كُلَّ اِمَامٍ جَائِرٍ لَيْسَ مِنَ اللّهِ خَرَجُوا بِوَلَايَتِهِمْ اِيَّاهُمْ مِنْ نُورِ الْاِسْلَامِ اِلَى ظُلُمَاتِ الْكُفْرِ فَاَوْجَبَ اللَّهُ لَهُمُ النَّارَ مَعَ الْكُفَّارِ فَقَالَ اُولئِكَ اَصْحابُ النَّارِ هُمْ فِيها خالِدُون‏

Abdullah Ibn Abi Yafoor reports, “I asked Imam Sadeq (a.s.), ‘I socialize with the people. What amazes me a lot about some people who don’t accept your mastership and submit to the mastership of so and so. They are trustworthy, truthful and loyal. But those who accept your mastership don’t have these traits trustworthiness, loyal and truthfulness.” (On hearing this question), Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.) sat up straight, looked at me like an angry person and said, ‘There is no religion for the one who does not believe in an unjust Imam not appointed by Allah and the one who believes in a just Imam appointed by Allah will not have any reproach.’ I asked (in astonishment), ‘The first group does not have religion and the second no blame?’ He (a.s.) retorted, ‘Have you not heard the word of Allah – Might and Majestic be He – Allah is the Patron of those who believe; He takes them out from darkness to light’? That is, from the darkness of sins to the light of repentance or forgiveness for their (acceptance of) mastership of a just Imam appointed by Allah. He says, ‘And those who disbelieved, their masters are the devils who bring them out from light to darkness.’ Then what is the light that was for the disbeliever then he brings him out of it? He only means by this that surely they were on the light of Islam. When they have accepted every unjust Imam who is not appointed by Allah they come out from this mastership of theirs to the darkness of disbelief. Hence, Allah made the hell-fire obligatory upon them along with the unbelievers. He says, ‘These are the inmates of the hell-fire. They shall stay in it forever.”

## Note:

Abdullah Ibn Abi Yafoor (r.a.) was a great companion of the Imam Sadiq (a.s.). He was oppressed like most of Allah’s friends. He was regarded among the hawaari of the 6th Imam (a.s.).

The opponents are totally deviated on all issues, mainly beliefs. The reason being that they have abandoned their Imam (a.s.). Hence, Imam (a.s.) says that they don’t have ANY RELIGION at all whatsoever.

If the Imam is not from Allah, he will be an ordinary human. Naturally, such a person will always be prone to mistake in most of the fields. In case of spirituality, it will lead to eternal perdition. One who is not connected to Allah will inevitably be unjust because he will not put a thing in its place.

Imam (a.s.) has used the term ‘infidel’ for the opponents.

Taaghoot is an exaggerative noun for tughyaan. Satan is taaghoot. A tyrant ruler is taaghoot. A bogus Imam is taaghoot.

Here a question may arise. An opponent who doesn’t know anything about the historical disputes, will he still be subjected to eternal punishment?

**Reply**: Deviated people are of 3 kinds:

The one who knows, is well aware and yet he denies. He knows the truth yet denies due to worldly reasons.

Ignorant and muqassir. He doesn’t know the details. He will be punished. Since he was aware of the brief, he should have explored the details and the message had reached unto him.

Ignorant and qaasir. He doesn’t know the matter at all, neither detail nor brief. He will be tested again in the hereafter.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 322, H. 39

al-Ghaibah of al-Nomani (r.a.)

# House of Ali and Fatemah (s.a.) is the best of houses

عَنْ اَنَسِ بْنِ مَالِكٍ وَ عَنْ بُرَيْدَةَ قَالَا قَرَاَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ فِي بُيُوتٍ اَذِنَ اللَّهُ اَنْ تُرْفَعَ وَ يُذْكَرَ فِيهَا اسْمُهُ يُسَبِّحُ لَهُ فِيها بِالْغُدُوِّ وَ الْآصالِ فَقَامَ اِلَيْهِ رَجُلٌ فَقَالَ اَيُّ بُيُوتٍ هَذِهِ يَا رَسُولَ اللّهِ فَقَالَ بُيُوتُ الْاَنْبِيَاءِ فَقَامَ اِلَيْهِ اَبُو بَكْرٍ فَقَالَ يَا رَسُولَ اللّهِ هَذَا الْبَيْتُ مِنْهَا وَ اَشَارَ اِلَى بَيْتِ عَلِيٍّ وَ فَاطِمَةَؑ قَالَ نَعَمْ مِنْ اَفْضَلِهَا

Anas Ibn Maalik and Buraidah report that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) recited the verse, “In houses that Allah has permitted that they be raised and His name is remembered in it; He is glorified in it in the mornings and the evenings**[[4]](#footnote-4)**”. A person stood up and inquired, ‘What are these houses, O Messenger of Allah?’ He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘*Houses of the Prophets.*’ Then, Abu Bakr stood up and asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah! Is this house from them?’ indicating towards the house of Ali (a.s.) and Fatemah (s.a.). He (s.a.w.a.) responded, ‘Yes. (It is) from the best of them.’ [That is, their house is better than the houses of the Prophets].

## Note:

When the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) migrated from Makkah to Madinah, he (s.a.w.a.) halted at Quba and built a mosque there. Afterwards, he (s.a.wa.) build the famous Masjid-e-Nabavi. Along with this mosque, he (s.a.w.a.) also built houses (buyut – rooms on the ground floor). Rooms on the upper floors are called as ghuraf (pl. of ghurfah). He (s.a.w.a.) built buyut for each of his wives and built a room for Ali and Fatemah (s.a.). Abu Bakr indicated towards this house and asked the above question.

Please note that the narrators of the tradition are Maalik and Buraidah. The former – despite being among the servants of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) – is among the three who have ascribed the maximum lies to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 325, H. 1 Chapter 19رفعة بيوتهم المقدسة في حياتهم و بعد وفاتهمؑ و أنها المساجد المشرفة

Kanz Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the above verse

# Names of Ahle Bait (a.s.) draw Allah’s Attention

اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اِنَّ اللهَ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ يَقُولُ مَا تَوَجَّهَ اِلَيَّ اَحَدٌ مِنْ خَلْقِي اَحَبُّ اِلَيَّ مِنْ دَاعٍ دَعَانِي يَسْاَلُ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ اَهْلِ بَيْتِهِ وَ اِنَّ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِي تَلَقَّاهَا آدَمُ مِنْ رَبِّهِ قَالَ اللَّهُمَّ اَنْتَ وَلِيِّي فِي نِعْمَتِي وَ الْقَادِرُ عَلٰى طَلِبَتِي وَ قَدْ تَعْلَمُ حَاجَتِي فَاَسْاَلُكَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ اِلَّا مَا رَحِمْتَنِي وَ غَفَرْتَ زَلَّتِي فَاَوْحَى اللَّهُ اِلَيْهِ يَا آدَمُ اَنَا وَلِيُّ نِعْمَتِكَ وَ الْقَادِرُ عَلٰى طَلِبَتِكَ وَ قَدْ عَلِمْتُ حَاجَتَكَ فَكَيْفَ سَاَلْتَنِي بِحَقِّ هَؤُلَاءِ فَقَالَ يَا رَبِّ اِنَّكَ لَمَّا نَفَخْتَ فِيَّ الرُّوحَ رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي اِلَى عَرْشِكَ فَاِذَا حَوْلَهُ مَكْتُوبٌ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللَّهُ مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللّهِ فَعَلِمْتُ اَنَّهُ اَكْرَمُ خَلْقِكَ عَلَيْكَ ثُمَّ عَرَضْتَ عَلَيَّ الْاَسْمَاءَ فَكَانَ مِمَّنْ مَرَّ بِي مِنْ اَصْحَابِ الْيَمِينِ آلُ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ اَشْيَاعُهُمْ فَعَلِمْتُ اَنَّهُمْ اَقْرَبُ خَلْقِكَ اِلَيْكَ قَالَ صَدَقْتَ يَا آدَمُ

Imam Muhammad Baqer (a.s.) informs,

“Surely Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – says, ‘None of My creatures that attract My attention is dearer to Me than the one who supplicates for the sake of Muhammad and his Ahle Bait (a.s.). Verily, the “words” which Adam (a.s.) received from his Lord, he said, ‘O Allah! You are my Master in my bounties, have power over my demands and know my needs, so I ask You for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad that You have mercy on me and forgive my errors’. So Allah revealed to him, ‘O Adam! I am the Master of your bounty, have power your demands and know your needs; so why are you asking Me for the sake of these (personas)?’ He replied, ‘O Lord! When You blew your spirit in me, I raised my head towards Your Throne, it was around it, ‘There is no god but Allah, Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah.’ So I was sure that he (s.a.w.a.) is the noblest of Your creation near You. Thereafter, You presented to me the Names; those that passed by My right side were the progeny of Muhammad and their followers, by which I was sure that they are the closest of Your creatures to You’. He affirmed, ‘You have spoken the truth, O Adam’.”

## Note:

Please pay attention: Allah says My creatures and does not say believers. It means that whoever – regardless of his religion or sect – prays for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), Allah loves him and accepts his prayers.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 1, H. 3 Chapter 23 أنهم عليهم السلام الأبرار و المتقون و السابقون و المقربون و شيعتهم أصحاب اليمين و أعداؤهم الفجار و الأشرار و أصحاب الشمال

Kanz Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the above verse

# Life of Prophets (a.s.) and Death of Martyrs

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللّهِ ﷺ مَنْ اَحَبَّ اَنْ يَحْيَا حَيَاةً تُشْبِهُ حَيَاةَ الْاَنْبِيَاءِ وَ يَمُوتَ مِيتَةً تُشْبِهُ مِيتَةَ الشُّهَدَاءِ وَ يَسْكُنَ الْجِنَانَ الَّتِي غَرَسَهَا الرَّحْمَنُ فَلْيَتَوَلَّ عَلِيّاً وَ لْيُوَالِ وَلِيَّهُ وَ لْيَقْتَدِ بِالْاَئِمَّةِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَاِنَّهُمْ عِتْرَتِي خُلِقُوا مِنْ طِينَتِي اللَّهُمَّ ارْزُقْهُمْ فَهْمِي وَ عِلْمِي وَ وَيْلٌ لِلْمُخَالِفِينَ لَهُمْ مِنْ اُمَّتِي اللَّهُمَّ لَا تُنِلْهُمْ شَفَاعَتِي

Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer a.s.) informs that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Whover loves that he lives a life similar to that of the Prophets, dies a death akin to the death of the martyrs and lives in the gardens which is planted by the Beneficent (Himself), then he must accept the mastership of Ali (a.s.), love his friend and follow the Imams (a.s.) after him. For, they are my progeny and are created from soil. O Allah! Grant them my understanding and my knowledge. Woe unto their opponents from my nation! My intercession will not reach unto them.”

## Note:

Acceptance of mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and Ahle Bait (a.s.) is the main criterion for success and good-fortune. Such acceptance automatically implies the rejection of their enemies and those who usurped their rights.

Ahle Bait (a.s.) are created from the soil of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)

Those who oppose the Ahle Bait (a.s.) in any form, be it their positions, miracles, teachings, knowledge, etc. will be deprived of the intercession of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

## Reference:

Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 208, H. 3

# A True Believer is a Martyr

عَنْ مِنْهَالٍ الْقَصَّابِ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللّهِؑ ادْعُ اللهَ اَنْ يَرْزُقَنِيَ الشَّهَادَةَ فَقَالَ اِنَّ الْمُؤْمِنَ شَهِيدٌ ثُمَّ تَلَا وَ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا بِاللّهِ وَ رُسُلِهٖ اُوْلئِكَ هُمُ الصِّدِّيقُونَ وَ الشُّهَداءُ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ لَهُمْ اَجْرُهُمْ وَ نُورُهُمْ‏

Minhaal al-Qassaab reports, “I asked Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.), ‘Pray to Allah that He grants me martyrdom.’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘Surely, a believer is a martyr.’ Then, he (a.s.) recited the following verse, ‘And (as for) those who believe in Allah and His apostles, these it is that are the truthful and the faithful ones in the sight of their Lord: they shall have their reward and their light’[[5]](#footnote-5).”

## Note:

There are two meanings of a word, one is its terminological meaning and second is its reward or reality. For example, a martyr – terminologically – is the one who is killed in the way of Allah but in the second meaning, it also means anyone who dies on the love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) even if he has not died in the battlefield.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 38, H. 14

Taveel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah under the above verse

# The Imams (a.s.) have the knowledge of all the Prophets and Messengers (a.s.) and even more

عَنِ الثُّمَالِيِّ عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ الْحُسَيْنِؑ قَالَ قُلْتُ لَهُ اَسْاَلُكَ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ عَنْ ثَلَاثِ خِصَالٍ اَنْفِي عَنِّيْ فِيْهِ التَّقِيَّةَ قَالَ فَقَالَ ذٰلِكَ لَكَ قُلْتُ اَسْاَلُكَ عَنْ فُلَانٍ وَ فُلَانٍ قَالَ فَعَلَيْهِمَا لَعْنَةُ اللهِ بِلَعَنَاتِهٖ كُلِّهَا مَاتَا وَ اللهِ وَ هُمَا كَافِرَانِ مُشْرِكَانِ بِاللهِ الْعَظِيمِ ثُمَّ قُلْتُ الْاَئِمَّةُ يُحْيُونَ الْمَوْتٰى وَ يُبْرِءُونَ الْاَكْمَهَ وَ الْاَبْرَصَ وَ يَمْشُونَ عَلَى الْمَاءِ قَالَ مَا اَعْطَى اللهُ نَبِيّاً شَيْئاً قَطُّ اِلَّا وَ قَدْ اَعْطَاهُ مُحَمَّداً ﷺ وَ اَعْطَاهُ مَا لَمْ يَكُنْ عِنْدَهُمْ قُلْتُ وَ كُلُّ مَا كَانَ عِنْدَ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ فَقَدْ اَعْطَاهُ اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ؑ قَالَ نَعَمْ ثُمَّ الْحَسَنَ وَ الْحُسَيْنَ ثُمَّ مِنْ بَعْدُ كُلَّ إِمَامٍ اِلٰى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ مَعَ الزِّيَادَةِ الَّتِيْ تَحْدُثُ فِي كُلِّ سَنَةٍ وَ فِي كُلِّ شَهْرٍ اِي وَ اللهِ فِي كُلِّ سَاعَةٍ

Abu Hamzah al-Thumaali (r.a.) says, “I said to Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.), ‘May I be held your ransom! I want to ask you about three characteristics. But please excuse me from dissimulation (taqiyyah) in responding to these queries’.

He (a.s.) replied, ‘Okay, as you please.’

I said, ‘I ask you about so and so.’

He (a.s.) answered, ‘May the curse of Allah be on both of them with His curses, all of them! Both of them died, by Allah, while they were disbelievers and associating partners with Allah the Great.’

I asked, ‘Do the Imams (a.s.) raise the dead, cure the blind and the lepers and walk on water?’

He (a.s.) responded, ‘Allah has not granted any Prophet anything (from the miracles) but that He has given it to (Prophet) Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and He has given him (s.a.w.a.) what He has not given to them (i.e. the Prophets a.s.).’

I inquired, ‘Whatever He has given to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), has He given to Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.)?’

He (a.s.) answered, ‘Yes. He has also given to al-Hasan (a.s.) and al-Husain (a.s.) followed by every Imam (a.s.) after al-Husain (a.s.) till the Day of Judgment, in addition to the incidents that occur every year and every in every month; nay, by Allah, in every moment.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 29, H. 1

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 270, H. 2

# Guidance implies the mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ جَابِرٍ الْجُعْفِيِّ عَنْ اَبِيْ جَعْفَرٍؑ فِيْ قَوْلِهٖ تَعَالٰى وَ اِنِّيْ لَغَفَّارٌ لِمَنْ تابَ وَ آمَنَ وَ عَمِلَ صالِحًا ثُمَّ اهْتَدٰى‏ قَالَ اِلٰى وَلَايَتِنَا

Jaabir al-Jo’fi (r.a.) reports from Imam Muhammad Baqir (a.s.) concerning the verse, ‘And most surely I am most Forgiving to him who repents and believes and does good, then continues to follow the right direction’ (Surah Taha (20): Verse 82). He (a.s.) informed,

‘(then continues to follow the right direction) towards our mastership’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 148, H. 26

# Imam (a.s.)’s knowledge encompasses everything

عَنْ صَالِحِ بْنِ سَهْلٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقْرَاُ وَ كُلَّ شَيْ‏ءٍ اَحْصَيْناهُ فِيْ اِمَامٍ مُبِيْنٍ قَالَ فِيْ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ؑ

Saaleh Ibn Sahl reports, “I heard Imam Sadeq (a.s.) read (the verse), ‘and We have recorded everything in a clear writing’ (Surah Yaasin (36): Verse 12)’. He (a.s.) informed, ‘(This verse is) *concerning Ameerul Momineen (a.s.)*’.”

## Note:

“Clear writing” is wrong translation. Imam Mubeen does not mean the scroll of deeds because it does not have everything. When Quran says everything, it means everything without exception i.e. it includes the solar system, the world of angels, the Throne, the Chair, Paradise, Hell, etc. The scroll of deeds certainly does not have all of these.

It also does not mean the Holy Quran in its apparent form because the Holy Quran in its apparent form too does not have everything in it.

It refers to light position of Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and the infallible Imams (a.s.) from his progeny who are the vessels of the Divine Will; as the following tradition declares بَلْ قُلُوبُنَا اَوْعِيَةٌ لِمَشِيَّةِ اللهِ فَاِذَا شَاءَ شِئْنَا وَ اللهُ يَقُولُ وَ ما تَشاؤُنَ اِلَّا اَنْ يَشاءَ اللهُ “*Nay, our hearts are the vessels for the Will of Allah. So, when He wills, we will and Allah says,* ‘**You don’t will but that Allah wills**’.” (Al-Ghaibah of Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 246).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 158, H. 24

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the aforementioned verse

# Submission implies the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِيْ بَصِيْرٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقُولُ يا اَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوْا ادْخُلُوْا فِيْ السِّلْمِ كَافَّةً وَ لا تَتَّبِعُوْا خُطُوَاتِ الشَّيْطانِ قَالَ اَ تَدْرِيْ مَا السِّلْمُ قَالَ قُلْتُ اَنْتَ اَعْلَمُ قَالَ وَلَايَةُ عَلِيٍّ وَ الْاَئِمَّةِ الْاَوْصِيَاءِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ عَلَیْہِمُ السَّلَامُ قَالَ وَ خُطُوَاتُ الشَّيْطَانِ وَ اللهِ وَلَايَةُ فُلَانٍ وَ فُلَانٍ

Abu Baseer reports, “I heard Imam Sadeq (a.s.) say, ‘O you who believe! Enter into submission one and all and do not follow the footsteps of Shaitan’; he (a.s.) asked, ‘Do you understand what is submission?’ I replied, ‘You know better’. He (a.s.) said, ‘The mastership of Ali and the Imams, the successors after him.’ Thereafter, he (a.s.) informed, ‘And the footsteps of Shaitan’, by Allah, refers to the mastership of so and so (referring to the two usurpers).”

## Note:

Welaayah means to accept the orders and instructions and obey that person.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 159, H. 1

Tafseer al-Ayyaashi (r.a.) under the aforementioned verse

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are from the sacrosanct things of Allah

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللهِ بْنِ سِنَانٍ عَنِ الصَّادِقِؑ اَنَّهٗ قَالَ اِنَّ لِلهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ حُرُمَاتٍ ثَلَاثًا لَيْسَ مِثْلَهُنَّ شَيْ‏ءٌ كِتَابُهٗ وَ هُوَ حِكْمَتُهٗ وَ نُوْرُهٗ وَ بَيْتُهُ الَّذِيْ جَعَلَهٗ قِبْلَةً لِلنَّاسِ لَا يَقْبَلُ مِنْ اَحَدٍ تَوَجُّهًا اِلٰى غَيْرِهٖ وَ عِتْرَةُ نَبِيِّكُمْ ﷺ

Abdullah Ibn Sinaan reports that Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“Surely, for Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – there are three sacrosanct things, nothing is equal to them. His Book, which is His Wisdom and His Light; His House, which He has made as a Qiblah for the people and if anyone turns in any other direction than it, Allah will not accept from him; and the progeny of your Prophet (s.a.w.a.).”

## References:

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 4, p. 300, H. 5208

Ma’ani al-Akhbaar, p. 117

Al-Khesaal, vol. 1, p. 146

# Carriers of the Divine Throne seek forgiveness for the Shias

عَنْ اَبِيْ بَصِيْرٍ قَالَ قَالَ لِيْ اَبُوْ عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَا بَا مُحَمَّدٍ اِنَّ لِلهِ مَلَائِكَةً تُسْقِطُ الذُّنُوبَ عَنْ ظَهْرِ شِيْعَتِنَا كَمَا تُسْقِطُ الرِّيحُ الْوَرَقَ مِنَ الشَّجَرِ اَوَانَ سُقُوطِهِ وَ ذٰلِكَ قَوْلُهٗ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ يَسْتَغْفِرُوْنَ لِلَّذِيْنَ آمَنُوْا وَ اسْتِغْفَارُهُمْ وَ اللهِ لَكُمْ دُونَ هٰذَا الْخَلْقِ يَا بَا مُحَمَّدٍ فَهَلْ سَرَرْتُكَ قَالَ فَقُلْتُ نَعَمْ

Abu Baseer (r.a.) reports that Imam Sadeq (a.s.) told me,

‘O Aba Muhammad! Verily, for Allah there are angels who cause the sins to fall from the backs of our Shiites like the wind cause the leaves to fall from the trees during the season of its falling (i.e. autumn) and this is His word – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘And they seek forgiveness for those who believed’. By Allah! Their seeking forgiveness is for you and not for the other creatures, O Aba Muhammad. Now, are you happy?’

He says, ‘I replied in the affirmative’.”

## Note:

Usually winds make the leaves to fall from trees but during its season, the speed of causing to fall increases manifold.

If you pay attention to the entire verse and not only the part cited in the hadis and the verse after it, you will realize its importance.

اَلَّذِيْنَ يَحْمِلُوْنَ الْعَرْشَ وَمَنْ حَوْلَہٗ يُسَبِّحُوْنَ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّہِمْ وَيُؤْمِنُوْنَ بِہٖ وَيَسْتَغْفِرُوْنَ لِلَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا۝۰ۚ رَبَّنَا وَسِعْتَ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ رَّحْمَۃً وَّعِلْمًا فَاغْفِرْ لِلَّذِيْنَ تَابُوْا وَاتَّبَعُوْا سَبِيْلَكَ وَقِہِمْ عَذَابَ الْجَــحِيْمِ۝۷

“Those who carry the Divine Throne and around it, glorify Allah with His Praise, believe in Him and seek forgiveness for those who believed, Our Lord! You encompass all things in mercy and knowledge, therefore grant protection to those who turn (to Thee) and follow Thy way, and save them from the punishment of the hell.”

رَبَّنَا وَاَدْخِلْہُمْ جَنّٰتِ عَدْنِۨ الَّتِيْ وَعَدْتَّہُمْ وَمَنْ صَلَحَ مِنْ اٰبَاۗىِٕـہِمْ وَاَزْوَاجِہِمْ وَذُرِّيّٰــتِہِمْ۝۰ۭ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْعَزِيْزُ الْحَكِيْمُ۝۸ۙ

“Our Lord! And make them enter the gardens of perpetuity which Thou hast promised to them and those who do good of their fathers and their wives and their offspring, surely Thou are the Mighty, the Wise”. (Surah Ghaafir (40): Verses 7 & 8).

The verses show that these are not ordinary angels. The supplications of ordinary angels are accepted because they are infallible. So, what can one say about the carriers of the Divine Throne?

Those who believe means those whose principles of religion are correct. Otherwise, they will be Muslims in its first meaning and not believers.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 209, H. 5

Taveel al-Ayaat al-Zaaherah under the aforementioned verse

# The wretched will usurp the right of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَلِيِّ بْنِ جَعْفَرٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا الْحَسَنِؑ يَقُوْلُ لَمَّا رَاَى رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ تَيْمًا وَ عَدِيًّا وَ بَنِي اُمَيَّةَ يَرْكَبُونَ مِنْبَرَهُ اَفْظَعَهُ فَاَنْزَلَ اللهُ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالٰى قُرْآنًا يَتَاَسَّى بِهٖ وَ اِذْ قُلْنَا لِلْمَلَائِكَةِ اسْجُدُوْا لِآدَمَ فَسَجَدُوْا اِلَّا اِبْلِيْسَ اَبٰى‏ ثُمَّ اَوْحٰى اِلَيْهِ يَا مُحَمَّدُ اِنِّيْ اَمَرْتُ فَلَمْ اُطَعْ فَلَا تَجْزَعْ اَنْتَ اِذَا اَمَرْتَ فَلَمْ تُطَعْ فِيْ وَصِيِّكَ

Ali Ibn Ja’far (r.a.) – the brother of Imam Kazim (a.s.) – reports, “I heard Imam al-Kazim says, ‘When the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) saw (in a dream) the tribes of Taim, Adi and Bani Umayyah mount the pulpit, he (s.a.w.a.) was terrified. So Allah – Blessed and High be He – revealed the following verse consoling him, ‘**And remember when We said to the angels ‘Prostrate to Adam’ so they all prostrated except Iblis; he denied’**. Thereafter, He revealed to him, ‘O Muhammad! Verily, I order but I am not obeyed; hence, don’t grieve when you order and are not obeyed concerning your successor’.”

## Note:

The word used in tradition is ‘يركبون’ and not ‘يصعدون’, which means they mounted it like animals and not ascended it as do those who are worthy of it.

## Reference:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 426, H. 73

# People will be tested through the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنِ الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ عَنْ اَبِيْهِ صَلَوَاتُ اللهِ عَلَيْهِمْ قَالَ لَمَّا نَزَلَتْ الم اَ حَسِبَ النَّاسُ اَنْ يُتْرَكُوا اَنْ يَقُولُوا آمَنَّا وَ هُمْ لَا يُفْتَنُوْنَ قَالَ قُلْتُ يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ مَا هٰذِهِ الْفِتْنَةُ قَالَ يَا عَلِيُّ اِنَّكَ مُبْتَلًى بِكَ وَ اِنَّكَ مُخَاصَمٌ فَاَعِدَّ لِلْخُصُومَةِ

Imam Husain (a.s.) reports from his father (a.s.), “*When the verse* **‘Alif Laam Meem. Do the people think they will be left when they say we have believed and they will not be tested?**’ *was revealed, I asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah! What is this test?*’ *He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘O Ali! You are the one through whom the people will be tested and you are the one who will be argued with. So be prepared for the argument’.”*

## Note:

The people will be tested through Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and other Imams (a.s.) vis-à-vis their beliefs in them (a.s.), their sayings, their acts, etc. and also as per the levels of the people.

All the scholars will also be tested through the people; again, depending upon their levels.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 228, H. 26

Taveel al-Ayaat al-Zaaherah under the aforementioned verse

# The Ummah will abandon the Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِيْ عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ كَانَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ ذَاتَ لَيْلَةٍ فِيْ الْمَسْجِدِ فَلَمَّا كَانَ قُرْبَ الصُّبْحِ دَخَلَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فَنَادَاهُ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص فَقَالَ يَا عَلِيُّ قَالَ لَبَّيْكَ قَالَ هَلُمَّ اِلَيَّ فَلَمَّا دَنَا مِنْهُ قَالَ يَا عَلِيُّ بِتُّ اللَّيْلَةَ حَيْثُ تَرَانِي فَقَدْ سَاَلْتُ رَبِّي اَلْفَ حَاجَةٍ فَقَضَاهَا لِي وَ سَاَلْتُ لَكَ مِثْلَهَا فَقَضَاهَا وَ سَاَلْتُ لَكَ رَبِّي اَنْ يَجْمَعَ لَكَ اُمَّتِي مِنْ بَعْدِي فَاَبٰى عَلَيَّ رَبِّي فَقَالَ الم اَ حَسِبَ النَّاسُ اَنْ يُتْرَكُوا اَنْ يَقُولُوا آمَنَّا وَ هُمْ لا يُفْتَنُونَ‏

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) reports, “One night, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) passed the night in the mosque. When the morning was near, Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) entered. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) called out to him and said, ‘O Ali!’ He (a.s.) responded, ‘Labbaik’. He (s.a.w.a.) ordered, ‘Come near me’. When he (a.s.) went near to me, he (s.a.w.a.) informed, ‘O Ali! I passed the night as you are seeing me (i.e. in worship, prayers and supplications), after which I asked Allah for a thousand needs. He fulfilled them for me. Then I asked the same (1000 needs) for you and He fulfilled them for me. Thereafter, I asked my Lord for you that He gathers my nation for you after me. But my Lord denied that to me and said, ‘**Alif Lam Mim. Do men think that they will be left alone on saying, We believe, and not be tried?**”

## Note:

The Ummah, in general, will abandon the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and the infallible Imams (a.s.) from his progeny barring a few who will be loyal to them (a.s.) even at the cost of their lives and wealth.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 228, H. 27

Taaveel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah

# Mastership of Ahle Bait (a.s.) demands absolute submission

دَاوُدَ بْنِ فَرْقَدٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ اَتَى اَعْرَابِيٌّ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ فَقَالَ يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ بَايِعْنِي عَلَى الْاِسْلَامِ فَقَالَ عَلَى اَنْ تَقْتُلَ اَبَاكَ فَكَفَّ الْاَعْرَابِيُّ يَدَهُ وَ اَقْبَلَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ عَلَى الْقَوْمِ يُحَدِّثُهُمْ فَقَالَ الْاَعْرَابِيُّ يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ بَايِعْنِي عَلَى الْاِسْلَامِ فَقَالَ عَلَى اَنْ تَقْتُلَ اَبَاكَ قَالَ نَعَمْ فَبَايَعَهُ رَسُولُ اللهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ الْآنَ لَمْ تَتَّخِذْ مِنْ دُونِ اللهِ وَ لَا رَسُولِهِ وَ لَا الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَلِيجَةً اِنِّي لَا آمُرُكَ بِعُقُوقِ الْوَالِدَيْنِ وَ لٰكِنْ صاحِبْهُما فِيْ الدُّنْيا مَعْرُوفًا

Dawood Ibn Farqad chronicles that Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said, “A Bedouin came to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and said, ‘O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Accept my allegiance on Islam’. He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘On the condition that you will kill your father.’ The Bedouin withdrew his hand and the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) started looking at the people, talking to them. The Bedouin asked again, ‘O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Accept my allegiance on Islam’. He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘On the condition that you will kill your father.’ The Bedouin replied in the affirmative and the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) accepted his allegiance that ‘you will kill your father’. Then the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said, ‘Now, you will not take any confidante other than Allah, His Messenger and the believers. Surely, I will not order you to disobey your parents but stay with them in this world with kindness.”

## Note:

The above tradition (as also the verse with the same words) clearly says that once a person accepts Islam, he should not take anybody as confidantes (ولائج) other than Allah, Messenger (s.a.w.a.) and Imam (a.s.). That is, whenever there is a contradiction between divine and devilish forces, a person should be very clear in his mind that he should opt for divine forces, notwithstanding his proximity or relation to the devilish forces. Hence, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) has gone for an extreme example of killing one’s father.

A person’s devotion and dedication to the cause of Imams (a.s.) should be like that of Malik Ashtar al-Nakhaee (r.a.). Ali (a.s.) said about him, لقد كان لي كما كنت للرسول صلى الله عليه و آله و سلم “He was unto me like I was to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).” (Rejaal Ibn Daawood, p. 283, No. 1232). This statement is sufficient to show his position and honour. On hearing the demise of Maalik, Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) recited the following elegy:

رَحِمَ اللهُ مَالِكًا وَ مَا مَالِكٌ عَزَّ عَلَيَّ بِهِ هَالِكًا لَوْ كَانَ صَخْرًا لَكَانَ صَلْدًا وَ لَوْ كَانَ جَبَلًا لَكَانَ فِنْدًا وَ كَاَنَّهُ قُدَّ مِنِّي قَدًّا

“If he was a boulder, he was solid; and if he was a mountain, he was its impregnable part. As if I was cut into strips from me.” (Rejaal al-Kashi, p. 66)

Yet, Maalik was not among the closest companions (حواريون) of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) but Muhammad Ibn Abi Bakr (a.r.) was amongst them.

The real reason is known to Allah the Omniscient but apparently, it refers to the level of submission.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 67, p. 177, Chapter 52, H. 36

Al-Mahaasin, vol.1, p. 248

# Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the best confidantes

عَنْ اَبَانٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقُولُ يَا مَعْشَرَ الْاَحْدَاثِ اتَّقُوا اللهَ وَ لَا تَأْتُوا الرُّؤَسَاءَ دَعُوهُمْ حَتَّى يَصِيرُوا اَذْنَابًا لَا تَتَّخِذُوا الرِّجَالَ وَلَائِجَ مِنْ دُونِ اللهِ اَنَا وَ اللهِ اَنَا وَ اللهِ خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ مِنْهُمْ ثُمَّ ضَرَبَ بِيَدِهِ اِلَى صَدْرِهِ

Abaan reports, “I heard Imam Sadeq (a.s.) say, ‘O group of youths! Fear Allah and don’t go to the chiefs. Leave them till they become tails (i.e. they lag far behind/let them follow you and you don’t follow them). Don’t take men as confidantes other than Allah. By Allah, I, by Allah, I am better for you than them.’ Thereafter, he (a.s.) beat his hand to his chest.”

## Note:

Leaders become leaders due to their followers, especially the youths. A person’s value in front of Allah the High depends on the type of leaders he chooses for himself. Without any doubt, the infallible Imams from the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are the best leaders for this world as well as the hereafter.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 246, H. 5

Tafseer al-Ayyaashi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 83, H. 32

# One who follows somebody has in reality worshipped him

عَنْ جَابِرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ سَاَلْتُهُ عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ اتَّخَذُوا اَحْبارَهُمْ وَ رُهْبانَهُمْ اَرْبابًا مِنْ دُونِ اللهِ قَالَ اَمَا اِنَّهُمْ لَمْ يَتَّخِذُوهُمْ آلِهَةً اِلَّا اَنَّهُمْ اَحَلُّوا حَلَالًا فَاَخَذُوا بِهِ وَ حَرَّمُوا حَرَامًا فَاَخَذُوا بِهِ فَكَانُوا اَرْبَابَهُمْ مِنْ دُونِ اللهِ

Jaabir Ibn Yazid al-Jo’fi (r.a.) chronicles, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah [al-Sadeq] (a.s.) about the word of Allah, ‘**They took their scholars and their worshippers as lords other than Allah**’ (Surah Taubah (9): Verse 31). He (a.s.) replied, ‘*Take note that they did not take them as gods; rather, they (the scholars and worshippers) made things permissible, so they (the people) accepted it and they prohibited things, so they (the people) took it. Thus, they were their lords (deities) other than Allah’*.”

## Notes:

In other traditions, there is a slight variation. They made prohibited things permissible and people accepted it and vice-versa.

It implies that the followed one is in reality the worshipped one. If we follow a divine leader whose instructions are from Allah the Almighty, then we have worshipped Allah the High by obeying and submitting to that leader. If he is not from Allah the Almighty, then certainly he is a Satan and in reality we have worshipped the Satan. As the famous tradition from Imam Muhammad al-Baqir says, َ مَنْ أَصْغَى إِلَى نَاطِقٍ فَقَدْ عَبَدَهُ فَإِنْ كَانَ النَّاطِقُ يُؤَدِّي عَنِ اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فَقَدْ عَبَدَ اللَّهَ وَ إِنْ كَانَ النَّاطِقُ يُؤَدِّي عَنِ الشَّيْطَانِ فَقَدْ عَبَدَ الشَّيْطَانَ “*Whoever listens to a speaker, then indeed he has worshipped him. If the speaker is from Allah, then he has worshipped Allah and if the speaker conveys from the Satan, then he has worshipped the Satan.*” (Al-Kaafi, vol. 6, p. 434, H. 24)

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 246, H. 9

Tafseer al-Ayyaashi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 86, H. 47

# Shias of Ahle Bait (a.s.) must never despair of divine mercy

قَالَ اَبُوْ عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لِاَبِي بَصِيْرٍ لَقَدْ ذَكَرَكُمُ اللهُ فِيْ كِتَابِهٖ اِذْ يَقُوْلُ يَا عِبَادِيَ الَّذِينَ اَسْرَفُوْا عَلٰى‏ اَنْفُسِهِمْ لا تَقْنَطُوا مِنْ رَحْمَةِ اللهِ اِنَّ اللهَ يَغْفِرُ الذُّنُوبَ جَمِيعًا اِنَّهٗ هُوَ الْغَفُوْرُ الرَّحِيْمُ وَ اللهِ مَا اَرَادَ بِذٰلِكَ غَيْرَكُمْ يَا بَا مُحَمَّدٍ فَهَلْ سَرَرْتُكَ قَالَ نَعَمْ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said to Abu Baseer (r.a.),

“Indeed, Allah has mentioned you in His Book when He says ‘O My servants, who have been extravagant upon themselves, don’t despair of Allah’s mercy. Surely, Allah forgives all sins. Verily, he is Oft-Forgiving, the All-Merciful’ (Surah Zumar (39): Verse 53)’. By Allah! He did not intend anyone by this except you, O Aba Muhammad! So, are you happy now?’ He replied, ‘Yes’.”

## Note:

Please note that Allah the High has used the word ‘My servants’ in the verse but Imam (a.s.) clarifies that it is referring to the Shias exclusively. For, the main criterion for receiving divine mercy is correct beliefs and the standard for correct beliefs is the mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

Thus, here the word ‘servants’ is not in its absolute meaning. Rather, it is implying those servants whose beliefs are correct. The following verse also conveys the same concept.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 260, H. 12

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed

# Monotheism without Mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) will be of no avail

عَنْ اَبِيْ عَبْدِ اللهِؑ عَنْ اَبِيْهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ اِذَا كَانَ يَوْمُ الْقِيَامَةِ وَ جَمَعَ اللهُ الْخَلَائِقَ مِنَ الْاَوَّلِينَ وَ الْآخِرِينَ فِيْ صَعِيدٍ وَاحِدٍ خَلَعَ قَوْلَ لَا اِلَهَ اِلَّا اللهُ مِنْ جَمِيعِ الْخَلَائِقِ اِلَّا مَنْ اَقَرَّ بِوَلَايَةِ عَلِيٍّؑ وَ هُوَ قَوْلُهُ تَعَالٰى يَوْمَ يَقُومُ الرُّوحُ وَ الْمَلائِكَةُ صَفًّا لا يَتَكَلَّمُونَ اِلَّا مَنْ اَذِنَ لَهُ الرَّحْمنُ وَ قَالَ صَوَابًا

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) informed,

“When it will be the Day of Judgment and Allah will gather all the creatures from the first ones and the last ones in one ground, the statement of ‘There is no god but Allah’ will be removed from all the creatures except the one who has acknowledged the mastership of Ali (a.s.) and this is His saying, ‘**The day on which the spirit and the angels shall stand in ranks; they shall not speak except he whom the Beneficent God permits and who speaks the right thing**’(Surah Naba (78): Verse 38).”

## Note:

Only the one who accepts the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.), his monotheism will be recorded in his scroll of deeds; not otherwise. The same principle will apply to before Imam Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and after him. If somebody accepts all Prophets (a.s.) but does not accept Prophet Eesaa (a.s.), his monotheism will not be accepted. Similarly, if someone rejects Imam Kazim (a.s.), his monotheism will not be accepted.

Monotheism will not be accepted from him means he will be raised as a disbeliever.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 262, H. 18

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the aforementioned verse

# Everyone will be questioned about the Mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) on the Day of Judgment

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ فِيْ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ قِفُوهُمْ اِنَّهُمْ مَسْؤُلُونَ قَالَ عَنْ وَلَايَةِ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ ؑ

Ibn Abbas reports concerning the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**And stop them, surely they will be questioned**’ (Surah Saaffaat (37): Verse 4). (They will be questioned) *about the mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)*’.”

## Note:

This tradition has been reported extensively by both sects.

There’s a difference between love and mastership. Love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) has its effects in this world as well as the hereafter. But it is not something which will save a person. Mastership (*welaayah*) is the saviour.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 270, H. 44

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the aforementioned verse

# The Enemies of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) will be thrown in Hell

عَنْ شَرِيْكٍ قَالَ بَعَثَ اِلَيْنَا الْاَعْمَشُ وَ هُوَ شَدِيدُ الْمَرَضِ فَاَتَيْنَاهُ وَ قَدِ اجْتَمَعَ عِنْدَهٗ اَهْلُ الْكُوفَةِ وَ فِيهِمْ اَبُوْ حَنِيفَةَ وَ ابْنُ قَيْسٍ الْمَاصِرُ فَقَالَ لِابْنِهِ يَا بُنَيَّ اَجْلِسْنِي فَاَجْلَسَهُ فَقَالَ يَا اَهْلَ الْكُوفَةِ اِنَّ اَبَا حَنِيفَةَ وَ ابْنَ قَيْسٍ الْمَاصِرَ اَتَيَانِي فَقَالَا اِنَّكَ قَدْ حَدَّثْتَ فِيْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ اَحَادِيثَ فَارْجِعْ عَنْهَا فَاِنَّ التَّوْبَةَ مَقْبُولَةٌ مَا دَامَتِ الرُّوحُ فِيْ الْبَدَنِ فَقُلْتُ لَهُمَا مِثْلُكُمَا يَقُولُ لِمِثْلِي هَذَا اُشْهِدُكُمْ يَا اَهْلَ الْكُوفَةِ فَاِنِّي فِيْ آخِرِ يَوْمٍ مِنْ اَيَّامِ الدُّنْيَا وَ اَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ مِنْ اَيَّامِ الْآخِرَةِ اِنِّي سَمِعْتُ عَطَاءَ بْنَ رَبَاحٍ يَقُولُ سَاَلْتُ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ عَنْ قَوْلِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ اَلْقِيا فِيْ جَهَنَّمَ كُلَّ كَفَّارٍ عَنِيدٍ فَقَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اَنَا وَ عَلِيٌّ نُلْقِي فِيْ جَهَنَّمَ كُلَّ مَنْ عَادَانَا فَقَالَ اَبُو حَنِيفَةَ لِابْنِ قَيْسٍ قُمْ بِنَا لَا يَجِي‏ءُ بِمَا هُوَ اَعْظَمُ مِنْ هَذَا فَقَامَا وَ انْصَرَفَا

Shareek (a famous Sunni judge and scholar) reports, “Al-A’mash sent for us while he was very ill. We reached to him while the people of Kufa had gathered near him, among whom were Abu Hanifa and (Amr) Ibn Qais al-Maasir. He said to his son, ‘My son! Make me sit up’. He made him sit up. He said, ‘O People of Kufah! Surely, Abu Hanifah and Ibn Qais al-Maasir (who was a Batri) came to me and said, ‘You have narrated traditions concerning Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.), turn away from them (i.e. refute them) because repentance is accepted only till the soul is inside the body (i.e. till a man is alive). So, I am saying to both of them, ‘Persons like you two are saying this to a person like me?’ I hold you as witnesses, O people of Kufah! I am in the last days of my worldly life and the first days of my life of the Hereafter. Verily, I heard Ataa Ibn Rabaah say, ‘I asked the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) about the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – ‘**Throw both of you in the hell every disbeliever, obstinate one**’. The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), ‘I and Ali will throw in the hell whoever bears enmity against us.’ (On hearing this), Abu Hanifah said to Ibn Qais al-Maasir, ‘Get up. Let’s go. We cannot hear anything greater (worse) than this.’ Both of them got up and left.”

## Notes:

Shareek, the narrator of this tradition, is a very famous Sunni judge.

A’mash is a title. It refers to some disease in the eye. The name of the person was **Sulaiman Ibn Mehraan al-A’mash**. Since he had this disease in the eye, he was given this title. He was not of Arab descent. Obviously, he did not belong to the high class of the Arabian society. He was among the Persians.

He was a great Shia scholar but is relied upon by the opponents as well.

He was called Asadi although he was not actually from Bani Asad. That is, all the Persian slaves were attributed to the tribes for which they worked despite not being of Arabian descent.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 273, H. 58

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the aforementioned verse

# True Belief in Ahle Bait (a.s.) saves one from Hell-fire

عَنْ مَيْسَرَةَ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ الرِّضَاؑ يَقُولُ وَ اللهِ لَا يُرَى مِنْكُمْ فِيْ النَّارِ اثْنَانِ لَا وَ اللهِ وَ لَا وَاحِدٌ قَالَ قُلْتُ فَاَيْنَ ذٰلِكَ مِنْ كِتَابِ اللهِ قَالَ فَاَمْسَكَ عَنِّي سَنَةً قَالَ فَاِنِّي مَعَهُ ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ فِيْ الطَّوَافِ اِذْ قَالَ لِي يَا مَيْسَرَةُ اُذِنَ لِي فِيْ جَوَابِكَ عَنْ مَسْاَلَةِ كَذَا قَالَ فَقُلْتُ فَاَيْنَ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ قَالَ فِيْ سُورَةِ الرَّحْمَنِ وَ هُوَ قَوْلُ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ فَيَوْمَئِذٍ لَا يُسْاَلُ عَنْ ذَنْبِهِ مِنْكُمْ اِنْسٌ وَ لَا جَانٌّ فَقُلْتُ لَهٗؑ لَيْسَ فِيهَا مِنْكُمْ قَالَ اِنَّ اَوَّلَ مَنْ غَيَّرَهَا ابْنُ اَرْوَى وَ ذٰلِكَ اَنَّهَا حُجَّةٌ عَلَيْهِ وَ عَلَى اَصْحَابِهِ وَ لَوْ لَمْ يَكُنْ فِيهَا مِنْكُمْ لَسَقَطَ عِقَابُ اللهِ عَنْ خَلْقِهِ اِذْ لَمْ يُسْاَلْ عَنْ ذَنْبِهِ اِنْسٌ وَ لَا جَانٌّ فَلِمَنْ يُعَاقِبُ اِذًا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

Maisarah reports, “I heard Imam al-Reza (a.s.) say, ‘*By Allah! Not even two of you (Shiites) will be seen in the hell-fire. By Allah! Not even one (will go to hell).*’ I (Maisarah) asked, ‘Where is the evidence of this in the Book of Allah?’ He (a.s.) did not reply to me for a year. One day, I was with him during the circumambulation (*tawaaf*) when he (a.s.) told me, ‘*O Maisarah! I have been permitted to reply you for that question.*’ I asked, ‘So where is it in the Quran?’ He (a.s.) answered, ‘*In Surah al-Rahman (verse 39) and it is the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He –* **So on that day neither man nor jinn shall be asked about his sin**.’ I said, ‘But it does not mention “**from you**”’? He (a.s.) retorted, ‘*The first one who changed it was Ibn Arwa (*referring to Usman Ibn Affan whose mother’s name was Arwaa*) and that is because this verse was a proof against him and his companions. If you were not included in this verse (i.e. if this verse was not specific and it was general), Allah’s punishment from His creatures would have dropped since no man or jinn would be questioned about his sins. So, whom will He punish on the Day of Judgement?*”

## Notes:

Imam (a.s.) delayed the reply on account of some rationale. This delay was vis-à-vis time and place. In this case, it was after a year and that too in Masjid al-Haraam.

If one drops the criterion of belief, there would be no point in creation of hell-fire. In other words, Allah would allow to go to Paradise and there would not remain any difference between a faithful person and an infidel.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 24, p. 275, H. 61

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed under the aforementioned verse

# Hajj without visitation of Ahle Bait (a.s.) is of no avail

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللهِ بْنِ سِنَانٍ عَنْ ذَرِيحٍ الْمُحَارِبِيِّ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّ اللهَ اَمَرَنِي فِيْ كِتَابِهِ بِاَمْرٍ فَاُحِبُّ اَنْ اَعْمَلَهُ قَالَ وَ مَا ذَاكَ قُلْتُ قَوْلُ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ ثُمَّ لْيَقْضُوا تَفَثَهُمْ وَ لْيُوفُوا نُذُورَهُمْ قَالَ لْيَقْضُوا تَفَثَهُمْ لِقَاءُ الْاِمَامِ وَ لْيُوفُوا نُذُورَهُمْ تِلْكَ الْمَنَاسِكُ قَالَ عَبْدُ اللهِ بْنُ سِنَانٍ فَاَتَيْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ قَوْلُ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ ثُمَّ لْيَقْضُوا تَفَثَهُمْ وَ لْيُوفُوا نُذُورَهُمْ قَالَ اَخْذُ الشَّارِبِ وَ قَصُّ الْاَظْفَارِ وَ مَا اَشْبَهَ ذٰلِكَ قَالَ قُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اِنَّ ذَرِيحَ الْمُحَارِبِيِّ حَدَّثَنِي عَنْكَ بِاَنَّكَ قُلْتَ لَهُ لْيَقْضُوا تَفَثَهُمْ لِقَاءُ الْاِمَامِ وَ لْيُوفُوا نُذُورَهُمْ تِلْكَ الْمَنَاسِكُ فَقَالَ صَدَقَ ذَرِيحٌ وَ صَدَقْتَ اِنَّ لِلْقُرْآنِ ظَاهِرًا وَ بَاطِنًا وَ مَنْ يَحْتَمِلُ مَا يَحْتَمِلُ ذَرِيحٌ

Abdullah Ibn Sinaan says that Zuraih (or Zareeh) al-Muhaarebi reported, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.), ‘Verily, Allah ordered me in His Book, so I love that I act upon it.’ He (a.s.) asked, ‘*What is it?*’ I replied, ‘The word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He - **‘then let them accomplish their needful acts, and let them fulfil their vows’** (Surah Hajj (22): Verse 29). He (a.s.) informed, ‘**Let them accomplish their needful acts** *means meeting the Imam and* **let them fulfil their vows** *refers to these rituals (of Hajj).*” Abdullah Ibn Sinaan says, “I came to Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) and asked, ‘May I be held your ransom! (What is the meaning of the word of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He - **Then let them accomplish their needful acts, and let them fulfil their vows.** He (a.s.) answered, ‘*Shaving the moustache and trimming the nail and other similar acts.*’ I said, ‘May I be held your ransom! Zuraih al-Muhaarebi narrated unto me from you that you said **let them accomplish their needful acts** *means meeting the Imam and* **let them fulfil their vows** *refers to these rituals.’* Imam (a.s.) affirmed, ‘*Zuraih has spoken the truth and I too have said the truth. Surely, for the Quran there is an apparent and a concealed. And who can bear what Zuraih can bear?*’

## Note:

Tradition shows that the level of Abdullah Ibn Sinaan was lower than that of Zuraih.

Generally, some people are busy with the recitation of Quran only for wordings. They ensure that they don’t commit any mistake while reciting. They are doing a good deed.

Another group is busy with better way of reciting like intonation, good voice, etc. along with correct recitation. This group is better than the first group.

Yet another group is busy with understanding the apparent meaning of the Holy Quran. This group is better than the previous two groups.

But the best group is the one who is busy in understanding the deeper meaning of the Holy Quran in the light of the traditions of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

Visitation of Ahle Bait (a.s.) means during their lives or even after their deaths to visit their graves. Thus, it is a duty of every faithful to visit Madinah – in the least – after completing his Hajj or Umrah. This is a sign of his belief in the mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

## References:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 4, p. 549, H. 4 بَابُ اِتْبَاعِ الْحَجِّ بِالزِّيَارَةِ

# Ways to know a true Imam (a.s.) from an impostor

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي الْحَسَنِ الْمَاضِيؑ قَالَ دَخَلْتُ عَلَيْهِ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ بِمَ يُعْرَفُ الْاِمَامُ فَقَالَ بِخِصَالٍ اَمَّا اَوَّلُهُنَّ فَشَيْ‏ءٌ تَقَدَّمَ مِنْ اَبِيهِ فِيهِ وَ عَرَّفَهُ النَّاسَ وَ نَصَبَهُ لَهُمْ عَلَمًا حَتَّى يَكُونَ حُجَّةً عَلَيْهِمْ لِاَنَّ رَسُولَ اللهِ ص نَصَبَ عَلِيًّا وَ عَرَّفَهُ النَّاسَ وَ كَذٰلِكَ الْاَئِمَّةُ يُعَرِّفُونَهُمُ النَّاسَ وَ يَنْصِبُونَهُمْ لَهُمْ حَتَّى يَعْرِفُوهُ وَ يُسْاَلُ فَيُجِيبُ وَ يُسْكَتُ عَنْهُ فَيَبْتَدِئُ وَ يُخْبِرُ النَّاسَ بِمَا فِيْ غَدٍ وَ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ بِكُلِّ لِسَانٍ فَقَالَ لِي يَا اَبَا مُحَمَّدٍ السَّاعَةَ قَبْلَ اَنْ تَقُومَ اُعْطِيكَ عَلَامَةً تَطْمَئِنُّ اِلَيْهَا فَوَ اللهِ مَا لَبِثْتُ اَنْ دَخَلَ عَلَيْنَا رَجُلٌ مِنْ اَهْلِ خُرَاسَانَ فَتَكَلَّمَ الْخُرَاسَانِيُّ بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ فَاَجَابَهُ هُوَ بِالْفَارِسِيَّةِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْخُرَاسَانِيُّ اَصْلَحَكَ اللهُ مَا مَنَعَنِي اَنْ اُكَلِّمَكَ بِكَلَامِي اِلَّا اَنِّي ظَنَنْتُ اَنَّكَ لَا تُحْسِنُ فَقَالَ سُبْحَانَ اللهِ اِذَا كُنْتُ لَا اُحْسِنُ اُجِيبُكَ فَمَا فَضْلِي عَلَيْكَ ثُمَّ قَالَ يَا اَبَا مُحَمَّدٍ اِنَّ الْاِمَامَ لَا يَخْفَى عَلَيْهِ كَلَامُ اَحَدٍ مِنَ النَّاسِ وَ لَا طَيْرٍ وَ لَا بَهِيمَةٍ وَ لَا شَيْ‏ءٍ فِيهِ رُوحٌ بِهَذَا يُعْرَفُ الْاِمَامُ فَاِنْ لَمْ تَكُنْ فِيهِ هَذِهِ الْخِصَالُ فَلَيْسَ هُوَ بِاِمَامٍ

Abu Baseer reports, “I went to Imam Kazem (a.s.) and asked, ‘May I be held your ransom! How is an Imam recognised?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘*With (these) characteristics. The first one is that there should be something (a will) from his father concerning him. He has introduced him to the people and appointed for them as a symbol so that he is a proof upon them because the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) appointed Ali (a.s.) and introduced him to the people. Similarly, all the Imams (a.s.) introduce them (their successors) to the people and appoint them (the successors) for them (the people) so that they (the people) know them. When he is asked, he answers. When people are silent, he initiates the conversation. He informs the people what will happen the next day. He speaks to them in all languages.*’

Then, he (a.s.) told me, ‘O Aba Muhammad! In a minute, before you get up I will give you a sign by which you will become content’.

(Abu Baseer says) ‘By Allah! While I was there, a person from Khorasan (in Iran) came to us and spoke in Arabic. But Imam (a.s.) replied to him in his native language (i.e. Persian). The Khorasani said, ‘May Allah improve your conditions! I did not speak in my native language because I thought you don’t know it.’ He (a.s.) retorted, ‘*Glory be to Allah! If I am unable to answer you in your language, what is (the proof of) my superiority over you?’* Thereafter, he (a.s.) continued, ‘*O Aba Muhammad! Nobody’s speech is hidden from the Imam; neither men nor birds nor beasts nor anything in which there is soul. An Imam is recognized through these traits. If these characteristics are not found in him, he is not an Imam’.*”

## Notes:

The salient features of this tradition is as follows:

Imam should have nass from the previous Prophet or Imam.

His knowledge should be absolute and not limited and restricted to a field. Hence, he answers any question given to him.

When people are silent, he initiates the conversation.

He should have knowledge of the future (unseen).

He should be able to speak all languages including that of animals, birds, etc.

Imam (a.s.) is superior to all in all aspects. No creature can be superior to Imam (a.s.) in any aspect. If the mamoom is superior to an Imam in any aspect – whether simple or complicated – the latter will cease to be an Imam.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 133, H. 5

Qurb al-Asnaad, p. 146

# Characteristics of a True Imam (a.s.)

عَنْ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ مِهْرَانَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ عَشْرُ خِصَالٍ مِنْ صِفَاتِ الْاِمَامِ الْعِصْمَةُ وَ النُّصُوصُ وَ اَنْ يَكُونَ اَعْلَمَ النَّاسِ وَ اَتْقَاهُمْ لِلهِ وَ اَعْلَمَهُمْ بِكِتَابِ اللهِ وَ اَنْ يَكُونَ صَاحِبَ الْوَصِيَّةِ الظَّاهِرَةِ وَ يَكُونَ لَهُ الْمُعْجِزُ وَ الدَّلِيلُ وَ تَنَامُ عَيْنُهُ وَ لَا يَنَامُ قَلْبُهُ وَ لَا يَكُونُ لَهُ فَيْ‏ءٌ وَ يَرَى مِنْ خَلْفِهِ كَمَا يَرَى مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِ

Sulaiman Ibn Mehraan al-A’mash (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said, “*There are ten characteristics from the attributes of an Imam.*

Infallibility,

Documentary evidence (نصوص) from the previous divine emissary,

He should be the most knowledgeable of the people,

Most fearful of Allah among the people,

Most knowledgeable of the Book of Allah,

He should possess the apparent will,

He should possess miracles and proofs,

While his eyes sleep, his heart does not sleep,

Left overs of war are not for him, and

He sees what is behind him like he sees what is in front of him.”

## Notes:

Infallibility of an Imam is absolute and includes protection from sins, forgetfulness, etc. and from his birth till death.

Documentary evidence is indicative of Imam and not an internal trait like infallibility. An orange will be orange whether you accept it or not or you call it with any other name.

Will has to be apparent. If it is secretive, it will not serve any purpose.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 140, H. 13

al-Khesaal, vol. 2, p. 428, H. 5

# Imamate is beyond the comprehension of the people

عَنْ مَالِكٍ الْجُهَنِيِّ قَالَ كُنْتُ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَوَضَعْتُ يَدِي عَلَى خَدِّي وَ قُلْتُ لَقَدْ عَصَمَكَ اللهُ وَ شَرَّفَكَ فَقَالَ يَا مَالِكُ الْاَمْرُ اَعْظَمُ مِمَّا تَذْهَبُ اِلَيْهِ

Maalik al-Johani reports, “While I was in front of Imam Abu Abdillah (a.s.), I put my hand on my thigh and said, ‘Indeed Allah has protected you and honoured you.” He (a.s.) replied, “*O Maalik! The matter is greater than what you believe.*”

## Note:

Johani belongs to the Arabian tribe Juhainah.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 145, H. 19

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 240, Chapter 10, H. 18 - باب في الأئمة أنهم يعرفون الإضمار و حديث النفس قبل أن يخبروا به

# Allah the High introduces the Shias to Imams (a.s.)

عَنْ عَبْدِ الرَّحْمَنِ بْنِ كَثِيرٍ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ يَوْمًا وَ نَحْنُ عِنْدَهُ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنَ الشِّيعَةِ قُومُوا تَفَرَّقُوا عَنِّي مَثْنَى وَ ثُلَاثَ فَاِنِّي اَرَاكُمْ مِنْ خَلْفِي كَمَا اَرَاكُمْ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيَّ فَلْيُسِرَّ عَبْدٌ فِيْ نَفْسِهِ مَا شَاءَ فَاِنَّ اللهَ يُعَرِّفُنِيهِ

Abd a-Rahman Ibn Katheer reports that one day Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer a.s.) said while we a group of Shias were with him, “Stand up, disperse from me, in twos and threes. For, I see you behind my back like I see you in front of me. So, let a person rejoice in himself whatever Allah pleases. Surely, Allah will introduce him unto me.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 148, H. 22 باب 4- جامع في صفات الإمام و شرائط الإمامة

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 420, H. 6, Chapter 1

# Imams (a.s.) manifest from their perfections only what people can withstand

عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ النَّوْفَلِيِّ عَنْ اَبِي الْحَسَنِؑ قَالَ ذَكَرْتُ الصَّوْتَ عِنْدَهُ فَقَالَ اِنَّ عَلِيَّ بْنَ الْحُسَيْنِؑ كَانَ يَقْرَاُ الْقُرْآنَ فَرُبَّمَا مَرَّ بِهِ الْمَارُّ فَصَعِقَ مِنْ حُسْنِ صَوْتِهِ وَ اِنَّ الْاِمَامَ لَوْ اَظْهَرَ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ شَيْئًا لَمَا احْتَمَلَهُ النَّاسُ مِنْ حُسْنِهِ قُلْتُ وَ لَمْ يَكُنْ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ يُصَلِّي بِالنَّاسِ وَ يَرْفَعُ صَوْتَهُ بِالْقُرْآنِ فَقَالَ اِنَّ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ كَانَ يَحْمِلُ النَّاسَ مِنْ خَلْفِهِ مَا يُطِيقُونَ

Ali Ibn Muhammad al-Naufeli reports, “I mentioned the voice (for recitation of Quran) in front of Imam al-Kazem (a.s.). He (a.s.) said, ‘*Surely, Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) used to recite Quran. Often, a person passing by when (Imam was reciting) used to faint on account of the beauty of his voice. Surely, if an Imam manifests from this even one thing (i.e. even a fraction), the people will not be able to bear its beauty.’*  I asked, ‘Did the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) not pray behind the people and raise his voice in reciting the Quran?’ He (a.s.) informed, ‘*Surely, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) used to impose on the people behind him what they could bear (i.e. within their capacity)’.*”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 164, H. 32 باب 4- جامع في صفات الإمام و شرائط الإمامة

Al-Kaafi, vol. 2, p. 615, H. 4 with slight variation

# Proof of Imamate- Incident of Habaabah al-Waalebiyyah

فَقُلْتُ لَهُ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ مَا دَلَالَةُ الْاِمَامَةِ يَرْحَمُكَ اللهُ قَالَتْ فَقَالَ ائْتِينِي بِتِلْكِ الْحَصَاةِ وَ اَشَارَ بِيَدِهِ اِلَى حَصَاةٍ فَاَتَيْتُهُ بِهَا فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا بِخَاتَمِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِي يَا حَبَابَةُ اِذَا ادَّعَى مُدَّعٍ الْاِمَامَةَ فَقَدَرَ اَنْ يَطْبَعَ كَمَا رَاَيْتِ فَاعْلَمِي اَنَّهُ اِمَامٌ مُفْتَرَضُ الطَّاعَةِ وَ الْاِمَامُ لَا يَعْزُبُ عَنْهُ شَيْ‏ءٌ يُرِيدُهُ قَالَتْ ثُمَّ انْصَرَفْتُ حَتَّى قُبِضَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فَجِئْتُ اِلَى الْحَسَنِؑ وَ هُوَ فِيْ مَجْلِسِ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ وَ النَّاسُ يَسْاَلُونَهُ فَقَالَ يَا حَبَابَةُ الْوَالِبِيَّةُ فَقُلْتُ نَعَمْ يَا مَوْلَايَ فَقَالَ هَاتِي مَا مَعَكِ قَالَ فَاَعْطَيْتُهُ فَطَبَعَ فِيهَا كَمَا طَبَعَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ قَالَتْ ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ الْحُسَيْنَؑ وَ هُوَ فِيْ مَسْجِدِ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ فَقَرَّبَ وَ رَحَّبَ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِي اِنَّ فِيْ الدَّلَالَةِ دَلِيلًا عَلَى مَا تُرِيدِينَ اَ فَتُرِيدِينَ دَلَالَةَ الْاِمَامَةِ فَقُلْتُ نَعَمْ يَا سَيِّدِي فَقَالَ هَاتِي مَا مَعَكِ فَنَاوَلْتُهُ الْحَصَاةَ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا قَالَتْ ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ عَلِيَّ بْنَ الْحُسَيْنِؑ وَ قَدْ بَلَغَ بِيَ الْكِبَرُ اِلَى اَنْ اُرْعِشْتُ وَ اَنَا اَعُدُّ يَوْمَئِذٍ مِائَةً وَ ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً فَرَاَيْتُهُ رَاكِعًا وَ سَاجِدًا وَ مَشْغُولًا بِالْعِبَادَةِ فَيَئِسْتُ مِنَ الدَّلَالَةِ فَاَوْمَاَ اِلَيَّ بِالسَّبَّابَةِ فَعَادَ اِلَيَّ شَبَابِي قَالَتْ فَقُلْتُ يَا سَيِّدِي كَمْ مَضَى مِنَ الدُّنْيَا وَ كَمْ بَقِيَ فَقَالَ اَمَّا مَا مَضَى فَنَعَمْ وَ اَمَّا مَا بَقِيَ فَلَا قَالَتْ ثُمَّ قَالَ لِي هَاتِي مَا مَعَكِ فَاَعْطَيْتُهُ الْحَصَاةَ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ اَبَا جَعْفَرٍؑ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ اَبَا الْحَسَنِ مُوسَىؑ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا ثُمَّ اَتَيْتُ الرِّضَاؑ فَطَبَعَ لِي فِيهَا وَ عَاشَتْ حَبَابَةُ بَعْدَ ذٰلِكَ تِسْعَةَ اَشْهُرٍ عَلَى مَا ذَكَرَ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ هِشَام‏

Habaabah Waalebiyyah was a learned and pious lady.

She reports, “I asked Ameerul Momineen (Ali Ibn Abi Talib a.s.), ‘What is the sign of Imamate, may Allah have mercy on you?’

He (a.s.) told me, ‘*Get me those pebbles*’ and indicated towards some pebbles. I brought them to him (a.s.). He (a.s.) imprinted the seal of his ring on those pebbles for me and said, ‘*O Habaabah! If a person claims Imamate, then if he can imprint on pebbles like you saw, you should know that he is an Imam whose obedience is obligatory; nothing is hidden from an Imam when he intends something.’* I went away.

When Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) departed from this world, I came to al-Hasan (a.s.) who was ensconced in the seat of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and people were asking him questions.

He (a.s.) said, ‘*O Habaabah!*’

I replied, ‘Yes, O my master!’

‘Give me what is with you.’

I handed them (i.e. the pebbles) to him and he (a.s.) imprinted the seal of his ring on them exactly like Ameerul Momineen (a.s) had done.

Thereafter, I went to al-Husain (a.s.), who was in the Prophet’s (s.a.w.a.) mosque.

He (a.s.) came to me, welcomed me and said to me, ‘Surely, there is a proof in what you intend. Do you want the proof of Imamate?’

I replied in the affirmative.

‘Give me what is with you.’

I handed it over to him and he (a.s.) printed the seal of his ring on it.

Then, I approached Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) while I had become very old to the extent that I was quivering and my age was approximately 113 years. I saw him (a.s.) bowing, prostrating and busy in worship to the extent that I despaired from taking the proof from him (a.s.). But he (a.s.) indicated towards me with his index finger and my youth returned…..

Habaabah went on to live till the time of the eighth Imam Ali Ibn Moosa al-Reza (a.s.), taking the proof of Imamate from each Imam (a.s.). After meeting al-Reza (a.s.) and taking the proof of Imamate from him (a.s.), she died after nine months, according to Muhammad Ibn Heshaam.

## Reference:

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 346, H. 3

# Recording Angels of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) take pride over other angels

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ عَمَّارِ بْنِ يَاسِرٍ عَنْ اَبِيهِ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ يَقُولُ اِنَّ حَافِظَيْ عَلِيٍّ لَيَفْخَرَانِ عَلَى سَائِرِ الْحَفَظَةِ بِكَوْنِهِمَا مَعَ عَلِيٍّؑ وَ ذٰلِكَ اَنَّهُمَا لَمْ يَصْعَدَا اِلَى اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ بِشَيْ‏ءٍ مِنْهُ فَيُسْخِطَهُ

Ammar Ibn Yaasir reports, “I heard the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) say, ‘Verily, the two recording angels of Ali (a.s.) take pride upon all other recording angels because of them being with Ali (a.s.). The reason being that they don’t ascend to Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – with any deed by which He (viz. Allah) becomes angry’.”

## Note:

The duty of the recording angels is to record the deeds of every human being. The angel on the right records the good deeds while the one on the left, writes down the evils and sins.

This tradition establishes the infallibility of Imams (a.s.). Of course, the same applies for all Prophets, Messengers, Imams, successors, etc. (peace be upon all of them).

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) invited the people towards the mastership of Ali (a.s.). Wasn’t he (s.a.w.a.) truthful? Definitely, he was truthful and even the pagans acknowledged this fact. So, if the mastership of Ali (a.s.) was not good or right for the people, he (s.a.w.a.) would never have invited the people towards it.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 194, H. 4

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 8, H. 5 (with minor variations in wordings)

# Obedience of Imams (a.s.) obligatory due to infallibility

عَنْ سُلَيْمِ بْنِ قَيْسٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ يَقُولُ اِنَّمَا الطَّاعَةُ لِلهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ لِرَسُولِهٖ وَ لِوُلَاةِ الْاَمْرِ وَ اِنَّمَا اُمِرَ بِطَاعَةِ اُولِي الْاَمْرِ لِاَنَّهُمْ مَعْصُومُونَ مُطَهَّرُونَ لَا يَأْمُرُونَ بِمَعْصِيَتِهٖ

Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Hilaali (r.a.) reports, “I heard Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) say,

‘Obedience is only for Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He – and for His Messenger (s.a.w.a.) and for the possessors of authority. The obedience for those possessing authority is ordered only because they are infallible and purified (by Allah). They don’t order for His disobedience.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 200, H. 11

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 1, p. 123, H. 1

# Practice of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

عن أبي سعيد الخدري عن نبي الله ﷺ قال [لما] نزلت هذه الآية وَ أْمُرْ اَهْلَكَ بِالصَّلاةِ قال كان يجي‏ء إلى باب علي تسعة أشهر كل صلاة غداة و يقول الصلاة رحمكم الله اِنَّما يُرِيدُ اللهُ لِيُذْهِبَ عَنْكُمُ الرِّجْسَ اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ يُطَهِّرَكُمْ تَطْهِيرًا.

Abu Saeed al-Khudri (r.a.) reports, “When the verse ‘**…and order your family for prayers**’ (Surah Taha (20): Verse 132) was revealed, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) used to come to **the door of Ali** (a.s.) for nine months every morning at the time of prayers and say, ‘*Prayers!* *May Allah have mercy on you*’ ‘**Allah only intends to keep away all indecencies from you O Ahl al-Bait and keep you purify as is the right of purification’** (Surah Ahzaab (33): Verse 33).”

وَ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ اَمَرَهُ اللهُ تَعَالٰى اَنْ يَخُصَّ اَهْلَهُ دُونَ النَّاسِ لِيَعْلَمَ النَّاسُ اَنَّ لِاَهْلِهِ عِنْدَ اللهِ مَنْزِلَةً لَيْسَتْ لِلنَّاسِ فَاَمَرَهُمْ مَعَ النَّاسِ عَامَّةً وَ اَمَرَهُمْ خَاصَّة

Imam Baqer (a.s.) says, “Allah – the High – order him (s.a.w.a.) that he (s.a.w.a.) should specify his family (a.s.) other than the ordinary people so that the people should know that his family (a.s.) enjoys a special position in front of Allah which is not for the people; hence, He ordered them with the people generally, and ordered them specifically.” (Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 212 narrating from Tafseer al-Qummi (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 67)

## Notes:

The author of Shawaahed al-Tanzeel is a renowned Sunni commentator, Abu al-Qasim Ubaidullah Ibn Ahmad, famous as al-Haakem al-Haskaani, a fifth century scholar.

The Muslims generally respect anything remotely connected to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). But after his martyrdom, the so-called companions came in numbers and burnt down this very door, which was frequented by the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as a mark of respect to its inhabitants. And who were the inhabitants? Abd al-Kareem Shahrastaani in Al-Melal wa al-Nehal writes, “I swear by Allah! When they burnt the door, there was none in it except Ali, Fatemah, Hasan and Husain (a.s.).” The same personalities for whom the second verse in the above tradition was recited by the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).

Worse than the sin is its justification! Some Muslims either deny the incident or justify it as an error in jurisprudence! Take lesson, O people of wisdom! If this is the justification, then every criminal in the world will justify his act as an error in jurisprudence and consequently, all the courts have to be closed down.

## Reference:

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel, vol. 2, p. 47, H. 668

# Ali (a.s.) is the door of the city of knowledge

عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اَنَا مَدِينَةُ الْعِلْمِ وَ عَلِيٌّ بَابُهَا فَمَنْ اَرَادَ الْعِلْمَ فَلْيَأْتِ الْبَابَ

Ibn Abbas reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) declared,

“I am the city of knowledge and Ali is its gate. So, whoever intends (to acquire) knowledge, then he should come to the door.”

## Notes:

This narration has been reported widely in the books of both the sects.

Many attempts at distortion of this narration have been made throughout history by making some people as the foundation, others as wall, windows, etc. But the proof of the pudding lies in its taste. No claimant could ever bring a like of a sermon on Divine Monotheism like those delivered by Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) and recorded in books like Nahj al-Balaaghah. Such distortions are nothing more than a joke on Muslims. Worse are the attempts at plagiarizing the teachings of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) and passing them off as those of their leaders. But the reality remains that no matter how much you decorate a cactus, it can never become a rose!

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 40, p. 203

# Love of Ahle Bait (a.s.) is the wage of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)’s efforts

وَ قَالَ الْعَلَّامَةُ رَوَّحَ اللهُ رُوحَهُ فِيْ كِتَابِ كَشْفِ الْحَقِّ رَوَى الْجُمْهُورُ فِيْ الصَّحِيحَيْنِ وَ اَحْمَدُ بْنُ حَنْبَلٍ فِيْ مُسْنَدِهِ وَ الثَّعْلَبِيُّ فِيْ تَفْسِيرِهِ عَنِ ابْنِ عَبَّاسٍ قَالَ لَمَّا نَزَلَ قُلْ لا اَسْئَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ اَجْرًا اِلَّا الْمَوَدَّةَ فِيْ الْقُرْبى‏ قَالُوا يَا رَسُولَ اللهِ مَنْ قَرَابَتُكَ الَّذِينَ وَجَبَتْ عَلَيْنَا مَوَدَّتُهُمْ قَالَ عَلِيٌّ وَ فَاطِمَةُ وَ ابْنَاهُمَا

Allamah Hilli (r.a.) records in his book Kashf al-Haqq, “The majority of Muslims have narrated in their two Saheeh (Bukhari and Muslim), Ahmad Ibn Hanbal in his Musnad, al-Tha’labi in his exegesis from Ibn Abbas that when the verse, ‘**Say (O Prophet)! I don’t ask from you any reward or wage for my efforts in Prophethood except the love of my closest family members**’ (Surah Shura (42): Verse 23), they asked, ‘O Messenger of Allah! Who are your closest relatives whose love has been made obligatory upon us?’ He (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘*Ali, Fatema and their two sons*.’

## Note:

This verse also indicates towards the infallibility of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) as not even a normal wise person will order the people to love his family/children if they are disobedient and wayward. Therefore, when Allah the High and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.) demand the love of his progeny as reward for the efforts of his mission, then one can imagine the extent of proximity they enjoy in front of Allah the High and the sublimity of their infallibility!

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 232

Kashf al-Haqq

# Amazing Excellences of Ameerul Momineen (a.s.)

سَعِيدٌ الْاَعْرَجُ قَالَ دَخَلْتُ اَنَا وَ سُلَيْمَانُ بْنُ خَالِدٍ عَلَى اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَابْتَدَاَنَا فَقَالَ يَا سُلَيْمَانُ مَا جَاءَ عَنْ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ يُؤْخَذُ بِهِ وَ مَا نَهَى عَنْهُ يُنْتَهَى عَنْهُ جَرَى لَهُ مِنَ الْفَضْلِ مَا جَرَى لِرَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ وَ لِرَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ الْفَضْلُ عَلَى جَمِيعِ مَنْ خَلَقَ اللهُ الْمُعَيِّبُ عَلَى اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فِيْ شَيْ‏ءٍ مِنْ اَحْكَامِهِ كَالْمُعَيِّبِ عَلَى اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ وَ عَلَى رَسُولِهٖ ﷺ وَ الرَّادُّ عَلَيْهِ فِيْ صَغِيرَةٍ اَوْ كَبِيرَةٍ عَلَى حَدِّ الشِّرْكِ بِاللهِ كَانَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ص بَابَ اللهِ الَّذِي لَا يُؤْتَى اِلَّا مِنْهُ وَ سَبِيلَهُ الَّذِي مَنْ سَلَكَ بِغَيْرِهِ هَلَكَ وَ بِذٰلِكَ جَرَتِ الْاَئِمَّةُؑ وَاحِدٌ بَعْدَ وَاحِدٍ جَعَلَهُمُ اللهُ اَرْكَانَ الْاَرْضِ اَنْ تَمِيدَ بِهِمْ وَ الْحُجَّةَ الْبَالِغَةَ عَلَى مَنْ فَوْقَ الْاَرْضِ وَ مَنْ تَحْتَ الثَّرَى وَ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ اَنَا قَسِيمُ اللهِ بَيْنَ الْجَنَّةِ وَ النَّارِ وَ اَنَا الْفَارُوقُ الْاَكْبَرُ وَ اَنَا صَاحِبُ الْعَصَا وَ الْمِيسَمِ وَ لَقَدْ اَقَرَّتْ لِي جَمِيعُ الْمَلَائِكَةِ وَ الرُّوحُ بِمِثْلِ مَا اَقَرَّتْ لِمُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ وَ لَقَدْ حُمِلْتُ عَلَى مِثْلِ حَمُولَةِ مُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ وَ هِيَ حَمُولَةُ الرَّبِّ وَ اِنَّ مُحَمَّدًا ﷺ يُدْعَى فَيُكْسَى وَ يُسْتَنْطَقُ وَ اُدْعَى فَاُكْسَى وَ اُسْتَنْطَقُ فَاَنْطِقُ عَلَى حَدِّ مَنْطِقِهِ وَ لَقَدْ اُعْطِيتُ خِصَالًا لَمْ يُعْطَهُنَّ اَحَدٌ قَبْلِي عُلِّمْتُ عِلْمَ الْمَنَايَا وَ الْبَلَايَا وَ الْاَنْسَابَ وَ فَصْلَ الْخِطَابِ فَلَمْ يَفُتْنِي مَا سَبَقَنِي وَ لَمْ يَعْزُبْ عَنِّي مَا غَابَ عَنِّي اُبَشِّرُ بِاِذْنِ اللهِ وَ اُؤَدِّي عَنِ اللهِ عَزَّ وَ جَلَّ كُلُّ ذٰلِكَ مَكَّنَنِيَ اللهُ فِيهِ بِاِذْنِهِ

Saeed al-A’raj reports, “I and Sulaiman Ibn Khalid went to Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.). He (a.s.) initiated the conversation with us and said,

‘O Sulaiman! Whatever Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) has brought should be acted upon and whatever he (a.s.) has prohibited should be refrained from. All the excellences that were present in the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) were available in him (a.s.). For the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) is superior to whosoever Allah has created. Whoever finds faults with Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) is like the one who finds faults with Allah and His Messenger (s.a.w.a.). One who rejects him (a.s.) in anything – minor or major – has associated partners with Allah. Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) was Allah’s door as Allah cannot be approached but through him (a.s.). He (a.s.) was the path of Allah; if anybody tread a path other than his will be destroyed. The same applied for all the Imams (a.s.), one after the other. Allah has made them the pillars of the earth that it should move due to them. They are the conveyed proofs for whoever is above the earth and inside its core. Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) declared, ‘I am the distributor of Paradise and Hell on behalf of Allah. I am the greatest point of distinction (between truth and falsehood). I am the owner of the staff and the branding iron. All the angels and the Holy Spirit acknowledged me like they acknowledged the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). Indeed I have been made to carry like Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was made to carry and it is the burden of the Lord. Surely, Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was called, clothed and made to speak. I too was called, clothed and made to speak. I speak like he (s.a.w.a.) speaks. I have been characteristics which none before me has been given. I was taught the knowledge of deaths, calamities, genealogy and the decisive statement. So there is no knowledge of the past that I have missed. The knowledge of whatever is not in my presence is not concealed from me. I give glad tidings with Allah’s permission and I convey from the side of Allah – Mighty and Majestic be He. Allah has given all these things in my power in His way with His permission’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 23, p. 229

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel of Al-Haakim al-Haskaani, vol. 2, p. 193 under the verse.

# All the Infallible Guides (a.s.) are equal in excellences

عَنِ الْبَزَنْطِيِّ عَنِ الرِّضَا اَنَّهُؑ كَتَبَ اِلَيْهِ قَالَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ لَا يَسْتَكْمِلُ عَبْدٌ الْاِيمَانَ حَتَّى يَعْرِفَ اَنَّهُ يَجْرِي لِآخِرِهِمْ مَا يَجْرِي لِاَوَّلِهِمْ فِيْ الْحُجَّةِ وَ الطَّاعَةِ وَ الْحَلَالِ وَ الْحَرَامِ سَوَاءً وَ لِمُحَمَّدٍ ﷺ وَ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فَضْلُهُمَا

Bazanti reports that Imam al-Reza (a.s.) wrote to him that Imam Muhammad al-Baqer (a.s.) said, “The faith of none will be complete till he recognizes that whatever is applicable for the first infallible (a.s.) is **equally applicable** to the last infallible (a.s.) vis-à-vis divine proof, obedience, permissible and prohibited things. Of course, Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) are the most superior of all of them.”

## Note:

All the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.) are equal in general excellences and merits like control of the universe, the power to legislate laws, the knowledge of the unseen, traversing the earth in a flash of a second, etc. But the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) are the most superior of the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 353, H. 2

Qurb al-Asnaad, p. 152

# Knowledge – The Minimum Aspect of Ahle Bait’s (a.s.) Excellence

عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ جَعْفَرٍ عَنْ اَبِي الْحَسَنِؑ اَنَّهُ سَمِعَهُ يَقُولُ لَوْ اُوذِنَ لَنَا لَاَخْبَرْنَا بِفَضْلِنَا قَالَ قُلْتُ لَهُ الْعِلْمُ مِنْهُ قَالَ فَقَالَ لِي الْعِلْمُ اَيْسَرُ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ

Ali Ibn Jafar (the illustrious and extremely learned son of the sixth Imam a.s.) reports that he heard Imam Abu al-Hasan (al-Kazem a.s.) say, “*Had we been permitted, we would have informed you of our excellences.*” I asked, “(Your excellence) with regards to knowledge?” He (a.s.) told me, “*Knowledge is the least aspect of it.*”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 371, H. 21

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 512, Chapter 18, H. 27

Masaael-o-Ali Ibn Jafar (a.s.), p. 323, H. 807

# Imam (a.s.) knows the universe like the palm of his hand

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لِحُمْرَانَ بْنِ اَعْيَنَ يَا حُمْرَانُ اِنِ الدُّنْيَا عِنْدَ الْاِمَامِ وَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَ الْاَرَضِينَ اِلَّا هَكَذَا وَ اَشَارَ بِيَدِهِ اِلَى رَاحَتِهِ يَعْرِفُ ظَاهِرَهَا وَ بَاطِنَهَا وَ دَاخِلَهَا وَ خَارِجَهَا وَ رَطْبَهَا وَ يَابِسَهَا

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) said to Humraan Ibn A’yan,

“O Humraan! Surely the world in front of Imam and the heavens and the earths are not except like this” indicating with his hand towards his palm, “he knows it apparent, its concealed, its inner, its outer, its dryness and its wetness.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 385, H. 42

# A Divine Imam (a.s.) has complete knowledge of the entire universe (1)

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اِنِّي لَاَعْرِفُ مَنْ لَوْ قَامَ عَلَى شَاطِئِ الْبَحْرِ لَنَدَبَ بِدَوَابِّ الْبَحْرِ وَ بِاُمَّهَاتِهَا وَ عَمَّاتِهَا وَ خَالَاتِهَا

Abu Baseer (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer a.s.) said,

“Surely, I know someone if he stood on the sea-shore, he can call the sea animals along with their mothers, their paternal aunts and their maternal aunts.”

## Notes:

Perhaps Imam (a.s.) has used third person in this tradition for the sake of dissimulation (taqiyyah).

This narration establishes the mastership of the Imam (a.s.) over the entire universe (wilayah takveeni), of which the oceans are an important part. This is also a clear distinguishing factor between a true Imam (a.s.) and false claimants and usurpers of divine positions.

That Imam (a.s.) knows the relations between the sea animals is an amazing feature of his divine knowledge.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 372, H. 22

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 513, H. 31

# A Divine Imam (a.s.) has complete knowledge of the entire universe (2)

بِالْاَسَانِيدِ الثَّلَاثَةِ اِلَى الرِّضَاؑ عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ مَا يَنْقَلِبُ جَنَاحُ طَائِرٍ فِيْ الْهَوَاءِ اِلَّا وَ عِنْدَنَا فِيهِ عِلْمٌ

Imam Reza (a.s.) narrates vide his ancestors from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) who said,

“A bird’s wing does not flap in the air but that its knowledge is with us.”

## Note:

Flapping of wind is merely an example. The Messenger of Allah (a.s.) and the infallible Imams (a.s.) have encompassing knowledge of the unseen. Of course, this knowledge has been granted by Allah the Almighty and with His permission.

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 19, H. 4

Oyoon-o-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 2, p. 32, H. 54

# A source of Imam’s (a.s.) Knowledge of the Unseen

عَنْ بَكْرِ بْنِ كَرِبٍ قَالَ كُنَّا عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَسَمِعْنَاهُ يَقُولُ اَمَا وَ اللهِ اِنَّ عِنْدَنَا مَا لَا نَحْتَاجُ اِلَى النَّاسِ وَ اِنَّ النَّاسَ لَيَحْتَاجُونَ اِلَيْنَا اِنَّ عِنْدَنَا الصَّحِيفَةَ سَبْعُونَ ذِرَاعًا بِخَطِّ عَلِيٍّؑ وَ اِمْلَاءِ رَسُولِ اللهِ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِمَا وَ عَلَى اَوْلَادِهِمَا فِيهَا مِنْ كُلِّ حَلَالٍ وَ حَرَامٍ اِنَّكُمْ لَتَأْتُونَنَا فَتَدْخُلُونَ عَلَيْنَا فَنَعْرِفُ خِيَارَكُمْ مِنْ شِرَارِكُمْ

Bakr Ibn Karb reports, “We were with Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) when we heard him (a.s.) say,

‘By Allah! Surely, with us is a thing due to which we become needless of the people and the people are certainly in need of us. Verily, with us is the Saheefah (a scripture) of seventy cubits in the writing of Ali (a.s.) and on the dictation of the Messenger of Allah (peace be on both of them and the progeny of both of them). In it (i.e. the scripture) is every permissible and prohibited thing. Definitely, when you come to us and call upon us, we can distinguish the good among you from the evil ones’.”

## Note:

In this narration, Imam (a.s.) is talking of only one source of their divine knowledge. Of course, there are other sources as well.

## References

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 21, H. 8

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 142, H. 1, Chapter 12

# The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) taught Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) a thousand chapters of Knowledge

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ قَالَ دَخَلْتُ عَلَى اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ اِنَّ الشِّيعَةَ يَتَحَدَّثُونَ اَنَّ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ عَلَّمَ عَلِيًّا بَابًا يُفْتَحُ مِنْهُ اَلْفُ بَابٍ فَقَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَا اَبَا مُحَمَّدٍ عَلَّمَ وَ اللهِ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ عَلِيًّا اَلْفَ بَابٍ يُفْتَحُ لَهُ مِنْ كُلِّ بَابٍ اَلْفُ بَابٍ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ هَذَا وَ اللهِ الْعِلْمُ قَالَ اِنَّهُ لَعِلْمٌ وَ لَيْسَ بِذَاكَ

Abu Baseer (r.a.) informs, “I went to Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) and said, ‘Verily, the Shiites narrate that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) taught Ali (a.s.) a door (of knowledge) from which a thousand doors opened (i.e. ten thousand doors).’ Imam (a.s.) corrected him, ‘*O Aba Muhammad! Surely, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) taught Ali (a.s.) a thousand doors from each of which a thousand doors opened (i.e. a million doors).*’ I said, ‘By Allah! This is the knowledge (all of it)!’

Again, Imam (a.s.) corrected, ‘Surely, it is knowledge (a part of it) but not in its entirety’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 29, H. 33

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 303, H. 3, Chapter 16

# Sublime Qualities of Divine Imams (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي هَاشِمٍ الْجَعْفَرِيِّ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ الرِّضَاؑ يَقُولُ الْاَئِمَّةُ عُلَمَاءُ حُلَمَاءُ صَادِقُونَ مُفَهَّمُونَ مُحَدَّثُونَ

Abu Haashim al-Ja’fari (r.a.) reports, “I heard Imam al-Reza (a.s.) say,

‘The Imams are knowledgeable, forbearing, truthful, made to understand (by Allah) and spoken to (by the angels)’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 66, H. 1

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 245, H. 426/18, 9th Majlis

# Angels converse with Imams (a.s.) and their companions

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ كَانَ عَلِيٌّ مُحَدَّثًا وَ كَانَ سَلْمَانُ مُحَدَّثًا قَالَ قُلْتُ فَمَا آيَةُ الْمُحَدَّثِ قَالَ يَأْتِيهِ مَلَكٌ فَيَنْكُتُ فِيْ قَلْبِهِ كَيْتَ وَ كَيْتَ

Abu Baseer (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said, “Ali (a.s.) was the spoken one (muhaddath) (i.e. the angels spoke to him) and so was Salman (r.a.)”.

I asked, “What is the sign of a *muhaddath*?”

He (a.s.) replied,

“An angel comes to him and inspires in his heart such and such.”

## Note:

This tradition underlines the importance of Salman (a.r.) and his ilk who submit to the Imams (a.s.). Salman (r.a.) was neither a Prophet nor an Imam and yet he attained such a high position only on account of his submission and obedience to the infallible guides (a.s.). The road to perfection is always open to betterment. There is no limit for it. Never should one think that he has attained enough. Rather, regardless of his achievements, he/she must always think that he/she has done nothing especially vis-à-vis serving the divine proofs (a.s.).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 67, H.4

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 407, H. 914/62, 9th Majlis

# Signs of true and divine inspiration

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ قَالَ ذَكَرْتُ الْمُحَدَّثَ عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ فَقَالَ اِنَّهُ يَسْمَعُ الصَّوْتَ وَ لَا يَرَى فَقُلْتُ اَصْلَحَكَ اللهُ كَيْفَ يَعْلَمُ اَنَّهُ كَلَامُ الْمَلَكِ قَالَ اِنَّهُ يُعْطَى السَّكِينَةَ وَ الْوَقَارَ حَتَّى يَعْلَمَ اَنَّهُ مَلَكٌ

Muhammad Ibn Muslim says, “I mentioned (i.e. inquired about) a *muhaddath* in front of Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.).”

He (a.s.) replied, “Surely, he (the muhaddath) hears the sound but does not see (the angel).”

I asked, “May Allah reform (your conditions)! How does he know that it is the talk of the angel?”

He (a.s.) informed, “Verily, he is granted calmness and dignity till he knows that it is an angel.”

## Notes:

Not seeing the angel by a muhaddath applies for the fallible believers (like Salman, Abuzar, etc. as is clear from the previous tradition) and not for the infallible Imams (a.s.). For, even the children of the infallible Imams (a.s.) could see the angels and converse with them.

In this narration, Imam (a.s.) clarifies the signs of a true and divine inspiration. Another sign is that it is always in conformity with the Shariah and divine teachings. For example, al-Hasan al-Basri heard a voice during the battle of Jamal. Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) warned him that it was the voice of the Satan.

## Reference:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 68, H. 7

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 323, H. 9, Chapter 6

# An Imam (a.s.) is aware of the celestial world in its entirety

عَنِ الرِّضَا عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ فِيْ حَدِيثٍ طَوِيلٍ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فِيْ كَلَامٍ لَهُمْ وَ اِنْ شِئْتُمْ اَخْبَرْتُكُمْ بِمَا هُوَ اَعْظَمُ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ قَالُوا فَافْعَلْ قَالَ كُنْتُ ذَاتَ لَيْلَةٍ تَحْتَ سَقِيفَةٍ مَعَ رَسُولِ اللهِ ص وَ اِنِّي لَاُحْصِي سِتًّا وَ سِتِّينَ وَطْاَةً مِنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ كُلُّ وَطْاَةٍ مِنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ اَعْرِفُهُمْ بِلُغَاتِهِمْ وَ صِفَاتِهِمْ وَ اَسْمَائِهِمْ وَ وَطْئِهِمْ

Imam Reza (a.s.) informs vide his forefathers (a.s.) in a lengthy narration that Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) said, “If you wish I can inform you of what is greater than that.”

They (the companions) requested, “Please do.”

He (a.s.) enlightened,

“One night I was under a porch with the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). I counted sixty-six steps of angels. I recognize each step from the angels with their languages, their attributes, their names and their steps.”

## Notes:

The angels frequented the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and the Imams (a.s.) to gain blessings from them

Like humans, the angels do have different languages. This should not be surprising because when humans with all their shortcomings and fallibility possess so many languages as a sign from Allah, then why the angels can’t have languages?

The narration also shows the various kinds of angels, having different names, attributes, etc.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 85, H. 47

Al-Kharaaej wa al-Jaraaeh, vol. 1, p. 192

# An Imam (a.s.) is aware of the created knowledge of Allah the High

عَنْ سَمَاعَةَ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اِنَّ لِلهِ عِلْمَيْنِ عِلْماً اَظْهَرَ عَلَيْهِ مَلَائِكَتَهُ وَ اَنْبِيَاءَهُ وَ رُسُلَهُ فَمَا اَظْهَرَ عَلَيْهِ مَلَائِكَتَهُ وَ رُسُلَهُ وَ اَنْبِيَاءَهُ فَقَدْ عَلِمْنَاهُ وَ عِلْماً اسْتَاْثَرَ بِهِ فَاِذَا بَدَا لِلهِ فِي شَيْ‏ءٍ مِنْهُ اَعْلَمَنَاهُ ذٰلِكَ وَ عُرِضَ عَلَى الْاَئِمَّةِ الَّذِينَ كَانُوا مِنْ قَبْلِنَا

Sama’ah reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said,

“Surely, for Allah there are two (types of) knowledge: a knowledge which He has manifested for His angels, His Prophets and His Messengers. So, whatever He has manifested for His angels, His Messengers and His Prophets, then indeed we know it. And (another kind of) knowledge is that which He has confined to Himself. Whenever there is a change for Allah in anything from it (i.e. this knowledge), He makes it known to us and it (i.e. this preserved knowledge) was presented to the Imams (a.s.), those who preceded us.”

## Notes:

This narration is indeed an amazing one vis-à-vis the divine knowledge of the Imams (a.s.). If one merely reflects on the contents of this tradition, he will be stupefied that an Imam (a.s.) knows everything what all the angels, the Prophets and the Messengers (peace be on them all) knew.

The angels, the Prophets and the Messengers (peace be on them) only knew what Allah the Almighty has made known to them. He has not given them the preserved knowledge. But the Imams (a.s.) have been given access even to this preserved knowledge by Allah the Omniscient.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 93, H. 23

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 394, Chapter 9, H. 6

# Imam’s (a.s.) eyes are unlike those of ordinary mortals

عَنْهُؑ قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ لَنَا اَعْيُنٌ لَا تُشْبِهُ اَعْيُنَ النَّاسِ وَ فِيهَا نُورٌ لَيْسَ لِلشَّيْطَانِ فِيهَا نَصِيبٌ

The narrator says, “I heard him (viz. Imam Sadeq a.s.) say,

‘We have eyes that are not similar to the eyes of the people. In it is a light and Satan has no share in it (i.e. there is no darkness or falsity or crookedness in it).”

## Notes:

As mentioned earlier, all the Imams (a.s.) are equal in general perfections like divine knowledge, mastership of the universe, mastership in the Shariah, traversing the earth in a flash, respect of all creatures for them, etc.

The Imams (a.s.) can see what other creatures cannot and their vision can never be wrong or misplaced because the Satan can never affect their vision. Whatever they see is reality per se, whether it belongs to the past, present or future.

When an Imam (a.s.) sees a man, he (a.s.) recognizes him vis-à-vis his lineage, his fate, etc.

Things being in front or behind, far or near, do not affect the Imam (a.s.) as his eyes have an encompassing vision due to the light of Allah the Almighty.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 66, H. 3

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 245, H. 427, 9th Majlis

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 419, H.1, Chapter 1

# Imam’s (a.s.) knowledge encompasses this world as well as the Hereafter

عُبَيْدَةُ بْنُ عَبْدِ اللهِ بْنِ بِشْرٍ الْخَثْعَمِيُّ وَ عَبْدُ اللهِ بْنُ بَشِيرٍ سَمِعُوا اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقُولُ اِنِّي لَاَعْلَمُ مَا فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَ اَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْاَرَضِينَ وَ اَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْجَنَّةِ وَ اَعْلَمُ مَا فِي النَّارِ وَ اَعْلَمُ مَا كَانَ وَ مَا يَكُونُ ثُمَّ مَكَثَ هُنَيْئَةً فَرَاَى اَنَّ ذٰلِكَ كَبُرَ عَلَى مَنْ سَمِعَهُ فَقَالَ عَلِمْتُ مِنْ كِتَابِ اللهِ اَنَّ اللهَ يَقُولُ فِيهِ تِبْيَانُ كُلِّ شَيْ‏ءٍ

Ubaidah Ibn Abdillah Ibn Bishr al-Khath’ami and Abdullah Ibn Basheer report that they heard Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say, ‘*By Allah! Verily, I know what is in the skies and what is in the earth and what is in the Paradise and what is in Hell and what was (in the past) and what will be (in the future) till the Day of Judgment’*.”

Then, he (a.s.) paused for a while and saw that this was difficult for the people (to digest) who were listening; so he (a.s.) elaborated, ‘*I know this from the Book of Allah; I look at it like this (and he opened his palm)’ and said, ‘***Surely, Allah says, ‘We have sent down the book in which is the explanation of all things**’.”

## Notes:

The term ‘**skies**’ is used extensively in the Quranic verses or traditions, which clearly state that there are seven skies. The second sky encompasses the first, the third encompasses the second and so on till the seventh sky which encompasses the sixth one.

The same applies for the earth as well.

Such a statement would astonish people even today despite the advance of technology and in the era of Google, then one can only imagine the bewilderment of the audience then.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 111, H. 8

Basaaer al-Darjaat, p. 128, Chapter 6, H. 5

# The Imams (a.s.) inherit the knowledge of the unseen from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

عَنْ سَيْفٍ‏ التَّمَّارِ قَالَ: كُنَّا مَعَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ جَمَاعَةً مِنَ الشِّيعَةِ فِي الْحِجْرِ فَقَالَ عَلَيْنَا عَيْنٌ فَالْتَفَتْنَا يَمْنَةً وَ يَسْرَةً فَلَمْ نَرَ اَحَداً فَقُلْنَا لَيْسَ عَلَيْنَا عَيْنٌ قَالَ وَ رَبِّ الْكَعْبَةِ وَ رَبِّ الْبَيْتِ ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ لَوْ كُنْتُ بَيْنَ مُوسٰى وَ الْخَضِرِ لَاَخْبَرْتُهُمَا اَنِّي اَعْلَمُ مِنْهُمَا وَ لَاَنْبَاْتُهُمَا بِمَا لَيْسَ فِي اَيْدِيهِمَا لِاَنَّ مُوسَى وَ الْخَضِرَ اُعْطِيَا عِلْمَ مَا كَانَ وَ لَمْ يُعْطَيَا عِلْمَ مَا هُوَ كَائِنٌ اِلٰى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ وَ اِنَّ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ اُعْطِيَ عِلْمَ مَا كَانَ وَ مَا هُوَ كَائِنٌ اِلٰى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ فَوَرِثْنَاهُ مِنْ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ وِرَاثَةً.

Saif al-Tammaar reports, “We – a group of Shiites – were with Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) in the Hijr (of Ismaaeel a.s.) when he (a.s.) informed us,

‘We are being watched (i.e. spied upon).’ So, we looked right and left but could not see anybody and said, ‘Nobody is watching us.’ He (a.s.) swore thrice, ‘By the Lord of the Ka’bah and by the Lord of the House! Had I been between (Prophet) Moosa (a.s.) and al-Khizr (a.s.), I would have certainly informed both of them since I am more knowledgeable than them and would have told them what they knew not. For, Moosa (a.s.) and al-Khizr (a.s.) were given the knowledge of the past but they were not given the knowledge of what will occur till the Day of Resurrection. Surely, the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) was given the knowledge of the past and what will occur till the Day of Resurrection and we have inherited from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) as inheritance’.”

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 129, Chapter 7, H. 1

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 111, H. 9

# Imams (a.s.) know the inner beliefs of every person

عَنِ ابْنِ نُبَاتَةَ قَالَ: كُنْتُ‏ جَالِساً عِنْدَ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ فَاَتَاهُ‏ رَجُلٌ فَقَالَ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ اِنِّي لَاُحِبُّكَ فِي السِّرِّ كَمَا اُحِبُّكَ فِي الْعَلَانِيَةِ قَالَ فَنَكَتَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ بِعُودٍ كَانَ فِي يَدِهِ فِي الْاَرْضِ سَاعَةً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَاْسَهُ فَقَالَ كَذَبْتَ وَ اللهِ مَا اَعْرِفُ وَجْهَكَ فِي الْوُجُوهِ وَ لَا اسْمَكَ فِي الْاَسْمَاءِ قَالَ الْاَصْبَغُ‏ فَعَجِبْتُ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ عَجَباً شَدِيداً فَلَمْ اَبْرَحْ حَتَّى اَتَاهُ رَجُلٌ آخَرُ فَقَالَ وَ اللهِ يَا اَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ اِنِّي لَاُحِبُّكَ فِي السِّرِّ كَمَا اُحِبُّكَ فِي الْعَلَانِيَةِ قَالَ فَنَكَتَ بِعُودِهِ ذٰلِكَ فِي الْاَرْضِ طَوِيلًا ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَاْسَهُ فَقَالَ صَدَقْتَ اِنَّ طِينَتَنَا طِينَةٌ مَرْحُومَةٌ اَخَذَ اللهُ مِيثَاقَهَا يَوْمَ اَخَذَ الْمِيثَاقَ فَلَا يَشِذُّ مِنْهَا شَاذٌّ وَ لَا يَدْخُلُ فِيهَا دَاخِلٌ اِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ ‏

Asbagh Ibn Nubaatah (r.a.) reports, “I was sitting with Ameerul Momineen (Ali Ibn Abi Talib) (a.s.) when a man came to him and said, ‘O Ameer al-Momineen! Surely, I love you in private like I adore you in public.’ Asbagh says, ‘Ameerul Momineen (a.s.) scratched in the earth with a piece of wood which he had in his hand for a while. Then, he (a.s.) raised his head and said, ‘You are lying. By Allah! I do not recognize your face among the faces (of my lovers) and your name in the names (of the lovers).’ Asbagh says, ‘I was exceedingly amazed at this. I had barely sat for some more time when another person came and declared, ‘O Ameer al-Momineen! By Allah! Surely, I love you in private like I adore you in public.’ Again, he (a.s.) scratched with that piece of wood in the earth for a long time. Thereafter, he (a.s.) raised his head and said,

‘You have spoken the truth. Verily, our soil (teenat) is the one which has Allah’s mercy. Allah has taken its covenant on the day of the covenant. Hence, none can come out from it nor can one enter it till the Day of Judgment’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 117, H. 1

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 409, 14th Majlis

# Imams (a.s.) know the ultimate fate of every person

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اَنَ‏ حَبَابَةَ الْوَالِبِيَّةَ كَانَ اِذَا وَفَدَ النَّاسُ اِلَى مُعَاوِيَةَ وَفَدَتْ هِيَ اِلَى الْحُسَيْنِؑ وَ كَانَتِ امْرَاَةً شَدِيدَةَ الْاِجْتِهَادِ قَدْ يَبِسَ جِلْدُهَا عَلَى بَطْنِهَا مِنَ الْعِبَادَةِ وَ اَنَّهَا خَرَجَتْ مَرَّةً وَ مَعَهَا ابْنُ عَمٍّ لَهَا غُلَامٌ فَدَخَلَتْ بِهِ عَلَى الْحُسَيْنِؑ فَقَالَتْ لَهُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ فَانْظُرْ هَلْ تَجِدُ ابْنَ عَمِّي هَذَا فِيمَا عِنْدَكُمْ وَ هَلْ تَجِدُهُ نَاجِياً قَالَ فَقَالَ نَعَمْ نَجِدُهُ عِنْدَنَا وَ نَجِدُهُ نَاجِيًا

Abu Baseer reports from Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.),

“When people used to go to Moaviyah (Ibn Abi Sufyan) (i.e. for seeking worldly favors), Habbaabah al-Waalebiyyah (r.a.) would visit Imam al-Husain (a.s.) (i.e. for seeking the Hereafter). She was a woman of intense struggle. Her stomach skin had become dry to excessive worship. Once, she came out with her young paternal cousin. She brought him to Imam al-Husain (a.s.) and asked, ‘May I be held your ransom! See, do you find this cousin of mine in what is with you (i.e. among your followers) and do you find him among the saved ones?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘Yes. We found him with us and we found him among the saved ones’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 122, H. 13

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 171, Chapter 3, H. 4

# A Shia should be concerned about his fate

عَنِ الْمَرْزُبَانِ‏ بْنِ عِمْرَانَ قَالَ: سَاَلْتُ الرِّضَاؑ عَنْ نَفْسِي فَقُلْتُ‏ اَسْاَلُكَ عَنْ اَهَمِ‏ الْاَشْيَاءِ اَ مِنْ شِيعَتِكُمْ اَنَا فَقَالَ نَعَمْ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ فَتَعْرِفُ اسْمِي فِي الْاَسْمَاءِ قَالَ نَعَمْ.

Al-Marzobaan Ibn Imraan reports, “I asked (Imam) al-Reza (a.s.) about myself. I said, ‘I want to ask you about the most important of things. Am I from your Shias?’ He (a.s.) replied, ‘Yes.’ I inquired, ‘May I be held your ransom! Do you recognize my name among the names (of your Shias in your register)?’ He (a.s.) answered, ‘Yes.’

## Note:

The above tradition and the previous traditions too show the knowledge of the unseen of the infallible Imams (a.s.). It should be borne in mind that this is by no means exaggeration in their (a.s.) position. Shias believe that all perfections of the Imams (a.s.) originally and essentially belong to Allah the Almighty. He grants perfections to whosoever He pleases. Hence, there is no question of polytheism (*shirk*). The Imams (a.s.) have themselves ordered their followers, “*Regard us as creatures (of Allah) (i.e. don’t attribute godhood to us) and then say whatever you want to about our merits.*” (Irshaad al-Quloob of al-Daylami (r.a.), vol. 2, p. 427; Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, p. 289, H. 45). In some other narrations, it has come after this narration that Imam (a.s.) said, “*You will never reach us*.” There are several such traditions. For details, one can refer, Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 25, Chapter 10 “Rejection of exaggeration concerning the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the Imams (a.s.), explanation of the meaning of delegation of affairs (*tafweez*) and what is NOT appropriate to attribute to them and what is appropriate.” In this chapter, Allamah Majlisi (r.a.) has recorded more than twenty-five traditions on this subject, which can also be a fitting riposte to the exaggerators.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 123, H. 16

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol.1, p. 173, H. 8

Ikhteyaar Marefah al-Rejaal of al-Kashi[[6]](#footnote-6), vol. 2, p. 794, No. 970

al-Ikhtesaas, p. 88 (with minor variation in the wordings)

# Imams (a.s.) know everyone without anyone’s introduction

عَنْ ضُرَيْسٍ‏ الْكُنَاسِيِ‏ قَالَ: كُنَّا عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ مَعَ جَمَاعَةٍ مِنْ اَصْحَابِنَا اِذْ دَخَلَ عَلَيْهِ رَجُلٌ‏ اَعْرِفُهُ‏ فَذَكَرَ رَجُلًا مِنْ اَصْحَابِنَا وَ لَمَزَهُ عِنْدَ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ فَلَمْ يُجِبْهُ بِشَيْ‏ءٍ فَظَنَّ الرَّجُلُ اَنَّ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِؑ لَمْ يَسْمَعْ فَاَعَادَ عَلَيْهِ اَيْضاً فَلَمْ يَلْتَفِتْ اِلَيْهِ فَظَنَّ الرَّجُلُ اَنَّهُ لَمْ يَسْمَعْ فَاَعَادَ الثَّالِثَةَ فَرَدَّ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَدَهُ اِلَى لِحْيَةِ الرَّجُلِ فَقَبَضَ عَلَيْهَا فَهَزَّهَا ثَلَاثاً حَتَّى ظَنَنْتُ اَنَّ لِحْيَتَهُ قَدْ صَارَتْ فِي يَدِهِ وَ قَالَ لَهُ اِنْ كُنْتُ لَا اَعْرِفُ الرَّجُلَ اِلَّا بِمَا اُبْلَغُ عَنْهُمْ فَبِئْسَ النَّسَبُ نَسَبِي ثُمَّ اَرْسَلَ لِحْيَتَهُ مِنْ يَدِهِ وَ نَفَخَ مَا بَقِيَ مِنَ الشَّعْرِ فِي كَفِّهِ.

Zurais al-Kunaasi reports, “We were with (Imam) Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) with a group of our companions when a person entered whom I know (but don’t want to name). He mentioned another person from our companions finding faults with him in front of Abu Abdillah (a.s.), who did not respond to him. He thought that Imam (a.s.) did not hear him and hence, repeated his criticism but Imam (a.s.) did not pay attention to him. Again, the person thought that Imam (a.s.) has not heard him and repeated his barb for the third time. At this point, Imam (a.s.) extended his hand to the beard of that man, seized it firmly, shook it thrice so much so that we thought that his beard had come in the hand of Imam (a.s.) and chided him, ‘If I don’t know a man except what is conveyed to me about him, then my genealogy is indeed a bad genealogy.’ Thereafter, Imam (a.s.) let go of his beard and blew away the hair in his hand.”

## Notes:

Imams (a.s.) know the past and future of each and every individual.

They (a.s.) are not in need of others’ introduction for the knowledge of people.

This is another amazing aspect of the knowledge of the unseen.

This narration also exemplifies the etiquette of interacting with the infallible Imams (a.s.). Firstly, Imam (a.s.) does not need our information unless he (a.s.) himself orders some duty for us. Secondly, if we have mentioned a point, we must not repeat it thinking that he has not heard it because Imam (a.s.) is not like us with limited faculties.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 129, H. 34

Al-Ikhtesaas, p. 307

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 361, H. 1

# Knowledge of the Unseen of Imams (a.s.) is proof of Allah’s Divinity

عَلِيُّ بْنُ اِسْمَاعِيلَ‏ عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ عُمَرَ عَنْ اِسْمَاعِيلَ الْاَزْرَقِ‏ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ‏ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ‏ يَقُولُ‏ اِنَّ اللهَ اَحْكَمُ وَ اَكْرَمُ وَ اَجَلُّ وَ اَعْلَمُ مِنْ اَنْ يَكُونَ احْتَجَّ عَلَى عِبَادِهِ بِحُجَّةٍ ثُمَّ يُغَيِّبُ عَنْهُ شَيْئاً مِنْ اَمْرِهِمْ.

Ali Ibn Ismaaeel al-Azraq reports, “I heard (Imam) Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) say,

‘Surely Allah is more Prudent, Nobler, more Majestic and more Knowing than that He completes His arguments upon His servants with a divine proof and then hides anything from their affairs from him.”

## Notes:

In this tradition, Imam (a.s.) cites knowledge of the unseen as proof of Allah’s divinity

Imams (a.s.) know all the affairs related to His creatures. Nothing is hidden from them (a.s.) because such lack of knowledge would be a question on Allah’s wisdom, nobility, majesty and knowledge.

Nobody – not even the angels –know more than the Imams (a.s.). In fact, we cannot even compare the knowledge of Imams (a.s.) with that of any other creature of Allah the Almighty.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, 137, H.1

Basaaer al-Darajaat, vol. 1, p. 122, H. 1

# None was given such knowledge which Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) was given

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ اُعْطِيتُ تِسْعاً لَمْ يُعْطَهَا اَحَدٌ قَبْلِي سِوَى النَّبِيِّ ﷺ لَقَدْ فُتِحَتْ لِيَ السُّبُلُ وَ عَلِمْتُ الْمَنَايَا وَ الْبَلَايَا وَ الْاَنْسَابَ وَ فَصْلَ الْخِطَابِ وَ لَقَدْ نَظَرْتُ فِي الْمَلَكُوتِ بِاِذْنِ رَبِّي فَمَا غَابَ عَنِّي مَا كَانَ قَبْلِي وَ لَا مَا يَاْتِي بَعْدِي وَ اِنَّ بِوَلَايَتِي اَكْمَلَ اللهُ لِهَذِهِ الْاُمَّةِ دِينَهُمْ وَ اَتَمَّ عَلَيْهِمُ النِّعَمَ وَ رَضِيَ لَهُمْ اِسْلَامَهُمْ اِذْ يَقُولُ يَوْمَ الْوَلَايَةِ لِمُحَمَّدٍ ص يَا مُحَمَّدُ اَخْبِرْهُمْ اَنِّي اَكْمَلْتُ لَهُمُ الْيَوْمَ دِينَهُمْ وَ اَتْمَمْتُ عَلَيْهِمُ النِّعَمَ وَ رَضِيتُ اِسْلَامَهُمْ كُلُّ ذٰلِكَ مَنّاً مِنَ اللهِ عَلَيَّ فَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) narrates from Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.),

“I have been bestowed with nine things, none before me has been given before me except the Prophet (s.a.w.a.). Indeed, the paths have been opened for me, I know the times of death, calamities, genealogy and the decisive statement; indeed, I looked in the celestial worlds with the permission of my Lord, so whatever was in the past is not concealed from me nor whatever will come after me. Surely, through my mastership Allah has perfected for this nation their religion and completed their bounties upon them and was satisfied for them with their Islam when He says on the Day of Mastership to (Prophet) Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), ‘O Muhammad! Inform them that I have perfected for them their religion, completed for them their bounties and am satisfied with their Islam. All of these are from us from Allah upon me. So, praise be to Him.”

## Notes:

“*The paths have been opened for me*” implies that all the sciences and knowledge – without exception – are open and clear for me i.e. like the palm of my hand.

“*Decisive statement*” means the one which distinguishes the truth from the falsehood.

“*Day of Mastership*” is the Day of Ghadeer Khumm i.e. 18th Zilhajj 10 Hijri.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 141, H. 14

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 201, H. 4, Chapter 9

Al-Khesaal, vol. 2, p. 414, H. 4

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 205, 8th Majlis

Taveel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah, p. 113

# “Ask me before you lose me”

عَنْ هِشَامِ بْنِ سَالِمٍ رَفَعَهُ اِلَى اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ قَالَ سَلُونِي قَبْلَ اَنْ تَفْقِدُونِي اَ لَا تَسْاَلُونَ مَنْ عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ الْمَنَايَا وَ الْبَلَايَا وَ الْقَضَايَا وَ فَصْلِ الْخِطَابِ

Hisham Ibn Saalim (al-Jawaaleeqi) [a great companion of Imam Sadeq a.s.] narrates a chainless tradition from Ameer al-Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.),

“Ask me before you lose me. Will you not ask the one who has the knowledge of the time of deaths, calamities, judgments and decisive statement?”

## Notes:

The above narration shows the eagerness of Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) that people should learn from him.

It also proves his humility as we observe that great teachers of the world – of course they cannot be compared to Ali (a.s.) – never exhort the masses to learn from them. Unfortunately, people did not go to him (a.s.) barring very few who could be counted on finger-tips.

We see the same approach even today. People are not at all interested in the knowledge of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). If at all some people are keen, they are more interested in minor jurisprudence (laws) than major jurisprudence (beliefs).

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 146, H. 24

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 267, H. 7, Chapter 2

Kitaab Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Hilaali (r.a.), p. 712, H. 17 with more detail

# Each of the infallible Imams of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) has knowledge of the unseen

عَنِ ابْنِ نُبَاتَةَ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ اِنَّا اَهْلُ بَيْتٍ عُلِّمْنَا عِلْمَ الْمَنَايَا وَ الْبَلَايَا وَ الْاَنْسَابِ وَ اللهِ لَوْ اَنَّ رَجُلًا مِنَّا قَامَ عَلَى جِسْرٍ ثُمَّ عُرِضَتْ عَلَيْهِ هَذِهِ الْاُمَّةُ لَحَدَّثَهُمْ بِاَسْمَائِهِمْ وَ اَنْسَابِهِمْ

(Asbagh) Ibn Nubaatah reports that Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) said,

“Surely, we Ahle Bait (a.s.) are given the knowledge of the time of deaths, calamities and genealogy. By Allah! If anyone from us (Ahle Bait a.s.) stands on a bridge, then this nation is presented to him, he will inform them of their names and their lineage.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 147, H. 28

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 268, H. 12, Chapter 2

# Guidance and lives of Imams (a.s.) and those of their enemies

29- ير، [بصائر الدرجات‏] مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِ عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ سِنَانٍ عَنْ عِمْرَانَ بْنِ مَرْوَانَ عَنِ الْمُنَخَّلِ عَنْ جَابِرٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ سَمِعْتُهُ يَقُولُ اِنَّا اَهْلُ بَيْتٍ عُلِّمْنَا الْمَنَايَا وَ الْبَلَايَا وَ الْاَنْسَابَ فَاعْتَبِرُوا بِنَا وَ بِعَدُوِّنَا وَ بِهُدَانَا وَ بِهُدَاهُمْ وَ بِقَضَائِنَا وَ بِقَضَائِهِمْ وَ بِحُكْمِنَا وَ بِحُكْمِهِمْ وَ مِيتَتِنَا وَ مِيتَتِهِمْ يَمُوتُونَ بِالْقَرْحَةِ وَ الدُّبَيْلَةِ وَ نَمُوتُ بِمَا شَاءَ اللهُ

Jaabir reports, “I heard Imam Abu Jafar (Muhammad al-Baqir (a.s.)) say,

‘Surely, we Ahle Bait (a.s.) are given the knowledge of the times of death, calamities and genealogy. So take lesson through us and our enemy, our guidance and their guidance, our decree and their decree, our judgment and their judgment, our deaths and their deaths; they die with diseases and tuberculosis and we die as we please.”

## Note:

The reason for advising to compare is to enable a person to distinguish truth from falsehood. When one analyzes these facets mentioned in the tradition, he can easily distinguish the divinely appointed Caliph from the usurper.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 147, H. 29

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 268, H. 15, Chapter 2

Kitaab-o-Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Hilali (r.a.), p. 715, H. 17

# Imams (a.s.) are aware of our conversations

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ اتَّقُوا الْكَلَامَ فَاِنَّا نُؤْتَى بِهِ

Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) warned,

“Be careful of (your) speech, for surely, it is brought to us.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 151, H. 36

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 396, H. 1, Chapter 11

Al-Ikhtesaas, p. 314

# Allah grants the knowledge of the unseen to His Proofs (a.s.)

عَنْ صَالِحِ بْنِ عُقْبَةَ الْاَسَدِيِّ عَنْ اَبِيهِ قَالَ قَالَ لِي اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ يَقُولُونَ بِاَمْرٍ ثُمَّ يَكْسِرُونَهُ وَ يُضَعِّفُونَهُ يَزْعُمُونَ اَنَّ اللهَ احْتَجَّ عَلَى خَلْقِهِ بِرَجُلٍ ثُمَّ يَحْجُبُ عَنْهُ عِلْمَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَ الْاَرْضِ لَا وَ اللهِ لَا وَ اللهِ لَا وَ اللهِ قُلْتُ فَمَا كَانَ مِنْ اَمْرِ هَؤُلَاءِ الطَّوَاغِيتِ وَ اَمْرِ الْحُسَيْنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّؑ فَقَالَ لَوْ اَنَّهُمْ اَلَحُّوا فِيهِ عَلَى اللهِ لَاَجَابَهُمُ اللهُ وَ كَانَ يَكُونُ اَهْوَنَ مِنْ سِلْكٍ فِيهِ خَرَزٌ انْقَطَعَ فَذَهَبَ وَ لَكِنْ كَيْفَ اِنَّا اِذاً نُرِيدُ غَيْرَ مَا اَرَادَ اللهُ

Saaleh Ibn Uqbah al-Asadi reports from his father, “Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) told me,

‘They believe in an affair (i.e. Imamate), then they break it and weaken it. They think that Allah has completed His argument upon His creatures with a man but has hidden from him the knowledge of the heavens and the earth. No, by Allah! No, by Allah! No, by Allah! (this is not so).’

I asked, ‘Then what is the reason for this incident between these devils and the issue of al-Husain Ibn Ali (a.s.)? (If these divine proofs were so important, why Allah has allowed these devils (i.e. Bani Umayyah) to perpetrate the tragedy of Aashuraa?)’.

Imam (a.s.) replied,

‘If they (viz. Imam Husain and his companions) would have prayed to Allah to prevent the incident of Aashuraa, He would have certainly answered their prayers and this was easier than a thread, in which there’s a bead, which breaks and the bead disappears. But how would such a thing happen? For, we (Ahle Bait a.s.) don’t intend except whatever Allah intends’.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 152, H. 39

Al-Kharaaej wa al-Jaraaeh, vol. 2, p. 871

# Every truth is from Ahle Bait (a.s.) and every falsehood is from the people

عَنْ مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اَمَا اِنَّهُ لَيْسَ عِنْدَ اَحَدٍ مِنَ النَّاسِ حَقٌّ وَ لَا صَوَابٌ اِلَّا شَيْ‏ءٌ اَخَذُوهُ مِنَّا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَ لَا اَحَدٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ يَقْضِي بِحَقٍّ وَ عَدْلٍ اِلَّا وَ مِفْتَاحُ ذٰلِكَ الْقَضَاءِ وَ بَابُهُ وَ اَوَّلُهُ وَ سُنَنُهُ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ فَاِذَا اشْتُبِهَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الْاُمُورُ كَانَ الْخَطَاُ مِنْ قِبَلِهِمْ اِذَا اَخْطَئُوا وَ الصَّوَابُ مِنْ قِبَلِ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ

Muhammad Ibn Muslim reports from Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer a.s.) who said, “Know that there is neither truth nor fact with anyone from the people except that they have taken it from us Ahle Bait (a.s.). None from the people judges with truth and justice except the key to that decree, its door, its beginning and its path is Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.). When affairs are confusing for them, the mistakes are from their side when they err and the truth is from the side of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.).”

## Notes:

Divine emissaries and ambassadors like the Prophets, Messengers and Imams (peace be on them all) are the lights that show people the right path and realities. If man takes guidance from their teachings in all aspects of his life, he will be fortunate in this world as well as the hereafter.

Carnal desires, satanic whisperings, insinuations of the self, etc. are the factors that prevent humans from benefiting from the above lights. If these devilish forces overpower the human being, wretchedness becomes his fate in this world as well as in the hereafter.

Interestingly, both divine as well as devilish forces have left their imprint in history for us to take lessons, provided we use the lights of intellect and conscience.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, H. 26, p. 157, H. 3, Chapter 11

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Mufeed (r.a.), p. 95, 11th Majlis.

Similar hadis with slight variation in Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 519, H. 4, Chapter 19

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 27, p. 68, Chapter 7, H. 33222

# The Ahle Bait (a.s.) have been given the created knowledge of Allah the Almighty

عَنْ جَعْفَرِ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ عَنْ اَبِيهِؑ قَالَ اِنَّ لِلهِ عِلْماً خَاصّاً وَ عِلْماً عَامّاً فَاَمَّا الْعِلْمُ الْخَاصُّ فَالْعِلْمُ الَّذِي لَمْ يُطْلِعْ عَلَيْهِ مَلَائِكَتَهُ الْمُقَرَّبِينَ وَ اَنْبِيَاءَهُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ وَ اَمَّا عِلْمُهُ الْعَامُّ فَاِنَّهُ عِلْمُهُ الَّذِي اَطْلَعَ عَلَيْهِ مَلَائِكَتَهُ الْمُقَرَّبِينَ وَ اَنْبِيَاءَهُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ وَ قَدْ وَقَعَ اِلَيْنَا مِنْ رَسُولِ اللهِ ص

Imam Jafar al-Sadeq (a.s.) narrates from his father (Imam al-Baqer a.s.) who said,

“Surely, for Allah there are two (types of) knowledge: special knowledge and general knowledge. As for the special knowledge, then it is the knowledge about which He has neither informed His proximate angels nor His sent messengers. But as for His general knowledge, then it is His knowledge which He has given to His proximate angels and His sent messengers; indeed, it (this knowledge) has come to us from the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 4, p. 85, H. 19 and vol. 26, p. 160, H. 3

Al-Tauheed, p. 138, H. 14, Chapter 10

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 109, H. 1 and p. 111, H. 12, Chapter 21

# The Ahle Bait (a.s.) have the knowledge of the Entire Book

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ الْكِتابِ هُوَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ وَ سُئِلَ عَنِ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ مِنَ الْكِتابِ اَعْلَمُ اَمِ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ الْكِتابِ فَقَالَ مَا كَانَ عِلْمُ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ مِنَ الْكِتابِ عِنْدَ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ الْكِتابِ اِلَّا بِقَدْرِ مَا تَاْخُذُ الْبَعُوضَةُ بِجَنَاحِهَا مِنْ مَاءِ الْبَحْرِ وَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ صَلَوَاتُ اللهِ عَلَيْهِ اَلَا اِنَّ الْعِلْمَ الَّذِي هَبَطَ بِهِ آدَمُ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ اِلَى الْاَرْضِ وَ جَمِيعَ مَا فُضِّلَتْ بِهِ النَّبِيُّونَ اِلَى خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ فِي عِتْرَةِ خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ

Imam Sadeq (a.s.) says, “**The one who had the (entire) knowledge of the Book**” refers to Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.).” He (a.s.) was asked whether “**the one who had with him the knowledge from the Book**” was more knowledgeable or the one who had the (entire) knowledge of the Book. He (a.s.) replied, “The knowledge of the one who had knowledge from the Book when compared to the one who had the (entire) knowledge of the Book is naught but what a sparrow can take in its wings from the ocean’s water. Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) said, ‘Surely, the knowledge which (Prophet) Adam (a.s.) brought from the sky to the earth and all the knowledge that was conferred upon the Prophets (a.s.) till the Seal of the Messengers (s.a.w.a.) is available in the progeny of the Seal of the Prophets (s.a.w.a.)’.”

## Notes:

The verse of Surah Naml refers to the miracle of the successor of Prophet Sulaiman (a.s.), Asif Ibn Barkhiya (a.s.), who brought the throne of the Queen of Yemen, Bilqis, to Jerusalem, in a flash, before anyone could even bat his eyelid.

This shows that real power is rooted in knowledge.

Asif Ibn Barkhiya (a.s.) was given by Allah the Almighty only a fraction of the knowledge of the Book but with it he could perform such amazing feats.

Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.) and his eleven infallible successors (a.s.) have the knowledge of the entire Book. It is beyond the intellect to comprehend the extent of the power that they (a.s.) enjoy over the universe – seen as well as the unseen. Hence, no other mortal can ever be compared to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his infallible progeny (a.s.) in any aspect. Can a sparrow be compared to an ocean? Hence, none should dare to take any of the titles of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Take lesson, O people of wisdom!

The mention of a sparrow and the ocean is to show the impossibility of comparison. Otherwise, the knowledge of Asif Ibn Barkhiya (a.s.) was even lesser than that of the sparrow when compared to the ocean of the knowledge of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

The last sentence of the aforementioned tradition truly confounds the intellect when it attempts to visualize this great aspect of their existence.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 160, H. 6 and vol. 35, p. 429, H. 2

Tafseer al-Qummi, vol. 1 p. 367

# A divinely appointed Imam (a.s.) knows all the languages that people speak

عَنِ الْهَرَوِيِّ قَالَ كَانَ الرِّضَاؑ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ بِلُغَاتِهِمْ وَ كَانَ وَ اللهِ اَفْصَحَ النَّاسِ وَ اَعْلَمَهُمْ بِكُلِّ لِسَانٍ وَ لُغَةٍ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ يَوْماً يَا ابْنَ رَسُولِ اللهِ اِنِّي لَاَعْجَبُ مِنْ مَعْرِفَتِكَ بِهَذِهِ اللُّغَاتِ عَلَى اخْتِلَافِهَا فَقَالَ يَا اَبَا الصَّلْتِ اَنَا حُجَّةُ اللهِ عَلَى خَلْقِهِ وَ مَا كَانَ لِيَتَّخِذَ حُجَّةً عَلَى قَوْمٍ وَ هُوَ لَا يَعْرِفُ لُغَاتِهِمْ اَ وَ مَا بَلَغَكَ قَوْلُ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ اُوتِينَا فَصْلَ الْخِطَابِ فَهَلْ فَصْلُ الْخِطَابِ اِلَّا مَعْرِفَةُ اللُّغَات‏

Al-Harawi reports, “(Imam) al-Reza (a.s.) used to converse with the people in their languages. By Allah! He (a.s.) was the most eloquent and most knowledgeable of the people in their languages and mother-tongues.

One day, I asked him (a.s.), ‘O son of Allah’s Messenger! I am truly amazed at your knowledge of all these languages despite their variations!’

He (a.s.) replied,

‘O Aba al-Sult! I am Allah’s Proof upon His creation and it does not behove that He appoints somebody as a divine proof upon a nation while he does not know their languages. Did you not hear the saying of Ameer al-Momineen (a.s.), ‘We have been given the decisive statement?’ So, is the decisive statement anything except the knowledge of the languages?”

## Notes:

Knowing the peoples’ languages is one of the signs of a divinely appointed Imam (a.s.). By this, one can easily distinguish a true Imam from a pseudo one.

Not only he knows all the languages but he is more eloquent than the native speakers.

The usurpers of caliphate could not even understand the language which was revealed in their mother tongue viz. Arabic. So, there is no question of them understanding other languages.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 190, H. 1 and vol. 49, p. 87, H. 3

Oyoon Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 2, p. 228, H. 3

# Making Ahle Bait (a.s.) happy and joyous makes one eligible for the Messenger of Allah’s (s.a.w.a.) intercession

عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَنْ جَدِّهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ص مَنْ اَرَادَ التَّوَسُّلَ اِلَيَّ وَ اَنْ يَكُونَ لَهُ عِنْدِي يَدٌ اَشْفَعُ لَهُ بِهَا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ فَلْيَصِلْ اَهْلَ بَيْتِي وَ يُدْخِلِ السُّرُورَ عَلَيْهِمْ

Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer) (a.s.) narrates vide his ancestors (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Whoever desires my mediation and that my hand should be there for him by which I will intercede for him on the Day of Judgment, then he must join relations with my Ahle Bait (a.s.) and cause happiness unto them.”

## Notes:

It is impossible for any ordinary mortal to go to Paradise without the intercession and mediation of divine emissaries viz. the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and his Ahle Bait (a.s.) because all of us – without exception – are having more sins in our accounts than good deeds.

The most basic condition of eligibility for the intercession and mediation of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) on the Day of Judgment is to fasten unto the Ahle Bait (a.s.) and make them happy and joyous.

History has proved beyond any doubt that the Muslim nation, far from making the Ahle Bait (a.s.) happy and joyous, subjected them to the worst and most unimaginable tortures. Barely a week in the martyrdom of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), his so-called companions came to the house of Hazrat Zahra (s.a.), burnt its door and assaulted her ruthlessly, leading to the miscarriage of her son Mohsin Ibn Ali (a.s.). This was followed up by the usurpation of Fadak and other criminal perpetrations. To get an idea of these, one can refer to the sentences of Dua-e-Nudbah.

## References:

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 379, H. 5, Majlis 60

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 423, H. 947/4, Majlis 15

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 227, H. 1

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 7, p. 203, H. 9115, Chapter 42

Rauzah al-Waaezeen, vol.2, p. 273

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 399

# Believing Ahle Bait (a.s.) to be the most superior after the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)

عَنْ اَبِي حَمْزَةَ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اِذَا كَانَ يَوْمُ الْقِيَامَةِ جَمَعَ اللهُ الْاَوَّلِينَ وَ الْآخِرِينَ فَيُنَادِي مُنَادٍ مَنْ كَانَتْ لَهُ عِنْدَ رَسُولِ اللهِ ﷺ يَدٌ فَلْيَقُمْ فَيَقُومُ عُنُقٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ فَيَقُولُ مَا كَانَتْ اَيَادِيكُمْ عِنْدَ رَسُولِ اللهِ ص فَيَقُولُونَ كُنَّا نُفَضِّلُ اَهْلَ بَيْتِهِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَيُقَالُ لَهُمُ اذْهَبُوا فَطُوفُوا فِي النَّاسِ فَمَنْ كَانَتْ لَهُ عِنْدَكُمْ يَدٌ فَخُذُوا بِيَدِهِ فَاَدْخِلُوهُ الْجَنَّةَ

Abu Hamzah al-Thumaali (r.a.) reports that Imam Abu Ja’far (al-Baqer a.s.) said, “On the Day of Judgment, Allah will gather the first ones and the last ones; then a caller will call, ‘Whoever had a hand with the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) should stand up’. A group of people will rise. The caller will say: ‘What were your hands with the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)?’ They will reply: ‘We considered his Ahle Bait (a.s.) the most superior after him (s.a.w.a.).’ It will be told to them: Go and circumambulate among the people. Whoever had a hand with you, hold his hand and take him to Paradise’.”

## Notes:

True faith and correct beliefs are the most important criteria for divine intercession on the Day of Judgment; the most important of which is to believe in the Imamat of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) after the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) because the correctness of all beliefs lies in believing in them. For, they are the ones who teach the correct beliefs and methods of worship. Otherwise, a person will fall in the precipice of destruction.

Whoever has correct beliefs can himself be an intercessor on the Day of Judgment.

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 228, H. 4

Tafseer al-Qummi (r.a.)

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 16, p. 335, H. 21697

# Importance of remembrance and love of Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ اَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ ذِكْرُنَا اَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ شِفَاءٌ مِنَ الْوَعْكِ وَ الْاَسْقَامِ وَ وَسْوَاسِ الرَّيْبِ وَ حُبُّنَا رِضَى الرَّبِّ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى

Imam Jafar al-Sadeq (a.s.) informs that Ameer al-Momineen (Ali Ibn Abi Talib) (a.s.) said,

“The remembrance of us Ahle Bait (a.s.) is a cure from illnesses, ailments and insinuations of skepticism; and our love is the satisfaction of the Lord – Blessed and High be He.”

## Notes:

Remembrance implies any form of remembrance. For example, writing an eulogy/elegy or reciting it or listening to it or even organizing a gathering where eulogies or elegies are recited and people remember the progeny of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

One of the things highly recommended is to hold gatherings wherein the traditions and teachings of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are discussed.

Scarcity of numbers must never be a deterrent in the organization of such meetings/classes/gatherings. Even two persons suffice to gain the above rewards. Nay! If nobody comes, the person can remember them (a.s.) alone.

Such remembrances are best defense from the insinuations of the Iblis, the worst being insinuating doubts in beliefs of a person.

“…*cure from illnesses and ailments*…” follows the same rules like that of taking the soil of Imam Husain (a.s.) as a cure from all kinds of ailments and diseases.

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 62, Chapter 83, H. 107

Tafseer al-Furaat, p. 366

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 227, H. 2

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 16, p. 348, Chapter 23, H. 21732

# One who helps the Ahle Bait (a.s.) helps Allah the High

قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ مَنْ وَصَلَنَا وَصَلَ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ وَ مَنْ وَصَلَ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ فَقَدْ وَصَلَ اللهَ تَبَارَكَ وَ تَعَالَى

Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.) said,

“One who serves us has served the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and whoever serves the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), then indeed he has served Allah – Blessed and High be He.”

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 62, H. 109

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 228, H. 5

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 16, p. 336, H. 21698, Chapter 17

# The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) will compensate the one who helps the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ مَنِ اصْطَنَعَ اِلَى اَحَدٍ مِنْ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي يَداً كَافَيْتُهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

Ameer al-Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Whoever helps anyone (of the Imams) from my Ahle Bait (a.s.), I will compensate him on the Day of Judgment.”

## Notes:

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) has undertaken to compensate the one who helps any Imam (a.s.) from his Ahle Bait (a.s.). It is beyond one’s imagination to visualize the quantity and quality of this reward.

Every follower of Ahle Bait (a.s.) must strive to devote some part of his week – if not the day – to serve the Imams of the Ahle Bait (a.s.), especially the Imam of his time (a.t.f.s.)

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 1, p. 63, H. 111, Chapter 87

Tafseer al-Furaat, p. 311

Sa’d al-So’ood, p. 257

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 228, H. 6

# Magnitude of the Holy Prophet’s (s.a.w.a.) compensation

عَنِ الصَّادِقِ عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ مَنْ وَصَلَ اَحَداً مِنْ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي فِي دَارِ الدُّنْيَا بِقِيرَاطٍ كَافَيْتُهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ بِقِنْطَارٍ

Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.) reports vide his ancestors (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Whoever helps anyone (of the Imams) from my Ahle Bait (a.s.) in this world with a carat, I will compensate him on the Day of Judgment with a kantar.”

## Notes:

The tradition emphasizes helping the Ahle Bait (a.s.) in this world.

The comparison is only to show the magnitude of the compensation of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for the one who serves his Ahle Bait (a.s.) in this world. Otherwise, none can imagine the magnitude of this compensation.

## References:

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 399, H. 14, Majlis 62

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Toosi (r.a.), p. 439, H. 984, Majlis 15

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) le Shiah al-Murtaza (a.s.), p. 168

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 228, H. 7

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 16, p. 335, H. 21696, Chapter 17

# Paradise is prohibited for the one who oppresses the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ مُوسَى الرِّضَا عَنْ آبَائِهِؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ حُرِّمَتِ الْجَنَّةُ عَلَى مَنْ ظَلَمَ اَهْلَ بَيْتِي وَ آذَانِي فِي عِتْرَتِي

Imam al-Reza (a.s.) reports vide his ancestors (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) informed,

“Whoever oppresses my Ahle Bait (a.s.) and troubles me concerning my progeny, Paradise will be made haram (prohibited) for him…”

## Notes:

Oppressing or troubling the Ahle Bait (a.s.) is not limited or restricted to their lives in this world. It applies to those also who trouble the Ahle Bait (a.s.) after they have gone to the world of souls (Barzakh). For example, a wretched Saudi mufti orders that the graves of the daughter of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the Imams of al-Baqee’ (a.s.) be destroyed. Thus, such a mufti will never enter Paradise regardless of his other acts of worship in this world.

Those who support the oppressors or defend them or justify their misdeeds are among those for whom this tradition will apply, based on the narration, “One who is satisfied with the action of a nation is like the one who has done that action himself.” (Ghurar al-Hekam).

## References:

Banaa al-Maqaalah, p. 392

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 106

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 228, H. 8

# Ali Ibn Abi Talib’s (a.s.) remembrance is worship

عَنْ عَائِشَةَ قَالَتْ قَالَ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ ذِكْرُ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ عِبَادَةٌ

Ayesha reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Remembrance of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is worship.”

## Notes:

The word ‘remembrance’ is used in its absolute meaning. One can remember his teachings about beliefs, his miracles, his merits, his excellences, his worship, his character, his morals, his etiquette, his bravery, the afflictions that he encountered, etc.

This remembrance can be done through books, speeches, poems, elegies, etc.

Worship obviously implies the worship of Allah the Almighty because Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is the greatest sign of Allah the Almighty upon His creatures after the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). When looking at ordinary creations like sun, moon, stars, camels, etc. has been recommended and considered worship, none but a diehard bigot and intransigent extremist will doubt that remembering Ali (a.s.) is Allah’s worship.

This tradition applies for all the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.). That is, the remembrance of any one of them is divine worship because they are all divine proofs.

Question: Ayesha was known to dislike Ali (a.s.) as mentioned by him (a.s.) in Nahj al-Balaaghah and as is known through several of her actions recorded in traditions and history. Then, why has she narrated traditions in favor of him (a.s.)?

Answer: a) Allah is Kind and Merciful to His servants. He will never allow the truth to be destroyed. Hence, He has made such provisions wherein the evidence of truth will be all around, even in the utterances of the opponents.

b) After the martyrdom of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), Ayesha had a love-hate relationship with the Bani Umayyah. When she had good relations with them, she related traditions against the Ahle Bait (a.s.) to please them but when their relationship soured, she spoke in favor of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) to prove to the Bani Umayyah that the real successors of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) were Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and his sons (a.s.).

## References:

Meah Manqebah, p. 136, Manqebah No. 68

Al-Seraat al-Mustaqeem, vol. 1, p. 209, Section 17

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 229, H. 9, Chapter 1

# Rewards for discussing Ali Ibn Abi Talib’s (a.s.) excellences and merits

عَنِ الصَّادِقِ جَعْفَرِ بْنِ مُحَمَّدٍؑ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اِنَّ اللهَ تَعَالَى جَعَلَ لِاَخِي عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ فَضَائِلَ لَا تُحْصَى كَثْرَةً فَمَنْ قَرَاَ فَضِيلَةً مِنْ فَضَائِلِهِ مُقِرّاً بِهَا غَفَرَ اللهُ لَهُ مَا تَقَدَّمَ مِنْ ذَنْبِهِ وَ مَا تَاَخَّرَ وَ مَنْ كَتَبَ فَضِيلَةً مِنْ فَضَائِلِهِ لَمْ تَزَلِ الْمَلَائِكَةُ يَسْتَغْفِرُونَ لَهُ مَا بَقِيَ لِتِلْكَ الْكِتَابَةِ رَسْمٌ وَ مَنِ اسْتَمَعَ اِلَى فَضِيلَةٍ مِنْ فَضَائِلِهِ غَفَرَ اللهُ لَهُ الذُّنُوبَ الَّتِي اكْتَسَبَهَا بِالسَّمْعِ وَ مَنْ نَظَرَ اِلَى كِتَابَةٍ مِنْ فَضَائِلِهِ غَفَرَ اللهُ لَهُ الذُّنُوبَ الَّتِي اكْتَسَبَهَا بِالنَّظَرِ ثُمَّ قَالَ النَّظَرُ اِلَى عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ عِبَادَةٌ وَ لَا يَقْبَلُ اللهُ اِيمَانَ عَبْدٍ اِلَّا بِوَلَايَتِهِ وَ الْبَرَاءَةِ مِنْ اَعْدَائِهِ

Imam al-Sadeq (a.s.) reports that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) said,

“Surely, Allah the High has made for my brother Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) excellences that cannot be counted due to their excessive numbers.

So, whoever recites an excellence from his excellences while accepting them as well, Allah will forgive for him his past and future sins;

And whoever writes an excellence from his excellences, the angels will incessantly seek forgiveness for him till a copy of this writing remains;

And whoever hears an excellence from his excellences, Allah will forgive those of his sins that he has committed with his ears;

And whoever looks at the writing of his excellences, Allah will forgive him sins which he has committed with his eyes.”

Thereafter, he (s.a.w.a.) declared,

“Looking at Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is worship and Allah will not accept the faith of a person except through his mastership and dissociation from his enemies.”

## Notes:

Ameerul Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib’s excellences and merits are gifted to him by Allah the Almighty and not acquired by practice as some ignoramuses suggest.

If the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) says that Ali’s (a.s.) excellences and merits cannot be counted due to their infinite numbers, then surely this is the case because the infallible guides (a.s.) are not prone to exaggeration.

An important condition in this tradition is not only reciting or writing or reading or listening to these traditions but to believe in and accept them as well. And belief is something that is known to Allah alone. Hence, none can deceive Allah in this regard to obtain rewards.

Every angel’s prayers is accepted because he is infallible. If one angel prays for a person, his sins are forgiven. Then what will be the condition of the one for whom a multitude of angels pray?

Writing an excellence does not necessarily mean that it should be published as a book. Any believing man or woman, when he/she reads or listens to a tradition in a majlis or a class, records it in his/her notebook, he/she will get this reward till that tradition remains.

Condition for belief is mastership of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and dissociation from his enemies. Without dissociation, mastership will NOT be accepted.

All the conditions mentioned in this tradition will apply to all the fourteen infallible guides (a.s.) and are not restricted to Ameer al-Momineen Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) alone. For, they are all equal in their perfections barring some specific areas that will be discussed later, Allah willing.

## References:

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 138, H.9, Majlis 28

Banaa al-Maqaalah, p. 369

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 229, H. 10

Rauzah al-Waaezeen, vol. 1, p. 114

Kashf al-Ghummah, vol. 1, p. 112

# The opponents could not conceal the excellences of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.)

عَنْ عَائِشَةَ قَالَتْ دَخَلَ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍ عَلَى اَبِي فِي مَرَضِهِ الَّذِي قَبَضَهُ اللهُ فِيهِ فَجَعَلَ يَنْظُرُ اِلَى عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ فَمَا يَزِيغُ بَصَرُهُ عَنْهُ فَلَمَّا خَرَجَ عَلِيٌّؑ قُلْتُ يَا اَبَتِ رَاَيْتُكَ تَنْظُرُ اِلَى عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍؑ فَمَا يَزِيغُ بَصَرُكَ عَنْهُ قَالَ يَا بُنَيَّةِ اِنْ اَفْعَلُ هَذَا فَقَدْ سَمِعْتُ رَسُولَ اللهِ ص يَقُولُ النَّظَرُ اِلَى عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ عِبَادَةٌ

Ayesha reports, “Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) visited my father (Abu Bakr) during the illness in which Allah caused him to die. He (Abu Bakr) kept on looking at Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and did not take his eyes off him. When Ali (a.s.) went, I asked, ‘O father! I saw you looking at Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) and you did not take your eyes off him?” He replied, ‘O my daughter! If I did so (don’t blame me) because I heard the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) say, ‘Looking at the face of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is worship’.”

## Note:

Among the Ahle Tasannun scholars, there were three brothers. All of them were learned and famous and each one of them had several books to his credit. They were all famous as Ibn Atheer al-Jazari and they were from the tribe of Banu Bakr. One of them had a book called as al-Nehaayah, which is a book on literature, comprising of general literary discussions and religious literary considerations. Now, let’s see how this writer tries to justify this tradition. He writes, “It is said that the meaning of this narration is that when Ali (a.s.) emerged to fight, people exclaimed, ‘There is no god but Allah, how noble is this youth! There is no god but Allah, how knowledgeable is this youth! There is no god but Allah, how honorable is this youth! There is no god but Allah, how pious is this youth! There is no god but Allah, how courageous is this youth! Since looking at Ali (a.s.) took the people towards monotheism, hence looking at his face was considered as worship.”

What he means to say that looking at Ali (a.s.) per se was not worship but since it led the people to monotheism, looking at him was worship.

Obviously, this justification is baseless and absurd. For, when Ali (a.s.) came out on the battlefield, his valor was apparent is obvious. But how his honor, knowledge, piety, etc. were known on the battlefield? For each trait there was a specific time and place!

In the above mentioned narration from Ayesha, when Ali (a.s.) came to Abu Bakr, the latter did not utter any statement of monotheism. Rather, he just kept staring at Ali (a.s.) and yet, justified his act by quoting the narration of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.). So, who understood the quote of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) more, Abu Bakr or the Banu Bakr?

One can easily deduce that the aim of Ibn al-Atheer was to somehow reduce the significance of looking at Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) per se and connect the worship to statements of monotheism!!

Lastly, what about the other companions? Did looking at their faces lead the people into another direction instead of monotheism?

Allah has set a seal upon their hearts, and on their ears and on their eyes is a covering!

## References:

Meah Manqebah, p. 151, Manqebah No. 84

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 229, H. 11

# Reward of Glorifying Imams (a.s.) through poems (1)

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللهِ بْنِ الْفَضْلِ الْهَاشِمِيِّ قَالَ قَالَ اَبُو عَبْدِ اللهِؑ مَنْ قَالَ فِينَا بَيْتَ شِعْرٍ بَنَى اللهُ لَهُ بَيْتاً فِي الْجَنَّةِ

Abdullah Ibn al-Fazl al-Hashemi reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) said, “*One who says a couplet in our eulogy, Allah will build for him a house in Paradise*.”

## Notes:

This tradition shows the importance of Imamate and hence, the importance of saying a couplet in glory of Imamat.

Couplet is the minimum that can be said in a poem. But the reward is amazing.

It is not necessary that one should be the creator/writer of the poem. If someone recites the poems written by others, that too entails immense rewards. (Of course, one should not credit the poems written by others to himself for that is ethical theft, which is not permissible).

## References:

Oyoon Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 1, p. 7, H. 1

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) Le Shiah al-Murtaza (a.s.), p. 208

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 231, H. 3

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 14, p. 597, H. 19891

# Reward of Glorifying Imams (a.s.) through poems (2)

عَنِ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ الْجَهْمِ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ الرِّضَاؑ يَقُولُ مَا قَالَ فِينَا مُؤْمِنٌ شِعْراً يَمْدَحُنَا بِهِ اِلَّا بَنَى اللهُ تَعَالَى لَهُ مَدِينَةً فِي الْجَنَّةِ اَوْسَعَ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا سَبْعَ مَرَّاتٍ يَزُورُهُ فِيهَا كُلُّ مَلَكٍ مُقَرَّبٍ وَ كُلُّ نَبِيٍّ مُرْسَلٍ

Al-Hasan Ibn al-Jahm reports, “I heard (al-Imam) al-Reza (a.s.) say,

‘No believer says a couplet in our glory through which he praises us but that Allah – the High – builds for him a city in Paradise, seven times vaster than this world; every proximate angel and sent Messenger visits him in it’.”

## Notes:

In this narration, Imam (a.s.) informs that a city will be built for him while in the previous narration, a house will be built for him. Obviously, the difference can be for various reasons like the level of the recognition of the person and the poem, the concept conveyed, etc. Allah knows the best.

Importantly, the condition laid is that the poet should be a ‘believer’ and not a non-believer like a hypocrite, Jew, Christian, infidel, polytheist, etc.

The importance of this believer is underlined when infallible beings like proximate angels and sent Messengers (peace be on them all) visit this believer, who is not infallible. Obviously, he has attained this great position due to his glorification of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

If we cannot write such poems or read them, the least we can do is to attend such gatherings where the Ahle Bait (a.s.) are praised and also take our children and family members along so that they are trained and brought up in such an atmosphere.

## References:

Oyoon Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.), vol. 1, p. 7, H. 3

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 231, H. 5

Wasaael al-Shiah, vol. 14, p. 598, H. 19893

# Whoever thinks that he is like the infallible Imams (a.s.) is a polytheist

عَنْ عُبَيْدِ بْنِ زُرَارَةَ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ كُنْتُ عِنْدَ زِيَادِ بْنِ عَبْدِ اللهِ وَ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنْ اَهْلِ بَيْتِي فَقَالَ يَا بَنِي عَلِيٍّ وَ فَاطِمَةَ مَا فَضْلُكُمْ عَلَى النَّاسِ فَسَكَتُوا فَقُلْتُ اِنَّ مِنْ فَضْلِنَا عَلَى النَّاسِ اَنَّا لَا نُحِبُّ اَنْ نَكُونَ اَحَداً سِوَانَا وَ لَيْسَ اَحَدٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ لَا يُحِبُّ اَنْ يَكُونَ مِنَّا اِلَّا اَشْرَكَ ثُمَّ قَالَ ارْوُوا هَذَا الْحَدِيثَ

Obaidullah Ibn Zoraarah reports from Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.), “I and a group of my Ahle Bait (a.s.) was with Ziyaad Ibn Obaidillah when he said, ‘O progeny of Ali and Fatemah! What is your excellence upon the people?’ Everyone was silent. So I said, ‘Surely, from our excellences upon the people is that we don’t love that we become anyone except us and none from the people wishes that he becomes one of us except that he has become a polytheist.” Thereafter, he (a.s.) ordered, ‘All of you narrate this tradition’.”

## Notes:

In the original manuscript, it is Obaidillah and not Abdillah as recorded in Behaar al-Anwaar.

Imam (a.s.) says ‘*from our excellences*’ which shows that he (a.s.) is narrating only one of the excellences of the Ahle Bait (a.s.).

Narration shows the incomprehensible position of the Ahle Bait (a.s.). Only Imams (a.s.) can understand this position and hence, they cannot even think of becoming anything else.

From the commonality, nobody can ever compare himself or think himself to be like an infallible Imam (a.s.). If anyone dares to do so, he is out of the domain of Islam and monotheism and becomes a polytheist.

## References:

Al-Mahaasin, vol. 2, p. 333, H. 101

Elal al-Sharaae’, vol. 2, p. 583, H. 24

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 241, H. 4

# The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) are one

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍ خَلِيفَةُ اللهِ وَ خَلِيفَتِي وَ حُجَّةُ اللهِ وَ حُجَّتِي وَ بَابُ اللهِ وَ بَابِي وَ صَفِيُّ اللهِ وَ صَفِيِّي وَ حَبِيبُ اللهِ وَ حَبِيبِي وَ خَلِيلُ اللهِ وَ خَلِيلِي وَ سَيْفُ اللهِ وَ سَيْفِي وَ هُوَ اَخِي وَ صَاحِبِي وَ وَزِيرِي وَ وَصِيِّي مُحِبُّهُ مُحِبِّي وَ مُبْغِضُهُ مُبْغِضِي وَ وَلِيُّهُ وَلِيِّي وَ عَدُوُّهُ عَدُوِّي وَ زَوْجَتُهُ ابْنَتِي وَ وُلْدُهُ وُلْدِي وَ حِزْبُهُ حِزْبِي وَ قَوْلُهُ قَوْلِي وَ اَمْرُهُ اَمْرِي وَ هُوَ سَيِّدُ الْوَصِيِّينَ وَ خَيْرُ اُمَّتِي

The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) declared,

“Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is Allah’s Caliph and my caliph, Allah’s proof and my proof, Allah’s door and my door, Allah’s chosen one and my chosen one, Allah’s beloved and my beloved, Allah’s friend and my friend, Allah’s sword and my sword; he is my brother, my companion, my vizier and my successor. One who loves him loves me, one who bears malice against him bears malice against me, one who accepts his mastership accepts my mastership, his enemy is my enemy, his wife is my daughter, his children (from my daughter Fatemah) are my children, his party is my party, his word is my word, his affair is my affair, he is the chief of the successors and the best of my nation.”

## References:

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 263, H. 48

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed, vol. 2, p. 12

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 203, Majlis 36

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) Le Shiah al-Murtaza (a.s.), p. 31

# Obedience of Ali (a.s.) is the obedience of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

عَنْ عَلِيِّ بْنِ الْحُسَيْنِ عَنْ اَبِيهِ عَنْ جَدِّهِ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ ﷺ اِنَّ اللهَ فَرَضَ عَلَيْكُمْ طَاعَتِي وَ نَهَاكُمْ عَنْ مَعْصِيَتِي وَ اَوْجَبَ عَلَيْكُمُ اتِّبَاعَ اَمْرِي وَ فَرَضَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنْ طَاعَةِ عَلِيِّ بْنِ اَبِي طَالِبٍ بَعْدِي كَمَا فَرَضَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنْ طَاعَتِي وَ نَهَاكُمْ عَنْ مَعْصِيَتِهِ وَ جَعَلَهُ اَخِي وَ وَزِيرِي وَ وَصِيِّي وَ وَارِثِي وَ هُوَ مِنِّي وَ اَنَا مِنْهُ حُبُّهُ اِيمَانٌ وَ بُغْضُهُ كُفْرٌ مُحِبُّهُ مُحِبِّي وَ مُبْغِضُهُ مُبْغِضِي وَ هُوَ مَوْلَى مَنْ اَنَا مَوْلَاهُ وَ اَنَا مَوْلَى كُلِّ مُسْلِمٍ وَ مُسْلِمَةٍ وَ اَنَا وَ هُوَ اَبَوَا هَذِهِ الْاُمَّةِ

Imam Ali Ibn al-Husain (a.s.) reports vide his ancestors (a.s.) that the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) informed, “Surely, Allah has made obligatory my obedience upon you, prohibited you from my disobedience, has made compulsory upon you the following of my command, has made the obedience of Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) obligatory upon you after me just as He has made my obedience compulsory upon you and prohibited you from his disobedience; He (Allah) has made him (Ali) my brother, my vizier and my heir. He is from me and I am from him. His love is belief and hating him is disbelief. One who loves him loves me and one who bears malice against him bears malice against me. He is the master of whosoever I am his master and I am the master of every Muslim, male and female. I and he are the fathers of this nation.”

## References:

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 14, H. 6, Majlis 4

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 263, H. 49

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed, vol. 2, p. 13

# Whoever denies that Ali (a.s.) is the best of mankind is a disbeliever

عَنْ اَنَسٍ عَنْ عَائِشَةَ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ رَسُولَ اللهِ ﷺ يَقُولُ عَلِيُّ بْنُ اَبِي طَالِبٍ خَيْرُ الْبَشَرِ مَنْ اَبَى فَقَدْ كَفَرَ فَقِيلَ فَلِمَ حَارَبْتِهِ فَقَالَتْ وَ اللهِ مَا حَارَبْتُهُ مِنْ ذَاتِ نَفْسِي وَ مَا حَمَلَنِي عَلَيْهِ اِلَّا طَلْحَةُ وَ الزُّبَيْرُ

Anas Ibn Maalik narrates from Ayesha, “I heard the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) say, ‘*Ali Ibn Abi Talib (a.s.) is the best of mankind. Whoever denies (this) had indeed disbelieved*.’ She (Ayesha) was asked, ‘Then why you fought against him (in the battle of Jamal)?’ She replied, ‘By Allah! I did not fight him of my own accord. But Talhah and Zubair forced me to fight against him’.”

## Notes:

Ayesha and Talhah were from the same clan of Bani Taim.

Talhah was married to one of the sisters of Ayesha while Zubair was married to another. The name of the wife of Zubair was Asmaa bint Abi Bakr while that of Talhah was Umm Kulthum bint Abi Bakr.

## References

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, p. 306, H. 68

Meah Manqebah, p. 138, 70th Manqebah

# Supplications of Divine Emissaries (a.s.) accepted through intercession of Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ مَعْمَرِ بْنِ رَاشِدٍ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ اَبَا عَبْدِ اللهِ الصَّادِقَؑ يَقُولُ اَتَى يَهُودِيٌّ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ فَقَامَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ يَحُدُّ النَّظَرَ اِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ يَا يَهُودِيُّ مَا حَاجَتُكَ قَالَ اَنْتَ اَفْضَلُ اَمْ مُوسَى بْنُ عِمْرَانَ النَّبِيُّ الَّذِي كَلَّمَهُ اللهُ وَ اَنْزَلَ عَلَيْهِ التَّوْرَاةَ وَ الْعَصَا وَ فَلَقَ لَهُ الْبَحْرَ وَ اَظَلَّهُ بِالْغَمَامِ فَقَالَ لَهُ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ اِنَّهُ يُكْرَهُ لِلْعَبْدِ اَنْ يُزَكِّيَ نَفْسَهُ وَ لَكِنِّي اَقُولُ اِنَّ آدَمَؑ لَمَّا اَصَابَ الْخَطِيئَةَ كَانَتْ تَوْبَتَهُ اَنْ قَالَ اللهُمَّ اِنِّي اَسْاَلُكَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَمَّا غَفَرْتَ لِي فَغَفَرَهَا اللهُ لَهُ وَ اِنَّ نُوحاً لَمَّا رَكِبَ فِي السَّفِينَةِ وَ خَافَ الْغَرَقَ قَالَ اللهُمَّ اِنِّي اَسْاَلُكَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَمَّا اَنْجَيْتَنِي مِنَ الْغَرَقِ فَنَجَّاهُ اللهُ عَنْهُ وَ اِنَّ اِبْرَاهِيمَؑ لَمَّا اُلْقِيَ فِي النَّارِ قَالَ اللهُمَّ اِنِّي اَسْاَلُكَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَمَّا اَنْجَيْتَنِي مِنْهَا فَجَعَلَهَا اللهُ عَلَيْهِ بَرْداً وَ سَلَاماً وَ اِنَّ مُوسَى لَمَّا اَلْقَى عَصَاهُ وَ اَوْجَسَ فِي نَفْسِهِ خِيفَةً قَالَ اللهُمَّ اِنِّي اَسْاَلُكَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَمَّا آمَنْتَنِي فَقَالَ اللهُ جَلَّ جَلَالُهُ لا تَخَفْ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْاَعْلى‏ يَا يَهُودِيُّ اِنَّ مُوسَى لَوْ اَدْرَكَنِي ثُمَّ لَمْ يُؤْمِنْ بِي وَ بِنُبُوَّتِي مَا نَفَعَهُ اِيمَانُهُ شَيْئاً وَ لَا نَفَعَتْهُ النُّبُوَّةُ يَا يَهُودِيُّ وَ مِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِي الْمَهْدِيُّ اِذَا خَرَجَ نَزَلَ عِيسَى ابْنُ مَرْيَمَؑ لِنُصْرَتِهِ فَقَدَّمَهُ وَ صَلَّى خَلْفَهُ

Ma’mar Ibn Raashid reports, “I heard Imam Abu Abdillah al-Sadeq (a.s.) say,

“A Jew came to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and stood in front of him, staring at him (s.a.w.a.). He (s.a.w.a.) asked, ‘What do you want, O Jew?’

He replied, ‘Are you superior or Moosa Ibn Imran the Prophet with whom Allah spoke, sent upon him the Torah and the staff, split the ocean for him and shadowed him with a cloud?’

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) replied, ‘It is disliked that a person praises his own self but I say that when (Prophet) Adam (a.s.) erred, he repented with the following wordings, ‘O Allah! Surely, I ask You for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) that You forgive me. So, Allah forgave him. Verily, when (Prophet) Noah (a.s.) boarded the ark and feared drowning, he said, ‘O Allah! Surely, I ask You for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) that You save me from drowning. So Allah saved him it.

Verily, when (Prophet) Ibraheem (a.s.) was thrown in the fire, he said, ‘O Allah! I ask You for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) that You protect me from it, so Allah made it (the fire) cool and safe for him.

Verily, when (Prophet) Moosa (a.s.) threw his staff and experienced some fear in himself, he said, ‘O Allah! Surely I ask You for the sake of Muhammad and the progeny of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) that You grant me safety. So Allah said, ‘Don’t fear. Surely, you will be dominant.’ O Jew! Had Moosa (a.s.) found me (i.e. been in my time) and not believed in me and my Prophethood, his belief would not have benefitted him at all nor would have (his) Prophethood benefitted him.’ O Jew! From my progeny is the Mahdi. When he (a.t.f.s.) reappears, (Prophet) Eesaa Ibn Maryam (a.s.) will descend for his help and request him to lead the prayers and pray behind him (a.t.f.s.).”

## Notes:

The Jew was wrong in claiming that the staff descended on Prophet Moosa (a.s.) because as per our traditions, it was given to Prophet Adam (a.s.) and thereafter, it was handed over from one Prophet (a.s.) to another in inheritance till it came to Prophet Shoaib (a.s.) who gave it to his son-in-law Prophet Moosa (a.s.).

Why the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) did not raise the objection in front of the Jew? The answer is simple. The above question when compared to the issue of the mastership and superiority of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) is almost a non-issue. Hence, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), with his perfect and complete wisdom, thought it prudent to answer the core issue rather than get entangled in peripheral matters.

Generally, it is an abhorrent practice to indulge in self-praise. But sometimes, for the sake of supporting truth and nullifying falsehood, it is not only not abominable but even recommended or obligatory to do so. Hence, we see that the Ahle Bait (a.s.) spoke about their lofty positions in order to introduce their divine personalities for the people.

The divine Prophets (a.s.) mentioned in the above tradition are merely examples of the great Prophets (a.s.). Otherwise, all the divine emissaries (a.s.), without exception, were inferior to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and the infallible guides from his progeny (a.s.).

When we say that Prophet Adam (a.s.) erred, we certainly don’t believe that he committed a sin. It is our firm belief that he (a.s.) simply left a preferable act, called as Tark-e-aulaa in religious terminology.

Regarding Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.) and Prophet Eesaa (a.s.), after the reappearance of Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.) when Prophet Eesaa (a.s.) also descends from the sky, there is not a single tradition from Shiite sources which says that Imam Mahdi (a.t.f.s.) will offer Prophet Eesaa (a.s.) to lead the prayers. For, it is not permissible for a superior to ask an inferior to lead the prayers. But the opponents have recorded such narrations.

Last but not the least, when the great Prophets, Messengers and proximate angels of Allah (a.s.) were in need of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and his progeny (a.s.) for help, then what about us? Woe unto those who regard seeking help from them as polytheism!

## References:

Al-Amaali al-Saduq (r.a.), p. 218, H. 4, Majlis 39

Rauzah al-Waaezeen, vol. 2, p. 272

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 26, 319, H. 1

# None has more knowledge of the unseen than the Ahle Bait (a.s.) except Allah the Almighty

عَنْ جَابِرٍ عَنْ اَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ قَالَ اِنَّ اسْمَ اللهِ الْاَعْظَمَ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةٍ وَ سَبْعِينَ حَرْفاً وَ اِنَّمَا عِنْدَ آصَفَ مِنْهَا حَرْفٌ وَاحِدٌ فَتَكَلَّمَ بِهِ فَخُسِفَ بِالْاَرْضِ مَا بَيْنَهُ وَ بَيْنَ سَرِيرِ بِلْقِيسَ ثُمَّ تَنَاوَلَ السَّرِيرَ بِيَدِهِ ثُمَّ عَادَتِ الْاَرْضُ كَمَا كَانَتْ اَسْرَعَ مِنْ طَرْفَةِ عَيْنٍ وَ عِنْدَنَا نَحْنُ مِنَ الِاسْمِ اثْنَانِ وَ سَبْعُونَ حَرْفاً وَ حَرْفٌ عِنْدَ اللهِ اسْتَاْثَرَ بِهِ فِي عِلْمِ الْغَيْبِ عِنْدَهُ وَ لَا حَوْلَ وَ لَا قُوَّةَ اِلَّا بِاللهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ

Jaabir Ibn Yazid al-Jofi reports from Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer a.s.) who said, “Surely, the greatest Names of Allah comprise of seventy-three (73) alphabets. Asif (the son of Barkhiyaa a.s., the successor of Prophet Sulaiman a.s.) had only one alphabet. When he uttered it, the earth was rent asunder between him and the throne of Bilqis (the queen of Yemen). Then, he brought the throne with his hand. Thereafter, the earth returned to its original position faster than the batting of an eyelid. With us (Ahle Bait a.s.) are seventy-two (72) alphabets and one alphabet is with Allah which He has stored in the knowledge of the Unseen with Him. And there is no power and strength except with Allah, the High, the Great.”

## Notes:

None is aware of these great names except Allah the High and those whom He has informed from His proofs (a.s.).

Imam (a.s.) wants to prove the absolute mastership of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) over the entire creation through the incident of Asif Ibn Barkhiyaa (a.s.).

In this tradition, Imam (a.s.) proves that none has more knowledge of the unseen than the Ahle Bait (a.s.) except Allah the All-Knowing.

Most importantly, this incident shows that power is rooted in knowledge.

When Imam (a.s.) recites the last sentence “*And there is no power and strength except with Allah, the High, the Great*” (called as hauqalah in religious terminology), he (a.s.) wants to establish that the source of all power and strength is Allah the Almighty. This should be our belief and approach as well that we must rely in all our affairs on Him alone. None will deny this fact except an ignoramus or an arrogant boaster.

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 208, H. 1, Chapter 13

Al-Kaafi, vol. 1, p. 230, H. 1

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 25, H. 1

# Comprehending the Great Names of Allah is not even for some great companions (1)

عَنْ عُمَرَ بْنِ حَنْظَلَةَ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي جَعْفَرٍؑ اِنِّي اَظُنُّ اَنَّ لِي عِنْدَكَ مَنْزَلَةً قَالَ اَجَلْ قَالَ قُلْتُ فَاِنَّ لِي اِلَيْكَ حَاجَةً قَالَ وَ مَا هِيَ قُلْتُ تُعَلِّمُنِي الِاسْمَ الْاَعْظَمَ قَالَ وَ تُطِيقُهُ قُلْتُ نَعَمْ قَالَ فَادْخُلِ الْبَيْتَ قَالَ فَدَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ فَوَضَعَ اَبُو جَعْفَرٍؑ يَدَهُ عَلَى الْاَرْضِ فَاَظْلَمَ الْبَيْتُ فَاَرْعَدَتْ فَرَائِصُ عُمَرَ فَقَالَ مَا تَقُولُ اُعَلِّمُكَ فَقَالَ لَا قَالَ فَرَفَعَ يَدَهُ فَرَجَعَ الْبَيْتُ كَمَا كَانَ

Umar Ibn Hanzalah reports, “I said to Imam Abu Jafar (al-Baqer a.s.), ‘I think I have some importance in front of you?’

He (a.s.) replied, ‘Yes’.

I requested, ‘So, I have a need.’

He (a.s.) asked, ‘What is it?’

I pleaded, ‘Teach me the Greatest Name’.

He (a.s.) asked, ‘Do you have the strength (to bear it)?’

I answered, ‘Yes’.

He (a.s.) ordered, ‘So, enter the room’. He entered the room.

Then, Imam Abu Jafar (a.s.) placed his hand on the earth and the whole room became dark. Umar started shivering due to fear.

Imam (a.s.) asked, ‘What do you say? Should I still teach you?’

He answered, ‘No’.

Imam (a.s.) lifted his hand and the room returned to its original state.

## Notes:

Umar Ibn Hanzalah was a good companion of Imam al-Baqer (a.s.). But even he was not eligible to learn the Great Names of Allah.

When Imam (a.s.) asked whether he had the power to bear it, Ibn Hanzalah should have left the decision to Imam (a.s.), who knows the best.

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 210, H. 1

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 27, H. 6

# Comprehending the Great Names of Allah is not even for some great companions (2)

عَنْ عَمَّارٍ السَّابَاطِيِّ قَالَ قُلْتُ لِاَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ اُحِبُّ اَنْ تُخْبِرَنِي بِاسْمِ اللهِ تَعَالَى الْاَعْظَمِ فَقَالَ لِي اِنَّكَ لَنْ تَقْوَى عَلَى ذٰلِكَ قَالَ فَلَمَّا اَلْحَحْتُ قَالَ فَمَكَانَكَ اِذاً ثُمَّ قَامَ فَدَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ هُنَيْهَةً ثُمَّ صَاحَ بِي ادْخُلْ فَدَخَلْتُ فَقَالَ لِي مَا ذٰلِكَ فَقُلْتُ اَخْبِرْنِي بِهِ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ قَالَ فَوَضَعَ يَدَهُ عَلَى الْاَرْضِ فَنَظَرْتُ اِلَى الْبَيْتِ يَدُورُ بِي وَ اَخَذَنِي اَمْرٌ عَظِيمٌ كِدْتُ اَهْلِكُ فَضَحِكَ فَقُلْتُ جُعِلْتُ فِدَاكَ حَسْبِي لَا اُرِيدُ

Ammaar al-Saabaati recounts, “I asked Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.), ‘May I be held your ransom! I love that you inform me the greatest name of Allah the High.’

He (a.s.) told me, ‘You don’t have the strength (to bear) it.’

He says that when I insisted, Imam (a.s.) said, ‘Wait in your place.’

Thereafter, he (a.s.) stood and entered the room for some time and called out to me, ‘Enter!’

I entered. He (a.s.) asked, ‘What is that (you want)?’

I said, ‘Please inform me about it, may I be held your ransom!’

So, he (a.s.) placed his hand on the earth and I saw the entire room revolving around me. A great affair seized me. I thought I was about to be destroyed (i.e. I thought I will die). He (a.s.) started laughing.

I pleaded, ‘May I be held your ransom! Enough, I don’t want (to know the greatest names of Allah)’.”

## Notes:

Ammaar al-Saabaati, the narrator of this tradition, was of Iranian origin.

Like Ibn Hanzalah, Ammaar did not obey the Imam (a.s.) in the first instance till he learnt it the hard way.

## References:

Al-Rejaal of al-Kashi (r.a.), p. 253, No. 471

Al-Manaaqeb, vol. 4, p. 244

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 27, H. 8

# Even those who know the Greatest Name of Allah need the Ahle Bait (a.s.)

عَنْ اَبِي بَصِيرٍ عَنْ اَبِي عَبْدِ اللهِؑ قَالَ كَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ عِنْدَهُ اسْمُ اللهِ الْاَكْبَرُ الَّذِي اِذَا سَاَلَهُ بِهِ اَعْطَى وَ اِذَا دَعَا بِهِ اَجَابَ وَ لَوْ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ لَاحْتَاجَ اِلَيْنَا

Abu Baseer reports that Imam Abu Abdillah (al-Sadeq a.s.) informed,

“(Prophet) Sulaiman (a.s.) had one greatest name of Allah. Whenever he asked through it, he was granted and whenever he supplicated through it, his supplication was accepted. But if he was there today, he would be in need of us (Ahle Bait a.s.).”

## Notes:

Allah the Munificent distributes all His bounties as per the capacity of the recipient.

Even for those who were given the greatest name of Allah, they are in need of the Ahle Bait (a.s.) for this bounty to be effective.

## References:

Basaaer al-Darajaat, p. 211, H. 7

Al-Manaaqeb, vol. 4, p. 249

Behaar al-Anwaar, vol. 27, p. 27, H. 7

# Bibliography

Al-Amaali of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (exp. 381 A.H.)

Al-Amaali of Shaikh Abu Jafar Muhammad Ibn Hasan al-Toosi (r.a.) (exp. 460 A.H.)

Al-Ehtejaaj of Shaikh Tabarsi (r.a.) (548 A.H.)

Al-Ghaibah of Shaikh Abu Jafar Muhammad Ibn Hasan al-Toosi (r.a.) (exp. 460 A.H.)

Al-Ghaibah of Shaikh Muhammad al-Nomani (r.a.) (360 A.H.)

Al-Ikhtesaas of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Noman al-Tallaukbari famous as al-Mufeed (r.a.) (exp. 413 A.H.)

Al-Kaafi of Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Yaqub al-Kulayni (r.a.) (exp. 329 A.H.)

Al-Kharaaej wa al-Jaraaeh of Qutbuddin Sa’d Ibn Hebatillah al-Raawandi (exp. 573 A.H.)

Al-Khesaal of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Husain Ibn Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (exp. 381 A.H.)

Al-Mahaasin of Shaikh Ahmed al-Barqi (r.a.) (exp. 274 A.H.)

Al-Manaaqeb of Muhammad Ibn Shahr Aashob Maazandarani (r.a.) (exp. 588 A.H.)

Al-Saraaer al-Haavi of Shaikh Mohammad bin Ahmad Ibn Idris (r.a.) (598 A.H.)

Al-Seraat al-Mustaqeem of Ali Ibn Yunus al-Nabaati al-Bayaadhi al-Aameli (r.a.) (exp. 877 A.H.)

Al-Taraaef of Sayyed Ibn Taawoos (r.a.) (Exp. 664 A.H.)

Al-Tauheed al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (exp. 381 A.H.)

Al-Burhan fee Tafseer al-Quran of Sayyed Hashim Bahrani (r.a.) (1107 A.H.)

Al-Durr al-Nazeem by Shaikh Yusuf Ibn Haatim al-Shaami, a student of Muhaqqiq Hilli (r.a.) (6th century)

Balaaghaat al-Nisaa by Ahmad Ibn Abi Taahir (280 A.H.)

Bashaarah al-Mustafa (s.a.w.a.) Le Shiah al-Murtaza (a.s.) of Emaad al-deen Muhammad Ibn Jurair al-Tabari (r.a.)

Banaa al-Maqaalah of Ahmad Ibn Moosa Ibn Taawoos (r.a.) (exp. 673 A.H.)

Basaaer al-Darajaat of Muhammad Ibn Hasan Ibn Farrokh al-Saffar (r.a.) (exp. 290 A.H.)

Behaar al-Anwaar of Allamah Shaikh Muhammad Baqir al-Majlisi (r.a.) (exp. 1110 A.H.)

Dalaael al-Imaamah - Emaad al-Deen al-Tabari (Exp. 4th Century A.H.)

Elal al-Sharaae’ of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (exp. 381 A.H.)

Hulyah al-Abraar by Sayyed Hashim Bahrani (r.a.) (1107 A.H.)

Ikhteyaar-o-Marefah al-Rejaal of Muhammad Ibn Umar al-Kashi (r.a.) (exp. mid of 4th century A.H.)

Isbaat al-Hodaat of Shaikh Hurr al-Ameli (r.a.) (1104 A.H.)

Kamaal al-Deen of Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Husain Ibn Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (381 A.H.)

Kaamil al-Ziyaaraat of Ibn al-Qawlawayh (r.a.) (367 A.H.)

Kanz-o-Jaame’ al-Fawaaed of Sayed Sharafuddin Abu al-Hasan Ali Astarabaadi (r.a.) (exp. 940 A.H.) (It is the abridged version of Ta’veel al-Aayaat al-Zaaherah)

Kashf al-Ghummah of Ali Ibn Eesaa al-Erbeli (r.a.) (exp. 693 A.H.)

Kashf al-Ghummah of Shaikh Ali Ibn Isa Irbali (r.a.) (692 A.H.)

Kitaab Sulaim Ibn Qais al-Hilaali al-Kufi (r.a.) (exp. 80 A.H.)

Man La Yahzoruhu al-Faqeeh of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.) (381 A.H.)

Maani al-Akhbaar of Shaikh Saduq (r.a.) (381 A.H.)

Majma’ al-Bayaan of Ameenul Islam Abu Ali al-Tabrisi (548 A.H.)

Manaqeb of Ibn Shahr Ashoub (r.a.) (588 A.H.)

Masaael-o-Ali Ibn Jafar (a.s.) of Ali Ibn Imam Jafar al-Sadeq (a.s.) (exp.in 3rd century A.H.)

Meah Manqebah of Muhammad Ibn Ahmad famous as Ibn Shaazaan al-Qummi (r.a.) (exp. 4th century A.H.)

Mir’aat al-Oqool of Allamah Mohammad Baqir al-Majlisi (r.a.) (1110 A.H.)

Mishkatul Anwaar of Shaikh Tabrisi (r.a.) (600 A.H.)

Nahjal-Balaaghah compiled by Syed Sharif Razi (407 A.H.)

Nahj al-Haqq wa Kashf al-Sidq of Allamah Yusuf Ibn Mutahhar al-Hilli (exp. 726 A.H.)

Oyoon-o-Akhbaar al-Reza (a.s.) of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (exp. 381 A.H.)

Qurb al-Asnaad of Shaikh Abdullah bin Ja’far al-Himyari (r.a.) (310 A.H.)

Rauzah al-Waaezeen of Muhammad Ibn Hasan Fattaal Neshapoori famous as Ibn al-Faarsi (r.a.) (martyred in 508 A.H.)

Rejaal al-Kashi of Shaikh Mohammad al-Kashi (r.a.) (370 A.H.)

Sa’d al-Su’ood of al-Sayed Raziuddin Ali Ibn Moosa Ibn Taawoos famous as Sayed Ibn Taawoos (r.a.) (exp. 664 A.H.)

Sawaab al-A’maal of Shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Husain Ibn Baabwayh al-Qummi famous as al-Saduq (r.a.) (381 A.H.)

Shawaahed al-Tanzeel of Al-Haakim al-Haskaani al-Hanafi al-Neshapuri, a fifth century scholar

Tafseer al-Furaat of Furaat Ibn Ibrahim al-Kufi (r.a.) (born in the 3rd century A.H. and a prominent personality of the minor occultation)

Tafseer al-Qummi of al-Shaikh Ali Ibn Ibrahim al-Qummi (r.a.) (exp. 306 A.H.)

Tafseer al-Ayyaashi of Muhammad Ibn Mas’ood al-Ayyaashi al-Samarqandi al-Baghdadi (exp. 320 A.H.)

Taveel al-Ayaat al-Zaaherah of Sayed Sharaf al-Deen al-Husaini al-Astarabadi (r.a.) (exp. 940 A.H.)

Tafseer al-Kashshaaf of Abul Qasim Mahmood Ibn Umar al-Zamakhshari (fifth century scholar of Ahle Tasannun)

Tafseer Noor al-Saqlain of Shaikh Abde Ali al-Huwaizi (r.a.) (1112 A.H.)

Tafseer of Imam Hasan al-Askari (a.s.) (260 A.H.)

Tehzeeb al-Ahkam of Shaikh Toosi (r.a.) (460 A.H.)

Tohaf al-Uqool by Shaikh al-Hasan bin Sho’abah al-Harrani (r.a.) (4th century)

Wasaael al-Shiah of al-Shaikh Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan famous as al-Hurr al-Aamili (r.a.) (1104 A.H.)

1. Surah Qasas (28): Verse 51 [↑](#footnote-ref-1)
2. Surah Ibrahim (14): Verse 37 [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
3. Surah Aale Imran (3): Verse 68 [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
4. Surah Noor (24): Verse 36 [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
5. Surah Hadeed (57): Verse 19 [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
6. Originally this book was written by Muhammad Ibn Umar al-Kashi (r.a.), who like his teacher Muhammad Ibn Mas’ood al-Ayyaashi (r.a.), was a convert from Ahl Tasannun. It was destroyed and later retrieved to a considerable extent by the great Shaikh al-Taaefah al-Toosi (r.a.), who attributed it to its author. May Allah the Almighty have mercy on them! [↑](#footnote-ref-6)